



V40

---

# OWNERS MANUAL

WEB EDITION

---







## **DEAR VOLVO OWNER**

THANK YOU FOR CHOOSING VOLVO

We hope you will enjoy many years of driving pleasure in your Volvo. The car has been designed for the safety and comfort of you and your passengers. Volvo is one of the safest cars in the world. Your Volvo has also been designed to satisfy all current safety and environmental requirements.

In order to increase your enjoyment of the car, we recommend that you familiarise yourself with the equipment, instructions and maintenance information contained in this owner's manual.



## 00 Introduction

Important information.....	6
Volvo and the environment.....	10

# 00



## 01 Safety

Seatbelts .....	14
Airbags.....	17
Activating/deactivating the airbag*.....	20
Side airbags (SIPS bags) .....	22
Inflatable Curtain (IC) .....	24
WHIPS .....	25
When the systems deploy .....	27
Safety mode.....	28
Pedestrian airbag (Pedestrian Airbag).....	29
Child safety.....	31

# 01



## 02 Locks and alarm

Remote control key/key blade.....	42
Battery replacement, remote control key/ PCC*.....	48
Keyless*.....	50
Locking/unlocking.....	54
Child safety locks.....	60
Alarm*.....	61

# 02





### 03 Your driving environment

Instruments and controls.....	66
Volvo Sensus .....	77
Key positions.....	79
Seats.....	81
Steering wheel.....	86
Lighting.....	87
Wipers and washing.....	99
Windows, rearview and door mirrors.....	102
Compass*.....	107
Alcolock*.....	108
Starting the engine.....	112
Starting the engine – external battery.....	114
Gearboxes.....	115
Eco Guide & Power*.....	121
Start/Stop *.....	123
Foot brake.....	129
Parking brake.....	131
HomeLink® *.....	132



### 04 Driver support

DSTC – Stability and traction control system.....	138
Road sign information - RSI*.....	141
Speed limiter*.....	143
Cruise control*.....	145
Adaptive cruise control*.....	147
Distance Warning*.....	158
City Safety™.....	161
Collision Warning with Auto Brake & Pedestrian Detection*.....	167
Driver Alert System*.....	175
Driver Alert System - DAC*.....	176
Driver Alert System - Lane Keeping Aid*.....	180
Park assist syst*.....	184
Park assist camera*.....	187
Park Assist Pilot - PAP*.....	190
BLIS and CTA*.....	194



### 05 Comfort and driving pleasure

Menus and messages.....	200
Menu source MY CAR.....	203
Climate control.....	212
Fuel-driven engine block heater and passenger compartment heater*.....	223
Additional heater*.....	227
Trip computer.....	229
Adapting driving characteristics.....	233
Comfort inside the passenger compartment.....	234



## 06 Infotainment system

General information on infotainment.....	240
Radio.....	250
Media player.....	257
External audio source via AUX/USB* input.....	261
Media Bluetooth®* .....	264
Bluetooth® handsfree*.....	267
Voice recognition* mobile phone.....	275
TV*.....	279
Remote control* .....	282



## 07 During your journey

Recommendations during driving.....	286
Refuelling.....	289
Fuel.....	291
Loading.....	294
Cargo area.....	297
Driving with a trailer.....	299
Towing and recovery.....	305



## 08 Wheels and tyres

General .....	310
Changing wheels .....	314
Tyre pressure .....	318
Warning triangle and first-aid kit*.....	319
Emergency puncture repair (TMK)* .....	320



## 09 Maintenance and service

Engine compartment.....	328
Lamps.....	335
Wiper blades and washer fluid.....	341
Battery.....	344
Fuses.....	348
Car care.....	357



## 10 Specifications

Type designations.....	366
Dimensions and weights.....	368
Engine specifications.....	371
Engine oil.....	372
Fluids and lubricants.....	374
Fuel.....	376
Wheel and tyres, dimensions and pressure .....	378
Electrical system.....	379
Type approval.....	380
Symbols in the display.....	392



## 11 Alphabetical Index

Alphabetical Index.....	396
-------------------------	-----



## Important information

### Reading the Owner's Manual

#### Introduction

A good way of getting to know your new car is to read the owner's manual, ideally before your first journey. This will give you the opportunity to familiarise yourself with new functions, to see how best to handle the car in different situations, and to make the best use of all the car's features. Please pay attention to the safety instructions contained in the manual.

The specifications, design features and illustrations in this owner's manual are not binding. We reserve the right to make modifications without prior notice.

© Volvo Car Corporation

#### Option

All types of option/accessory are marked with an asterisk\*.

In addition to standard equipment, this manual also describes options (factory fitted equipment) and certain accessories (retrofitted extra equipment).

The equipment described in the owner's manual is not available in all cars - they have different equipment depending on adaptations for the needs of different markets and national or local laws and regulations.

In the event of uncertainty over what is standard or an option/accessory, contact a Volvo dealer.

#### Special texts

##### **WARNING**

Warning texts appear if there is a risk of injury.

##### **IMPORTANT**

"Important" texts appear if there is a risk of damage.

##### **NOTE**

NOTE texts give advice or tips that facilitate the use of features and functions for example.

#### Footnote

There is footnote information in the owner's manual that is located at the bottom of the page. This information is an addition to the text that it refers to via a number. If the footnote refers to text in a table then letters are used instead of numbers for referral.

#### Message texts

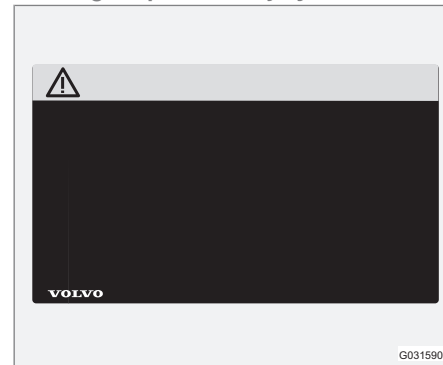
There are displays in the car that show text messages. These text messages are high-

lighted in the owner's manual by means of the text being slightly larger and printed in grey. Examples of this are in menu texts and message texts on the information display (e.g. **Audio settings**).

#### Decals

The car contains different types of decal which are designed to convey important information in a simple and clear manner. The decals in the car have the following descending degree of importance for the warning/information.

#### Warning for personal injury



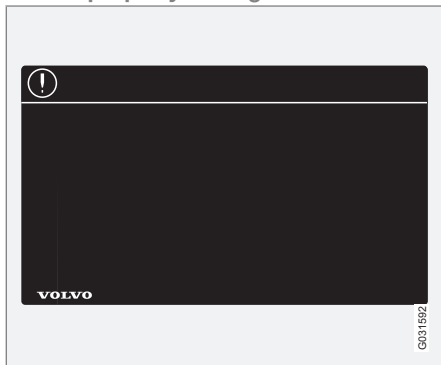
Black ISO symbols on yellow warning field, white text/image on black message field. Used to indicate the presence of danger which, if the



## Important information

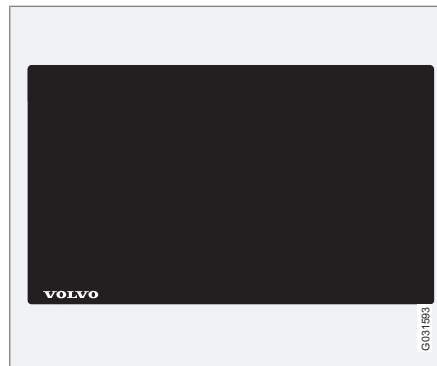
warning is ignored, may result in serious personal injury or fatality.

### Risk of property damage



White ISO symbols and white text/image on black or blue warning field and message field. Used to indicate the presence of danger which, if the warning is ignored, may result in damage to property.

### Information



White ISO symbols and white text/image on black message field.

### **i** NOTE

It is not intended that the decals illustrated in the owner's manual should be exact replicas of those in the car. They are included to show their approximate appearance and location in the car. The information that applies to your particular car is available on the respective decals for your car.

### Procedure lists

Procedures where action must be taken in a certain sequence are numbered in the owner's manual.

- 1** When there is a series of illustrations for step-by-step instructions each step is numbered in the same way as the corresponding illustration.
- A** There are numbered lists with letters adjacent to the series of illustrations where the order of the instructions is not significant.
- 1** Arrows appear numbered and unnumbered and are used to illustrate a movement.
- A** Arrows with letters are used to clarify a movement when the reciprocal order is of no relevance.

If there is no series of illustrations for step-by-step instructions then the different steps are numbered with normal numbers.

### Position lists

- 1** Red circles containing a number are used in overview images where different components are pointed out. The number recurs in the position list featured in connection with the illustration that describes the item.



## Important information

### Bulleted lists

A bulleted list is used when there is a list of points in the owner's manual.

Example:

- Coolant
- Engine oil

### To be continued

▶▶ This symbol is located furthest down to the right when a section continues on the following page.

### Recording data

Your vehicle contains a number of computers whose function is to continuously check and monitor the vehicle's operation and functionality. Some of the computers can record information during normal driving if they detect an error. In addition, information is recorded in the event of a collision or incident. Parts of the recorded information are required so that technicians can diagnose and rectify faults in the vehicle during servicing and maintenance and so that Volvo can fulfil legal requirements and other regulations. In addition to this, the information is used for research purposes by Volvo in order to continually develop quality and safety, as the information can contribute to a better understanding of the factors that cause accidents and injuries. The information

includes details of the status and functionality of various systems and modules in the vehicle with regard to engine, throttle, steering and brake systems, amongst other things. This information may include details regarding the way the driver drives the vehicle, such as vehicle speed, brake and accelerator pedal use, steering wheel movement and whether or not the driver and passengers have used their seatbelts. For the reasons given this information may be stored in the vehicle's computers for a certain length of time, but also as a result of a collision or incident. This information may be stored by Volvo as long as it can help to further develop and further enhance safety and quality and as long as there are legal requirements and other regulations that Volvo needs to consider.

Volvo will not contribute to the above-described information being disclosed to third parties without the vehicle owner's consent. However, due to national legislation and regulations Volvo may be required to disclose such information to authorities such as police authorities, or others who may assert a legal right to have access to it.

To be able to read and interpret the information recorded by the computers in the vehicle requires special technical equipment that Volvo, and workshops that have entered into agreements with Volvo, have access to. Volvo

is responsible that the information, which is transferred to Volvo during servicing and maintenance, is stored and handled in a secure manner and that the handling complies with applicable legal requirements. For further information - contact a Volvo dealer.

### Accessories and extra equipment

The incorrect connection and installation of accessories can negatively affect the car's electrical system. Certain accessories only function when their associated software is installed in the car's computer system. Volvo therefore recommends that you always contact an authorised Volvo workshop before installing accessories which are connected to or affect the electrical system.

### Change of ownership for cars with Volvo On Call\*

Volvo On Call is a supplemental service that consists of safety, security and comfort services. If the car has Volvo On Call and there is a change of owner, it is very important that these services are discontinued so that the former owner cannot access the services in the car. Contact the call centre by pressing the **ON CALL** button in the car or contact an authorised Volvo workshop. See also "Changing the security code" in the owner's manual for Volvo On Call.

**Important information****Information on the Internet**

At [www.volvocars.com](http://www.volvocars.com) there is further information concerning your car.

To be able to read the QR code, you need a QR code reader, which is available as an add-on for a number of mobile phones. A QR code reader can be downloaded from the App Store or Android Market.



*QR code*



## Volvo and the environment

### Volvo Cars' environmental philosophy



Environmental care is one of Volvo Car Corporation's core values which influence all operations. We also believe that our customers share our consideration for the environment.

Your Volvo complies with strict international environmental standards and is also manufactured in one of the cleanest and most resource-efficient plants in the world. Volvo Car Corporation has global ISO certification, which includes the environmental standard ISO 14001 covering all factories and several of our other units. We also set requirements for our partners so that they work systematically with environmental issues.

#### Fuel consumption

Volvo cars have competitive fuel consumption in each of their respective classes. Lower fuel consumption generally results in lower emission of the greenhouse gas, carbon dioxide.

It is possible for the driver to influence fuel consumption. For more information read under the heading, **Reducing environmental impact**.

#### Efficient emission control

Your Volvo is manufactured following the concept "Clean inside and out" – a concept that encompasses a clean interior environment as well as highly efficient emission control. In

many cases the exhaust emissions are well below the applicable standards.

#### Clean air in the passenger compartment

A passenger compartment filter prevents dust and pollen from entering the passenger compartment via the air intake.

A sophisticated air quality system, IAQS\* (Interior Air Quality System) ensures that the incoming air is cleaner than the air in the traffic outside.

The system consists of an electronic sensor and a carbon filter. The incoming air is monitored continuously and if there is an increase in





## Volvo and the environment

the level of certain unhealthy gases such as carbon monoxide then the air intake is closed. Such a situation may arise in heavy traffic, queues and tunnels for example.

The entry of nitrous oxides, ground-level ozone and hydrocarbons is prevented by the carbon filter.

### Interior

The interior of a Volvo is designed to be pleasant and comfortable, even for people with contact allergies and for asthma sufferers. Extreme attention has been given to choosing environmentally-compatible materials.

### Volvo workshops and the environment

Regular maintenance creates the conditions for a long service life and low fuel consumption for your car. In this way you contribute to a cleaner environment. When Volvo's workshops are entrusted with the service and maintenance of your car it becomes part of our system. Volvo makes clear demands regarding the way in which our workshops are designed in order to prevent spills and discharges into the environment. Our workshop staff have the knowledge and the tools required to guarantee good environmental care.

### Reducing environmental impact

You can easily help reduce environmental impact - here are a few tips:

- Avoid letting the engine idle - switch off the engine when stationary for longer periods. Pay attention to local regulations.
- Drive economically - think ahead.
- Perform service and maintenance in accordance with the owner's manual's instructions - follow the Service and Warranty Booklet's recommended intervals.
- If the car is equipped with an engine block heater\*, use it before starting from cold - it improves starting capacity and reduces wear in cold weather and the engine reaches normal operating temperature more quickly, which lowers consumption and reduces emissions.
- High speed increases consumption considerably due to increased wind resistance - a doubling of speed increases wind resistance 4 times.
- Always dispose of environmentally hazardous waste, such as batteries and oils, in an environmentally safe manner. Consult a workshop in the event of uncertainty about how this type of waste should be discarded - an authorised Volvo workshop is recommended.

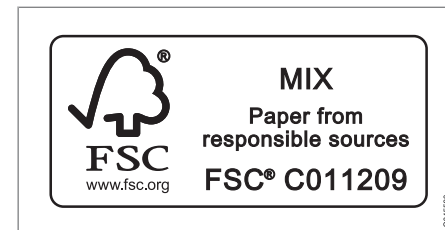
Following this advice can save money, the planet's resources are saved, and the car's durability is extended. For more information and further advice, see the pages 286 and 376.

### Recycling

As a part of Volvo's environmental work, it is important that the car is recycled in an environmentally sound manner. Almost all of the car can be recycled. The last owner of the car is therefore requested to contact a dealer for referral to a certified/approved recycling facility.

### The owner's manual and the environment

The Forest Stewardship Council® symbol shows that the paper pulp in this publication comes from FSC® certified forests or other controlled sources.



Seatbelts .....	14
Airbags.....	17
Activating/deactivating the airbag* .....	20
Side airbags (SIPS bags) .....	22
Inflatable Curtain (IC) .....	24
WHIPS .....	25
When the systems deploy .....	27
Safety mode.....	28
Pedestrian airbag (Pedestrian Airbag).....	29
Child safety.....	31



# 01

SAFETY





## Seatbelts

### General information



Heavy braking can have serious consequences if the seatbelts are not used. Ensure that all passengers use their seatbelts.

It is important that the seatbelt lies against the body so it can provide maximum protection. Do not lean the backrest too far back. The seatbelt is designed to protect in a normal seating position.

### Putting on a seatbelt

Pull the belt out slowly and secure it by pressing its locking tab into the seatbelt buckle. A loud "click" indicates that the belt has locked.



Correctly fitted seatbelt.



Incorrectly fitted seatbelt. The belt must rest on the shoulder.



Seatbelt height adjustment. Press the button and move the belt vertically. Position the belt as high as possible without it chafing against your throat.

The locking tab at the centre rear seat only fits into the intended seatbelt buckle.

### Releasing the seatbelt

Press the red button on the seatbelt buckle and then let the belt retract. If the seatbelt does not retract fully, feed it in by hand so that it does not hang loose.

**The seatbelt locks and cannot be withdrawn:**

- if it is pulled out too quickly
- during braking and acceleration
- if the car leans heavily.



## Seatbelts

### Make sure that you:

- do not use clips or anything else that can prevent the seatbelt from fitting properly
- ensure that the seatbelt is not twisted or caught on anything
- the hip strap must be positioned low down (not over the abdomen)
- tension the hip strap over the lap by pulling the diagonal shoulder belt up towards the shoulder.

### WARNING

The seatbelts and airbags interact. If a seatbelt is not used or is used incorrectly, this may diminish the protection provided by the airbag in the event of a collision.

### WARNING

Each seatbelt is designed for only one person.

### WARNING

Never modify or repair the seatbelts yourself. Volvo recommends that you contact an authorised Volvo workshop.

If the seatbelt has been subjected to a major load, such as in conjunction with a collision, the entire seatbelt must be replaced. Some of the seatbelt's protective properties may have been lost even if the seatbelt does not appear damaged. The seatbelt must also be replaced if it shows signs of wear or damage. The new seatbelt must be type-approved and designed for installation at the same location as the replaced seatbelt.

### Seatbelts and pregnancy



The seatbelt should always be worn during pregnancy. But it is crucial that it be worn in the

correct way. The diagonal section should wrap over the shoulder then be routed between the breasts and to the side of the abdomen.

The lap section should lay flat over the thighs and as low as possible under the abdomen. – It must never be allowed to ride upward. Remove the slack from the seatbelt and ensure that it fits as close to the body as possible. In addition, check that there are no twists in the seatbelt.

As the pregnancy progresses, pregnant drivers should adjust their seats and steering wheel such that they can easily maintain control of the vehicle as they drive (which means that they must be able to easily operate the foot pedals and steering wheel). The aim should be to position the seat with as large a distance as possible between abdomen and steering wheel.



## Seatbelts

### Seatbelt reminder



Unbelted occupants will be reminded to fasten their seatbelts by means of an audio and visual reminder. The audio reminder is speed dependent, and in some cases time dependent. The visual reminder is located in the roof console and the combined instrument panel.

Child seats are not covered by the seatbelt reminder system.

### Rear seat

The seatbelt reminder in the rear seat has two subfunctions:

- Provides information on which seatbelts are being used in the rear seat. A message appears in the information display when the seatbelts are in use, or if one of the rear doors has been opened. The message is cleared automatically after driving for approximately 30 seconds or after pressing the indicator stalk's **OK** button.
- Provides a warning if one of the rear seatbelts is unfastened during travel. This warning takes the form of a message on the information display along with the audio/visual signal. The warning stops when the seatbelt is re-fastened, or it can also be acknowledged manually by pressing the **OK** button.

The information display, see page 69, shows which seatbelts are in use. This information is always available.

### Seatbelt tensioner

The seatbelts on the driver's side, the passenger side and at the outer rear seats are fitted with seatbelt tensioners. A mechanism in the seatbelt tensioner tightens the seatbelt in the event of a sufficiently violent collision. The seatbelt then provides more effective restraint for the occupants.



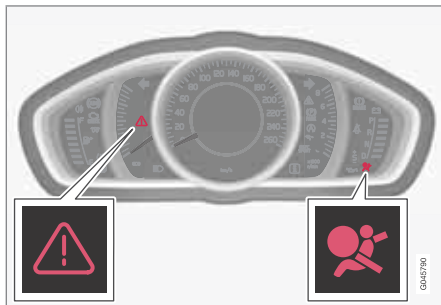
### WARNING

Never insert the tongue of the passenger's seatbelt into the buckle on the driver's side. Always insert the tongue of the seatbelt into the buckle on the correct side. Do not make any damages on seatbelts nor insert any foreign objects into a buckle. The seatbelts and buckles would then possibly not function as intended in the event of a collision. There is a risk of serious injury.



## Airbags

### Warning symbol on the combined instrument panel



Analogue combined instrument panel.

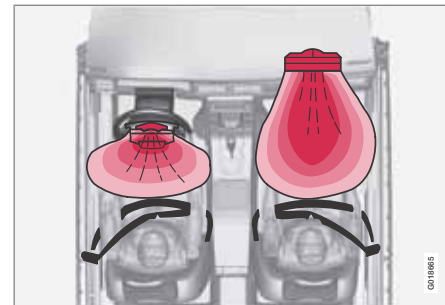
The warning symbol in the combined instrument panel<sup>1</sup> illuminates when the remote control key is in key position II. The symbol clears after approx. 6 seconds provided the airbag system is fault-free.

### WARNING

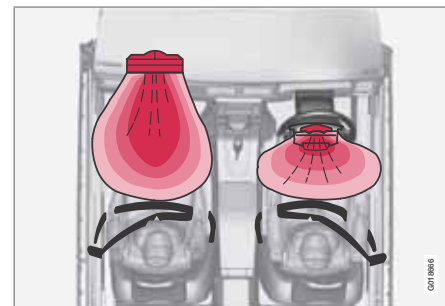
If the warning symbol for the airbag system remains illuminated or illuminates while driving, it means that the airbag system does not have full functionality. The symbol indicates a fault in the airbag system, the belt tensioner system, SIPS, the IC system or some other fault in the system. Volvo recommends that you contact an authorised Volvo workshop immediately.

As well as the warning symbol, a message may appear on the information display in appropriate cases. If the warning symbol malfunctions, the warning triangle illuminates and **SRS airbag Service required** or **SRS airbag Service urgent** appears in the display. Volvo recommends that you contact an authorised Volvo workshop immediately.

### Airbag system



Airbag system viewed from above, left-hand-drive car.



Airbag system viewed from above, right-hand-drive car.

<sup>1</sup> See also page 69 for different variants of the combined instrument panel.



## Airbags

The system consists of airbags and sensors. A sufficiently violent collision trips the sensors and the airbag(s) are inflated and become hot. To cushion the impact, the airbag deflates when compressed. When this occurs, smoke escapes into the car. This is completely normal. The entire process, including inflation and deflation of the airbag, occurs within tenths of a second.

### WARNING

Volvo recommends that you contact an authorised Volvo workshop for repair. Defective work in the airbag system could cause malfunction and result in serious personal injury.

### NOTE

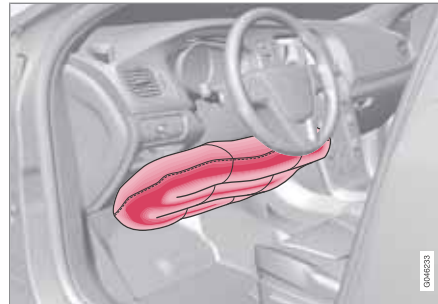
The sensors react differently depending on the course of the collision and whether or not the seatbelts on the driver and passenger side are used.

It is therefore possible that only one (or none) of the airbags may inflate in a collision. The airbag system senses the force of the collision on the car and adapts accordingly so that one or more airbags are deployed.

Individual airbags are also adapted to the collision force to which the vehicle is subjected.

### Airbags on the driver's side

The car has two airbags to supplement the protection afforded by the seatbelt on the driver's side. One of the airbags is folded up in the centre of the steering wheel (see the illustration on page 17); the steering wheel is labelled **AIRBAG**.



*Knee airbag on the driver's side in a left-hand drive car.*

The second airbag (at knee level) is fitted in the lower part of the instrument panel on the driver's side; this panel is labelled **AIRBAG**.

### WARNING

The seatbelts and airbags interact. If the belt is not used or is used incorrectly, this may diminish the protection provided by the airbags in the event of a collision.

### Passenger airbag



*Location of the front passenger airbag in a left-hand drive car.*



*Location of the front passenger airbag in a right-hand drive car.*





## Airbags

The car has an airbag to supplement the protection afforded by the seatbelt on the passenger side. It is folded up into a compartment above the glovebox. Its cover panel is marked **AIRBAG**.

**WARNING**

The seatbelts and airbags interact. If the belt is not used or is used incorrectly, this may diminish the protection provided by the airbag in the event of a collision.

To minimise the risk of injury if the airbag deploys, passengers must sit as upright as possible with their feet on the floor and backs against the backrest. Seatbelts must be secured.

**WARNING**

Do not put objects in front of or above the dashboard where the passenger airbag is located.

**WARNING**

Never place a child in a child seat or on a booster cushion in the front seat if the airbag is activated.

Never allow anybody to stand or sit in front of the front passenger seat.

No one shorter than 140 cm should ever sit in the front passenger seat if the airbag is activated.

Failure to follow the advice given above can endanger life.



## Activating/deactivating the airbag\*

### Key switch off - PACOS\*

#### General information

The airbag for the front passenger seat can be deactivated if the car is equipped with a switch, PACOS (Passenger Airbag Cut Off Switch). For information on how to activate/deactivate, see under the heading Activating/deactivating.

#### Key switch off/switch

The switch for the passenger airbag (PACOS) is located on the passenger end of the instrument panel and is accessible when the passenger door is open (see under the heading below, Activating/deactivating).

Check that the switch is in the required position. Volvo recommends that the remote control key's key blade be used to change position.

For information on the key blade, see page 46.


#### WARNING

Failure to follow the advice given above can endanger the lives of passengers in the car.

#### WARNING

If the car is equipped with a front passenger airbag, but does not have a PACOS switch (Passenger Airbag Cut Off Switch), then the airbag will always be activated.

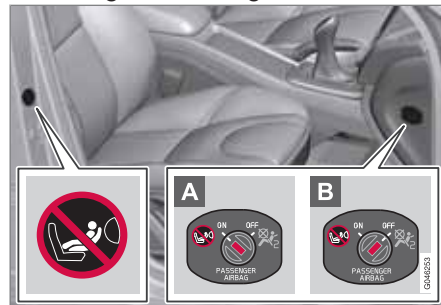
#### WARNING

Never place a child in a child seat or on a booster cushion in the front seat if the airbag is activated and the symbol  in the roof console is illuminated. Failure to follow this advice could endanger the life of the child.

#### WARNING

Do not allow anyone to sit in the front passenger seat if the message in the roof console (see page 21) indicates that the airbag is deactivated and if the warning symbol for the airbag system is also displayed in the combined instrument panel. This indicates that there has been a severe malfunction. Visit a workshop as soon as possible. Volvo recommends that you contact an authorised Volvo workshop.

### Activating/deactivating



Position of airbag label plus switch.

- A** The airbag is activated. With the switch in this position, persons taller than 140 cm can sit in the front passenger seat, but never children in a child seat or on a booster cushion.
- B** The airbag is deactivated. With the switch in this position, children in a child seat or on a booster cushion can sit in the front passenger seat, but never persons taller than 140 cm.



## Activating/deactivating the airbag\*

### **!** WARNING

#### **Activated airbag** (passenger seat):

Never place a child in a child seat or on a booster cushion on the front passenger seat when the airbag is activated. This applies to everyone shorter than 140 cm.

#### **Deactivated airbag** (passenger seat):

No one taller than 140 cm should ever sit in the front passenger seat when the airbag is deactivated.

Failure to follow the advice given above can endanger life.

### **i** NOTE

When the remote control key is in key position **II** the warning symbol for the airbag is displayed on the combined instrument panel for approx. 6 seconds (see page 17).

Following which, the indicator in the roof console is illuminated showing the correct status for the front passenger seat airbag. For more information about the different key positions for the remote control key, see page 79.

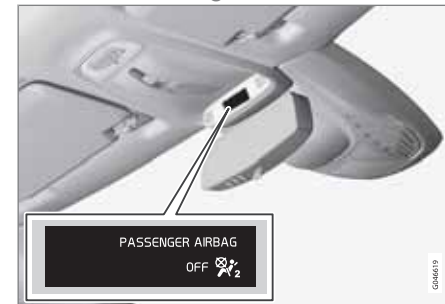
#### Activated airbag



*Indicator showing that the passenger airbag is activated.*

A text message and a warning symbol in the roof console indicate that the airbag for the front passenger seat is activated (see preceding illustration).

#### Deactivated airbag



*Indicator showing that the passenger airbag is deactivated.*

A text message and a symbol in the roof console indicate that the airbag for the front passenger seat is deactivated (see preceding illustration).

\* Option/accessory, for more information, see Introduction.



## Side airbags (SIPS bags)

### Side airbag



In a side impact collision a large proportion of the collision force is transferred by the SIPS (Side Impact Protection System) to beams, pillars, the floor, the roof and other structural parts of the body. The side airbags at the driver's and front passenger seats protect the chest area and the hip and are an important part of the SIPS.

The SIPS bag system consists of two main components, side airbag and sensors. The side airbags are located in the front seat backrests.

**WARNING**

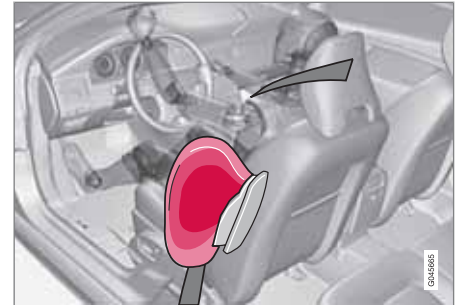
- Volvo recommends that repairs are only carried out by an authorised Volvo workshop. Defective work in the SIPS-bag system could cause malfunction and result in serious personal injury.
- Do not put objects in the area between the outside of the seat and the door panel, since this area is required by the side airbag.
- Volvo recommends the use only of car seat covers approved by Volvo. Other seat covers may impede the operation of the side airbags.
- Side airbags are a supplement the seatbelts. Always use a seatbelt.

### Child seats and side airbags

The protection provided by the car to children seated in a child seat or on a booster cushion is not diminished by the side airbag.

A child seat or booster cushion can be placed on the front passenger seat provided that the car does not have an activated<sup>1</sup> passenger airbag.

### Location



Driver's seat, left-hand drive.



Front passenger seat, left-hand drive.

The SIPS bag system consists of side airbags and sensors. A sufficiently violent collision trips

<sup>1</sup> For information on activating/deactivating the airbag, see page 20.

**Side airbags (SIPS bags)**

the sensors and the side airbags are inflated. The airbag inflates between the occupant and the door panel and thereby cushions the initial impact. The airbag deflates when compressed by the collision. The side airbag is normally only deployed on the side of the collision.



## Inflatable Curtain (IC)

### Properties



The inflatable curtain IC (Inflatable Curtain) is a part of SIPS and the airbags. It is fitted in the headlining along both sides of the roof and protects the car's occupants sitting in the outer seats. A sufficiently violent collision trips the sensors and the inflatable curtain is inflated. The inflatable curtain helps to prevent the driver and passengers from striking their heads on the inside of the car during a collision.

### WARNING

Never hang or attach heavy items onto the handles in the roof. The hook is only designed for light clothing (not for solid objects such as umbrellas for example).

Do not screw or install anything onto the car's headlining, door pillars or side panels. This could compromise the intended protection. Volvo recommends that you only ever use Volvo genuine parts that are approved for placement in these areas.

### WARNING

Do not load the car higher than 50 mm under the top edge of the windows in the doors. Otherwise, the intended protection of the inflatable curtain, which is concealed in the headlining, may be compromised.

### WARNING

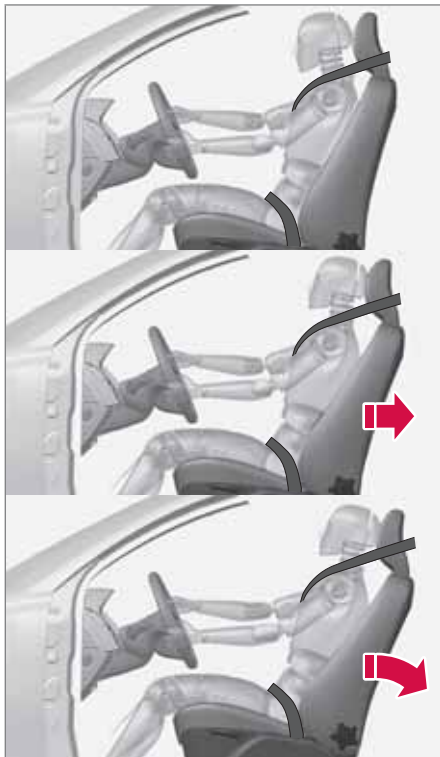
The inflatable curtain is a supplement to the seatbelts.

Always use a seatbelt.



## WHIPS

## Protection against whiplash injury – WHIPS



The whiplash protection system (WHIPS) consists of energy absorbing backrests and specially designed head restraints in the front seats. The system is actuated by a rear-end collision, where the angle and speed of the collision, and the nature of the colliding vehicle all have an influence.

### WARNING

The WHIPS system is a supplement to the seatbelts. Always use a seatbelt.

### Properties of the seat

When the WHIPS system is deployed, the front seat backrests are lowered backward to alter the seating position of the driver and front seat passenger. This reduces the risk of whiplash injury.

### WARNING

Never modify or repair the seat or WHIPS system yourself. Volvo recommends that you contact an authorised Volvo workshop.

### WHIPS system and child seats/booster cushions

The protection provided by the car to children seated in a child seat or on a booster cushion is not diminished by the WHIPS system.

### Correct seating position

For the best possible protection, the driver and front seat passenger should sit in the centre of the seat with as little space as possible between the head and the head restraint.

### Do not obstruct the WHIPS system



Do not leave any objects on the floor behind the driver's seat/passenger seat that may prevent the WHIPS system from functioning.

### WARNING

Do not squeeze rigid objects between the rear seat cushion and the front seat backrest. Make sure you do not obstruct the function of the WHIPS system.



## WHIPS



*Do not place objects on the rear seat that may prevent the WHIPS system from functioning.*

### **WARNING**

If a rear seat backrest is folded down, the corresponding front seat must be moved forward so that it does not touch the folded backrest.

### **WARNING**

If a seat has been subjected to extreme forces, such as due to a rear-end collision, the WHIPS system must be checked. Volvo recommends that it is checked by an authorised Volvo workshop.

Part of the WHIPS system's protective capacity may have been lost even if the seats appear to be undamaged.

Volvo recommends that you contact an authorised Volvo workshop to have the system checked even after a minor rear-end collision.





## When the systems deploy

## When the systems deploy

System	Triggered
Seatbelt tensioner, front seat	In the event of a frontal collision, and/or side-impact collision, and/or rear-end collision and/or overturning
Seatbelt tensioner, rear seat <sup>A</sup>	In a frontal collision and/or side-impact accident and/or overturning
Airbags (Steering wheel airbag, knee airbag, passenger airbag)	In a frontal collision <sup>B</sup>
Side airbags (SIPS)	In a side-impact accident <sup>B</sup>

System	Triggered
Inflatable Curtain IC	In the event of a side impact and/or overturning and/or some frontal collisions <sup>B</sup>
Whiplash protection WHIPS	In a rear-end collision

<sup>A</sup> There is no seatbelt tensioner at the centre rear seat.

<sup>B</sup> The bodywork of the car could be greatly deformed in a collision without airbag deployment. A number of factors such as the rigidity and weight of the object hit, the speed of the car, the angle of the collision etc. affects how the different safety systems of the car are activated.

If the airbags have deployed, the following is recommended:

- Recovering the car. Volvo recommends that you have it conveyed to an authorised Volvo workshop. Do not drive with deployed airbags.
- Volvo recommends that you engage an authorised Volvo workshop to handle the replacement of components in the car's safety systems.
- Always contact a doctor.



## NOTE

The airbags and belt tensioner system are deployed only once during a collision.



## WARNING

The airbag system's control module is located in the centre console. If the centre console is drenched with water or other liquid, disconnect the battery cables. Do not attempt to start the car since the airbags may deploy. Recovering the car. Volvo recommends that you have it conveyed to an authorised Volvo workshop.



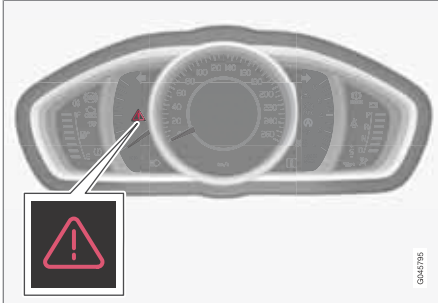
## WARNING

Never drive with deployed airbags. They can make steering difficult. Other safety systems may also be damaged. The smoke and dust created when the airbags are deployed can cause skin and eye irritation/injury after intensive exposure. In case of irritation, wash with cold water. The rapid deployment sequence and airbag fabric may cause friction and skin burns.



## Safety mode

### Driving after a collision



Warning symbol in the analogue combined instrument panel<sup>1</sup>.

If the car is involved in a collision, the text **Safety mode See manual** may appear on the information display. This means that the car has reduced functionality. Safety mode is a protective state that is enforced when the collision may have damaged any of the car's vital functions, such as the fuel lines, sensors for one of the safety systems, or the brake system.

### Attempting to start the car

First, check that no fuel is leaking from the car. There must be no smell of fuel either.

If everything seems normal and you have checked for indications of fuel leakage, you may attempt to start the car.

Remove the remote control key and open the driver's door. If a message is now shown to the effect that the ignition is on, press the start button. Then close the door and reinsert the remote control key. The car's electronics will now try to reset themselves to normal mode. Then try to start the car.

If the message **Safety mode See manual** is still shown on the display then the car must not be driven or towed, but a vehicle recovery service used instead. Even if the car appears to be driveable, hidden damage may make the car impossible to control once moving.

### Moving the car

If **Normal mode** is shown after **Safety mode See manual** has been reset, the car can be moved carefully out of a dangerous position. Do not move the car further than necessary.

### WARNING

Never attempt to repair your car or reset the electronics yourself if the car has been in safety mode. This could result in personal injury or the car not functioning as normal. Volvo recommends that you engage an authorised Volvo workshop to check and restore the car to normal status after **Safety mode See manual** has been displayed.

### WARNING

Never, under any circumstances, attempt to restart the car if it smells of fuel when the **Safety mode See manual** message is displayed. Leave the car at once.

### WARNING

If the car is in safety mode it must not be towed. It must be transported from its location. Volvo recommends that it is transported to an authorised Volvo workshop.

<sup>1</sup> See also page 69 for different variants of the combined instrument panel.



## Pedestrian airbag (Pedestrian Airbag)

### Properties



The airbag (Pedestrian Airbag) is fitted under the bonnet near the windscreen. In the event of a frontal collision with a pedestrian, the sensors in the front bumper react and the airbag inflates if required based on the force of the impact. The sensors are active at a speed of approx. 20-50 km/h and an ambient temperature between -20 and +70°C.

If the airbag is activated (Pedestrian Airbag):

- the rear part of the bonnet is raised and locked in this position
- the brake system is prepared for the upcoming emergency braking.

### WARNING

Do not fit any accessories or change anything in the front. Incorrect intervention at the front may cause incorrect function in the system and lead to serious injury and damage to the car.

Volvo recommends that genuine wiper arms are used and that you only use genuine parts for them.

### Handling after activation

If any of the other airbags in the passenger compartment were activated, the car remains in safety mode, see page 28.

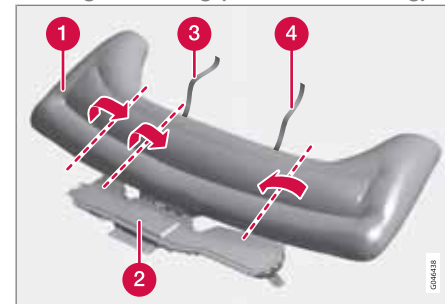
If only the pedestrian airbag was activated:

1. Move the car to a safe location as close as possible.
2. Fold the airbag following the instructions under the next heading "Folding the airbag (Pedestrian Airbag)".
3. Seek the nearest workshop.

### WARNING

Volvo recommends that, after activation of the airbag, you contact an authorised Volvo workshop as soon as possible.

### Folding the airbag (Pedestrian Airbag)



- 1 Airbag (Pedestrian Airbag)
- 2 Airbag housing
- 3 Velcro strap, passenger side
- 4 Velcro strap, driver's side

The airbag may feel warm and give off smoke. This is normal. Fold the airbag as follows:

1. Find the Velcro strap on the driver's side (4).
2. Gather the airbag fabric along its length on the driver's side. Then fold the gathered fabric towards the centre. Wind the Velcro strap (double sided) around as much fabric as possible and fasten it.



## **Pedestrian airbag (Pedestrian Airbag)**

3. Press the rolled up portion of the airbag into the airbag housing (2).
4. Repeat steps 1-3 for the passenger side. It may be necessary to fold the gathered fabric twice on this side in order to wind the Velcro strap around it.
5. The airbag housing cover will be open slightly. This is completely normal.



## Child safety

### Children should sit comfortably and safely

Volvo recommends that children travel in rear-facing child seats until as late an age as possible, at least until 3-4 years of age, and then front-facing booster cushions/child seats until up to 10 years of age.

The position of a child in the car and the choice of equipment are dictated by the child's weight and size, for more information, see page 32.

#### **i** NOTE

Regulations regarding the placement of children in cars vary from country to country. Check what does apply.

Children of all ages and sizes must always sit correctly secured in the car. Never allow a child to sit on the knee of a passenger.

Volvo has child safety equipment (child seats, booster cushions & attachment devices) which is designed for your particular car. Using Volvo's child safety equipment provides you with optimum conditions for your child to travel safely in the car. Furthermore, the child safety equipment fits and is easy to use.

#### **i** NOTE

In the event of questions when fitting child safety products, contact the manufacturer for clearer instructions.

### Child seats



*Child seats and airbags are not compatible.*

#### **i** NOTE

When using child safety products it is important to read the installation instructions included.

#### **!** WARNING

Do not secure the straps of the child seat to the seat's horizontal adjustment bar, springs or the rails and beams under the seat. Sharp edges may damage the straps.

Look in the installation instructions for the child seat for the correct fitting.

### Location of child seats

You may place:

- a child seat/booster cushion on the passenger seat, provided the passenger airbag is not activated<sup>1</sup>.
- one or more child seats/booster cushions in the rear seat.

Always fit child seats/booster cushions in the rear seat if the passenger airbag is activated. If a child is sitting on the front passenger seat then he/she could suffer serious injury if the airbag deploys.

<sup>1</sup> For information on activated/deactivated airbag, see page 20.



# 01 Safety

01

## Child safety

### WARNING

Never place a child in a child seat or on a booster cushion in the front seat if the airbag (SRS) is activated.

No one shorter than 140 cm should ever sit in the front passenger seat if the airbag (SRS) is activated.

Failure to follow the advice given above can endanger life.

### WARNING

Booster cushions/child seats with steel braces or some other design that could rest on the seatbelt buckle's opening button must not be used, as they could cause the seatbelt buckle to open accidentally.

Do not allow the upper section of the child seat to rest against the windscreen.

### Label Airbag



*The label becomes visible when the passenger door is opened; see the illustration on page 20.*

## Recommended child seats<sup>2</sup>

Weight	Front seat (with deactivated airbag)	Outer rear seat	Centre rear seat
Group 0 max 10 kg		Volvo infant seat (Volvo Infant Seat) - rear-facing child seat, secured with the ISOFIX fixture system.	
Group 0+ max 13 kg		Type approval: E5 04301146 (L)	
Group 0 max 10 kg	Volvo infant seat (Volvo Infant Seat) - rear-facing child seat, secured with the car's seatbelt.	Volvo infant seat (Volvo Infant Seat) - rear-facing child seat, secured with the car's seatbelt.	Volvo infant seat (Volvo Infant Seat) - rear-facing child seat, secured with the car's seatbelt.
Group 0+ max 13 kg	Type approval: E1 04301146 (U)	Type approval: E1 04301146 (U)	Type approval: E1 04301146 (U)

<sup>2</sup> With regard to other child seats your car should be included in the manufacturer's enclosed list of vehicles or be universally approved in accordance with the ECE R44 legal requirement.



## Child safety

Weight	Front seat (with deactivated air-bag)	Outer rear seat	Centre rear seat
Group 0 max 10 kg  Group 0+ max 13 kg		Child seats which are universally approved. (U)	
Group 1 9-18 kg	Volvo rear-facing/turnable child seat (Volvo Convertible Child Seat) - rear-facing child seat, secured with the car's seatbelt and straps.  Type approval: E5 04192 (L)	Volvo rear-facing/turnable child seat (Volvo Convertible Child Seat) - rear-facing child seat, secured with the car's seatbelt and straps.  Type approval: E5 04192 (L)	
Group 1 9-18 kg		Child seats which are universally approved. (U)	
Group 2 15-25 kg	Volvo rear-facing/turnable child seat (Volvo Convertible Child Seat) - rear-facing child seat, secured with the car's seatbelt and straps.  Type approval: E5 04192 (L)	Volvo rear-facing/turnable child seat (Volvo Convertible Child Seat) - rear-facing child seat, secured with the car's seatbelt and straps.  Type approval: E5 04192 (L)	



## Child safety

Weight	Front seat (with deactivated air-bag)	Outer rear seat	Centre rear seat
Group 2 15-25 kg	Volvo rear-facing/turnable child seat (Volvo Convertible Child Seat) - front-facing child seat, secured with the car's seatbelt. Type approval: E5 04191 (L)	Volvo rear-facing/turnable child seat (Volvo Convertible Child Seat) - front-facing child seat, secured with the car's seatbelt. Type approval: E5 04191 (L)	
Group 2/3 15-36 kg	Volvo booster seat with backrest (Volvo Booster Seat with backrest). Type approval: E1 04301169 (UF)	Volvo booster seat with backrest (Volvo Booster Seat with backrest). Type approval: E1 04301169 (UF)	
Group 2/3 15-36 kg	Booster cushion with and without backrest (Booster Cushion with and without backrest). Type approval: E5 03139 (UF)	Booster cushion with and without backrest (Booster Cushion with and without backrest). Type approval: E5 03139 (UF)	

L: Suitable for specific child seats. These child seats may be intended for use in a special car model, limited or semi-universal categories.

U: Suitable for universally approved child seats in this weight class.

UF: Suitable for front-facing universally approved child seats in this weight class.

B: Built-in child seats approved for this weight class.





## Child safety

**Child safety locks, rear doors**

The controls for operating the rear door power windows and the rear door opening handles can be blocked from opening from the inside. For more information, see page 60.

**ISOFIX fixture system for child seats**

Mounting points for the ISOFIX fixture system are located at the lower section of the rear seat backrest, in the outer seats.

The location of the mounting points is indicated by symbols in the backrest upholstery (see preceding illustration).

Always follow the manufacturer's installation instructions when connecting a child seat to the ISOFIX mounting points.

**Size classes**

Child seats are in different sizes – cars are in different sizes. This means that not all child seats are suitable for all seats in all car models.

Consequently, there is a size classification for child seats using the ISOFIX fixture system in order to assist users in choosing the correct child seat (see the following table).

Size class	Description
A	Full size, front-facing child seat
B	Reduced size (alt. 1), front-facing child seat
B1	Reduced size (alt.2), front-facing child seat
C	Full size, rear-facing child seat

Size class	Description
D	Reduced size, rear-facing child seat
E	Rear-facing infant seat
F	Transverse infant seat, left-hand
G	Transverse infant seat, right-hand

**WARNING**

Never place the child in the passenger seat if the car is fitted with an activated airbag.

**NOTE**

If an ISOFIX child seat has no size classification, the car model must be included on the vehicle list for the child seat.

**NOTE**

Volvo recommends that you contact an authorised Volvo dealer for recommendations about which ISOFIX child seats Volvo recommends.



## Child safety

### Types of ISOFIX child seat

Type of child seat	Weight	Size class	Passenger seats for ISOFIX installation of child seats	
			Front seat	Outer rear seat
Infant seat transverse	max 10 kg	F	X	X
		G	X	X
Infant seat, rear-facing	max 10 kg	E	X	OK (IL)
Infant seat, rear-facing	max 13 kg	E	X	OK (IL)
		D	X	OK (IL)
		C	X	OK (IL)
Child seat, rear-facing	9-18 kg	D	X	OK (IL)
		C	X	OK (IL)



## Child safety

Type of child seat	Weight	Size class	Passenger seats for ISOFIX installation of child seats	
			Front seat	Outer rear seat
Front-facing child seat	9-18 kg	B	X	OK <sup>A</sup> (IUF)
		B1	X	OK <sup>A</sup> (IUF)
		A	X	OK <sup>A</sup> (IUF)

X: The ISOFIX position is not suitable for ISOFIX child seats in this weight class and/or size class.

IL: Suitable for specific ISOFIX child seats. These child seats may be intended for use in a special car model, limited or semi-universal categories.

IUF: Suitable for front-facing ISOFIX child seats that are universally approved in this weight class.

<sup>A</sup> Volvo recommends rear-facing child seats for this group.



## Child safety

### Upper mounting points for child seats



The car is equipped with upper mounting points for certain front-facing child seats. These mounting points are located on the rear of the seat.

The upper mounting points are primarily intended for use with front-facing child seats. Volvo recommends that small children should sit in rear-facing child seats to as late an age as possible.

#### **i** NOTE

Fold the head restraints in order to facilitate fitting this type of child seat in cars with folding head restraints on the outer seats.

#### **i** NOTE

In cars with a cargo cover over the luggage compartment, this must be removed before child seats can be attached to the securing points.

For detailed information on how the child seat should be tensioned in the upper mounting points, see the seat manufacturer's instructions.

#### **⚠** WARNING

The child seat's straps must always be drawn through the hole in the head restraint leg before they are tensioned at the attachment point.



[Empty rectangular box]

Remote control key/key blade.....	42
Battery replacement, remote control key/PCC*.....	48
Keyless*.....	50
Locking/unlocking.....	54
Child safety locks.....	60
Alarm*.....	61



# 02

## LOCKS AND ALARM





### Remote control key/key blade

#### General

The car is supplied with 2 remote control keys or two remote control keys with keyless function. They are used to start the car and for locking and unlocking.

The remote control key contains a removable key blade made of metal. The visible section is available in two versions so that it is possible to distinguish between the remote control keys.

Additional remote control keys can be ordered - up to 6 can be programmed and used for the same car.

There are four remote control key variants:

- Remote control key, standard<sup>1</sup>
- Remote control key with Keyless start<sup>1</sup>
- Remote control key with Keyless drive<sup>1</sup>
- PCC with Keyless drive<sup>2</sup>

For information on remote control key function buttons see page 44.

PCC plus remote control key with keyless function has extended functionality compared to the standard remote control key. The rest of

this chapter describes functions available in all variants.

#### WARNING

If there are children in the car:

Remember to switch off the supply to the power windows by removing the remote control key if the driver leaves the car.

#### Loss of a remote control key

If you lose a remote control key then a new one can be ordered at a workshop - an authorised Volvo workshop is recommended. The remaining remote control keys must then be taken to the workshop. The code of the missing remote control key must be erased from the system as a theft prevention measure.

The current number of keys registered to the car can be checked in the menu system **MY CAR** under **Information** → **Number of keys**.

For a description of the menu system, see page 203.

#### Key memory<sup>3</sup> - door mirrors, driver's seat and steering force

The settings are automatically connected to each respective remote control key, see pages 82, 104 and 233.

The function can be activated/deactivated in the menu system **MY CAR** under **Settings** → **Car settings** → **Car key memory**.

For a description of the menu system, see page 203.

For remote control keys with keyless function, see page 50.

#### Indicator for locking/unlocking

When the car is locked or unlocked using the remote control key, the direction indicators confirm that locking/unlocking was correctly performed.

- Locking - one flash and the door mirrors are folded<sup>4</sup> in.
- Unlocking - two flashes and the door mirrors are folded<sup>4</sup> out.

<sup>1</sup> 5-button key

<sup>2</sup> 6-button key

<sup>3</sup> Only in combination with power driver's seat and power mirrors.

<sup>4</sup> Only for cars with retractable power door mirrors.





## Remote control key/key blade

**NOTE**

Be aware of the risk of locking the remote control key in the car.

When locking, indication is given only if all locks have been locked and all doors are closed. Indication is given when the last door has been closed.

**Selecting the function**

Different options for indicating locking/unlocking with light can be set in the car's menu system, see page 203.

Search in the menu system **MY CAR** for **Settings → Car settings → Light settings** and select **Door lock confirmation light** and/or **Unlock confirmation light**.

**Lock indicator**

Same LED as alarm indicator, see page 61.

A flashing LED by the windscreen verifies that the car is locked.

**NOTE**

Cars that are not equipped with alarm also have this indicator.

**Immobiliser**

Each remote control key has a unique code. The car can only be started with the correct remote control key with the correct code.

The following error messages in the combined instrument panel's information display are related to the electronic immobiliser:

Message	Specification
Insert car key	Error when reading the remote control key during starting - Remove the key from the ignition switch, press it in again and make a new start attempt.
Car key not found (Applicable only to cars with Keyless.)	Error reading the remote control key during starting - Try to start again.  If the error persists: Insert the remote control key into the ignition switch and try to start again.
Immobiliser Try to start again	Error in immobiliser system during starting. If the error persists: Contact a workshop - an authorised Volvo workshop is recommended.

For starting the car, see page 112.



## Remote control key/key blade

### Functions



5-button remote control key

- Locking
- Unlocking
- Approach light duration
- Tailgate
- Panic function



Remote control key with PCC+ - Personal Car Communicator.

- Information

### Function buttons

**Locking** – Locks the doors and tailgate while the alarm is activated.

Press and hold (at least 2 seconds) to close all windows simultaneously.

### **WARNING**

If windows are closed using the remote control key, check that nobody's hands are trapped.

**Unlocking** – Unlocks the doors and tailgate while the alarm is deactivated.

Press and hold (at least 4 seconds) to open all windows simultaneously.

The function can be changed from unlocking all doors simultaneously, to unlocking the driver's door only with one press of the button and, after a further press of the button - within 10 seconds - unlocking the remaining doors.

The function can be changed in the menu system **MY CAR** under **Settings** → **Car settings** → **Lock settings** → **Doors unlock** with both the alternatives **All doors** and **Driver door**, **then all**. For a description of the menu system, see page 203.

**Approach light duration** – Used to switch on the car's lighting at a distance. For more information, see page 95.

**Tailgate** - Unlocks and disarms the alarm for the tailgate only. For more information, see page 56.

**Panic function** – Used to attract attention in an emergency.

Press and hold the button for at least 3 seconds or press it twice within 3 seconds to activate the direction indicators and the horn.

The function can be turned off with the same button once it has been active for at least 5 seconds. Otherwise the function switches off automatically after 2 minutes and 45 seconds.



## Remote control key/key blade

### Range

The remote control key's functions have a range of about 20 m from the car.

If the car does not verify a button being pressed - move closer and try again.

### **i** NOTE

The remote control key functions may be disrupted by surrounding radio waves, buildings, topographical conditions, etc. The car can always be locked/unlocked with the key blade, see page 47.

### Unique PCC functions\*



Remote control key with PCC\* - Personal Car Communicator.

- 1 Information button
- 2 Indicator lamps

Using the information button enables access to certain information from the car via the indicator lamps.

### Using the information button

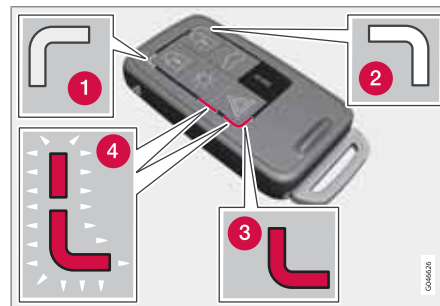
- Press the information button **i**.
  - > All indicator lamps flash for approximately 7 seconds and the light travels around on the PCC. This indicates that information from the car has been read.

If any of the other buttons are pressed during this time then the reading is interrupted.

### **i** NOTE

If none of the indicator lamps illuminates with repeated use of the information button and in different locations (as well as after 7 seconds and after the light has travelled around on the PCC), contact a workshop - an authorised Volvo workshop is recommended.

Indicator lamps display information in accordance with the following illustration:



- 1 Green continuous light - the car is locked.
- 2 Yellow continuous light - the car is unlocked.

\* Option/accessory, for more information, see Introduction.



### Remote control key/key blade

- 3 Red continuous light – the alarm has been triggered since the car was locked.
- 4 Red light flashing alternately in both indicator lamps – The alarm was triggered less than 5 minutes ago.

#### Range PCC

The PCC's range for locking, unlocking and tailgate is about 20 m from the car - for other functions up to about 100 m.

If the car does not verify a button being pressed - move closer and try again.

#### **i** NOTE

The information button function may be disrupted by surrounding radio waves, buildings, topographical conditions, etc.

#### Out of PCC range

If the PCC is too far away from the car for the information to be read then the status the car was last left in is shown, without the light travelling around on the PCC.

If several PCCs are used for the car then it is only the PCC last used for locking/unlocking that shows correct status.

#### **i** NOTE

**i** If none of the indicator lamps illuminates with repeated use of the information button and in different locations (as well as after 7 seconds and after the light has travelled around on the PCC), contact a workshop - an authorised Volvo workshop is recommended.

#### Detachable key blade

A remote control key contains a detachable key blade of metal with which some functions can be activated and some operations carried out.

The key blade's unique code is provided by authorised Volvo workshops, which are recommended when ordering new key blades.

#### Key blade functions

Using the remote control key's detachable key blade:

- the left-hand front door can be opened manually if central locking cannot be activated with the remote control key, see page 51.
- the rear doors' mechanical child safety locks can be activated/deactivated, see page 60.

- the right-hand front door and the rear doors can be locked manually, e.g. in the event of power failure, see page 54.
- The glovebox lock\* opens see page 56.
- the airbag for front passenger seat (PACOS)\* can be activated/deactivated, see page 20.

#### Removing the key blade



- 1 Slide the spring-loaded catch to the side.
- 2 At the same time pull the key blade straight out backwards.

#### Attaching the key blade

Carefully refit the key blade into its location in the remote control key.

**Remote control key/key blade**

1. Hold the remote control key with the slot pointed up and lower the key blade into its slot.
2. Lightly press the key blade. You should hear a "click" when the key blade is locked in.

**Unlocking doors with the key blade**

If central locking cannot be activated with the remote control key - e.g. if the batteries are discharged - then the left-hand front door can be opened as follows:

1. Unlock the left-hand front door with the key blade in the door handle's lock cylinder.

See also the illustration and further information, see page 51.

** NOTE**

When the door has been unlocked using the key blade and is opened, the alarm is triggered.

2. Deactivate the alarm by inserting the remote control key in the ignition switch.

For a car with the Keyless system, see page 51.

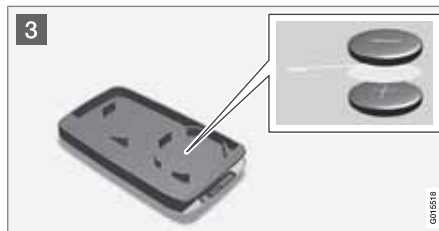


## Battery replacement, remote control key/PCC\*

### Replacing the battery

The batteries should be replaced if:

- the information symbol is illuminated and the display shows **Low battery in remote control**. Please change batteries.
- and/or
- the locks repeatedly do not react to signals from the remote control key within 20 metres from the car.



### Opening

- 1** Slide the spring-loaded catch to the side.
- 2** At the same time pull the key blade straight out backwards.
- 3** Insert a 3 mm slot screwdriver in the hole behind the spring-loaded catch and gently prize the remote control key up.

### NOTE

Turn the remote control key over with the buttons facing up, this is to avoid the batteries falling out when it is opened.

### IMPORTANT

Avoid touching new batteries and their contact surfaces with your fingers as this may impair their function.

### Battery replacement

- 3** Closely study how the battery/batteries are secured on the inside of the cover, with regard to their (+) and (-) sides.

### Remote control key with 1 battery

- Carefully prize out the battery.
- Install a new one with the (+) side down.

### Remote control key and PCC\* with 2 batteries

- Carefully prize out the batteries.
- First install one new one with the (+) side up.
- Position the white plastic tab in between and finally install a second new battery with the (+) side down.

### Battery type

Use batteries with designation CR2430, 3 V.

### Assembly

- Press the remote control key together.
- Hold the remote control key with the slot pointed up and lower the key blade into its slot.
- Lightly press the key blade. You should hear a "click" when the key blade is locked in.



### Battery replacement, remote control key/PCC\*



#### **IMPORTANT**

Make sure that exhausted batteries are disposed of in a manner which is kind to the environment.

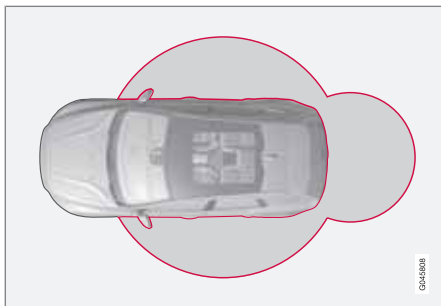
02



## Keyless\*

### Keyless lock and ignition system\*

#### General



Below is a description of remote control keys with Keyless drive and Keyless start functions. For cars with a Keyless start function, the car can be started without the remote control key being inserted in the ignition lock. For cars with a Keyless drive function, the car can be locked and unlocked without pressing a button on the remote control key, and also be started without the key being inserted in the ignition lock. The system makes it easier and more convenient to open the car, e.g. when your hands are full.

Both of the car's remote control keys have Keyless function. It is possible to order more remote control keys, see page 42.

The car's electrical system can be set to 3 different levels (key positions) - **0**, **I** and **II** - with the remote control key, see page 79.

#### Remote control key range<sup>1</sup>

In order to open a door or the tailgate without pressing a button on the remote control key, a remote control key must be approx. 1.5 m from the car door handle or tailgate. This means that the person who wishes to lock or unlock a door must have the remote control key with him or her. It is not possible to lock or unlock a door if the remote control key is on the opposite side of the car.

The red rings in the preceding illustration indicate the range covered by the system's antennas.

If all remote control keys are removed from the car when the engine is running or key position **I** or **II** is active (see page 79) and a door has been opened and then closed, the information display shows a warning message while sounding an audible reminder at the same time.

When the remote control key has been returned to the car, the warning message goes off and the audible reminder ceases once either/or:

- a door has been opened and closed
- the remote control key has been inserted in the ignition lock
- The **OK** button on the direction indicator stalk.

#### Safe operation of the remote control key with keyless function

If a remote control key with keyless function is left in the car, it is deactivated temporarily when the car is locked. This prevents unauthorised entry.

However, if someone breaks into the car and finds the remote control key, it is reactivated. It is therefore important to handle all remote control keys with great care.



#### IMPORTANT

When the door has been unlocked using the key blade and is opened, the alarm is triggered.

#### Interference to remote control key function

Electromagnetic fields and screening can interfere with the Keyless function.

<sup>1</sup> Does not apply to cars with keyless start

\* Option/accessory, for more information, see Introduction.



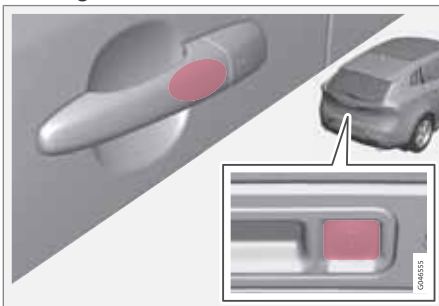


## Keyless\*

**i** NOTE

Do not place/store the remote control key with keyless function near a mobile phone or metal object - no closer than 10-15 cm.

If interference is experienced nonetheless, use the remote control key and the key blade like a traditional remote control key, see page 44.

**Locking<sup>2</sup>**

Cars with the Keyless-drive system have a touch-sensitive area on the outer handle of the doors and a rubberised button next to the tailgate's rubberised pressure plate.

Lock the doors and the tailgate by grasping one of the door handles or pressing the smaller of the tailgate's two rubberised buttons - the

lock indicator in the windscreen confirms that locking has been completed by starting to flash, see page 43.

All doors and the tailgate must be closed before the car can be locked - otherwise the car is not locked.

**i** NOTE

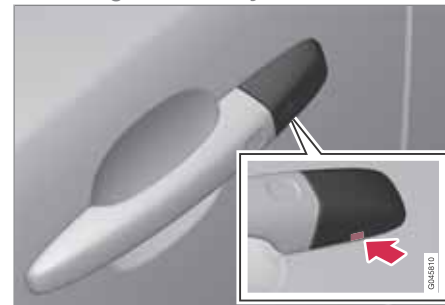
In cars with automatic gearbox selectors, the gear selector must be set to the **P** position; otherwise the car can be neither locked nor alarmed.

**Unlocking<sup>2</sup>**

Unlocking with Keyless-drive takes place when a hand grasps a door handle or the tailgate's rubberised pressure plate is actuated - open the door or tailgate as normal.

**i** NOTE

The door handles normally register a hand that takes hold of the handle, but with thick gloves on or after a very quick hand movement a second attempt may be required, or with the glove taken off.

**Unlocking with the key blade**

Hole for key blade - to loosen the cover.

If central locking cannot be activated with the remote control key - e.g. if the batteries are discharged - then the left-hand front door can be opened using the remote control key's removable key blade (see page 46).

To access the lock cylinder, the door handle's plastic cover must be removed - this is also done with the key blade:

1. Press the key blade approx. 1 cm straight up into the hole on the underside of the door handle/cover - do not prize.
  - > The plastic cover loosens automatically by means of the torque when the blade

<sup>2</sup> Not applicable to remote control keys with keyless start



### Keyless\*

is pushed straight up and into the opening.

- Then insert the key blade in the lock cylinder and unlock the door.
- Refit the plastic cover after unlocking.

#### NOTE

When the front left door is unlocked using the key blade and is opened, the alarm is triggered. It is switched off by inserting the remote control key in the ignition switch, see page 61.

### Key memory<sup>3</sup> - driver's seat, door mirrors and steering force

#### Memory function in remote control key with keyless function

If several people each with a remote control key approach the car, then the settings for seat and mirrors are implemented for the person who opens the driver's door.

After the driver's door has been opened by person A with remote control key A, but person B with remote control key B is to drive, the settings can be changed as follows:

- Standing by the driver's door, or sitting behind the steering wheel, person B

presses their remote control key's unlock button, see page 44.

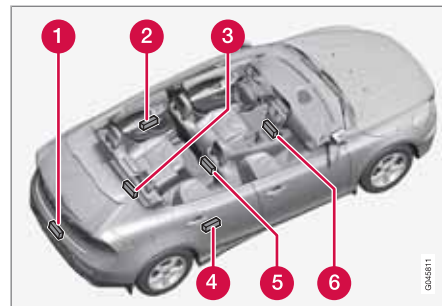
- Select one of three possible memories for seat adjustment with seat button 1-3, see page 82.
- Adjust seat and mirrors manually, see page 82 and 104.
- Adjust steering force in the **MY CAR** menu system; see see page 205.

#### Lock settings

The Keyless-drive function can be adapted by indicating in the menu system **MY CAR** which doors are to be unlocked, under **Car settings** → **Lock settings** → **Keyless entry** - there select between **All doors unlock, Any door, Doors on same side** and **Both front doors**.

For a description of the menu system, see page 203.

### Antenna location



The Keyless system has a number of integrated antennae located around the car:

- Rear bumper, centre
- Door handle, left rear
- Cargo area, central and furthest in under the floor
- Door handle, right rear
- Centre console, under the rear section
- Centre console, under the front section.

<sup>3</sup> Only in combination with power driver's seat and power mirrors.



Keyless\*

**WARNING**

People who have had a pacemaker operation should not come closer than 22 cm to the Keyless system's antennas with their pacemaker. This is to prevent interference between the pacemaker and the Keyless system.

02



## Locking/unlocking

### From the outside

The remote control key can lock/unlock all doors, the tailgate and the fuel filler flap. Different sequences for unlocking can be selected, see "Unlocking with the remote control key" page 44.

In order that the lock sequence can be activated, the driver's door must be closed - if any of the other doors or the tailgate is open, then it/they is/are locked and the alarm is activated only when it/they are closed. With the Key-less\* system all the doors and tailgate must be closed.

### NOTE

Be aware of the risk of locking the remote control key in the car.

If it is not possible to lock/unlock with the remote control key, the battery may be discharged - lock or unlock the left-hand front door with the detachable key blade, see page 46.

### NOTE

Remember that the alarm is triggered when the door is opened after being unlocked with the key blade - the alarm is switched off when the remote control key is inserted into the ignition switch.

### WARNING

Be aware of the risk of being locked in the car when it is locked from the outside using the remote control key - it is then not possible to open any of the doors from the inside with the door controls. For more information, see page 58, Deadlocks.

### Automatic relocking

If none of the doors or the tailgate is opened within 2 minutes of unlocking, all are locked again automatically. This function reduces the risk that the car is left unlocked unintentionally. (For cars with alarm, see page 61.)

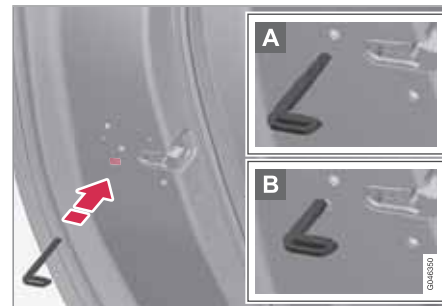
### Manual locking

In certain situations the car must be lockable manually, e.g. in the event of power failure.

The left-hand front door can be locked with its lock cylinder and the remote control key's detachable key blade, see page 51.

Other doors have no lock cylinders and instead have a lock switch on the end of each door

which must be depressed using the key blade - they are then mechanically locked/blocked to prevent them being opened from outside. The doors can still be opened from the inside.



Manual locking of the door. Not to be mixed up with child safety locks, see page 60.

- Remove the removable key blade from the remote control key, see page 46. Insert the key blade into the hole for the lock switch and press in the key until it reaches the bottom, approx. 12 mm.
- A** The door can be opened from both the outside and the inside.
- B** The door is blocked against opening from the outside. To return to position A, the inner door handle must be opened.



## Locking/unlocking

**NOTE**

- A door's lock reset only locks that particular door - not all doors simultaneously.
- A manually locked rear door with an activated manual child safety lock cannot be opened from either the outside or the inside, see page 60. A rear door that is locked in this way can only be unlocked with the remote control key or central locking button.

**From the inside****Central locking**

Central locking.

All of the doors and the tailgate can be locked or unlocked simultaneously using the central locking button on the driver's door.

- Press one side of the button to lock - the other side to unlock.

**Lamp in lock button**

Central locking is available in two variants - the lamp in the central locking button for the driver's door has different meanings dependent on the variant.

With central locking button only in the driver's door, other doors have no button:

- Illuminated lamp means that all doors are locked.

With central locking button on both front doors and electric lock button in each rear door:

- Illuminated lamp means that only that particular door is locked. When all buttons are illuminated all doors are locked.

**Unlocking**

A door can be unlocked from the inside in two different ways:

- Press the central locking button .

Press and hold (at least 4 seconds) to also open all the side windows\* simultaneously.

- Pull the door handle and open the door - the door is unlocked and opened in one operation.

**Locking**

- Both front doors must be closed for the central locking to be activated. Press the central locking button - all doors are locked. If any of the rear doors is open, it will lock when it is closed.

Press and hold (at least 2 seconds) to also close all the side windows simultaneously.

**Global opening**

Press and hold the central locking button (at least 4 seconds) to also open all the windows simultaneously - for example, to quickly ventilate the passenger compartment during hot weather.

**Automatic locking**

The doors and tailgate are locked automatically when the car starts to move.

The function can be activated/deactivated in the menu system **MY CAR** under **Settings** → **Car settings** → **Lock settings** → **Automatic door locking**. For a description of the menu system, see page 203.



## Locking/unlocking

### Lock cylinder, glovebox\*



The glovebox can only be locked/unlocked using the remote control key's detachable key blade. For information on the key blade, see page 46.

Locking the glovebox:

- 1 Insert the key blade in the glovebox lock cylinder.
  - 2 Turn the key blade 90 degrees clockwise. The keyhole is horizontal in the locked position.
  - 3 Pull out the key blade.
- Unlock by carrying this out in reverse order.

### Tailgate

#### Manual opening



*Rubber plate with electrical contact.*

The tailgate is held closed by an electrical lock. To open:


1. Push down gently on the wider of the two rubberised pressure plates under the outer handle - the lock is released.
2. Lift the outside handle in order to fully open the tailgate.

**IMPORTANT**

- Minimal force is required to release the rear hatch lock - just gently press the rubberised panel.
- Do not place the lift force on the rubber panel when opening the rear hatch - lift the handle. Using too much force may damage the electrical contacts on the rubber panel.

#### Unlocking with the remote control key



The alarm for the tailgate can be disarmed\* and the tailgate unlocked on its own by using the remote control key's  button.

The lock indicator on the instrument panel stops flashing in order to show that not all of the car is locked and the alarm's\* level and

**Locking/unlocking**

movement sensors and the sensors for opening the tailgate are disconnected.


The doors remain locked and armed.

The tailgate can be opened in two different ways using the remote control key:

**One press** - The boot lid is unlocked, but remains closed - press lightly on the rubberised pressure plate under the outer handle and lift the boot lid. If the tailgate is not opened within 2 minutes then it is relocked and the alarm is re-armed.

**Two presses** - The boot lid is unlocked and the lock is disengaged at which the boot lid opens about a centimetre - lift the outer handle to open. Rain, cold, frost or snow could however prevent the tailgate from disengaging from the lock.

**NOTE**

- When the boot lid/tailgate is unlocked with 2 presses or from the car interior, automatic relocking does not take place because the boot lid/tailgate is open - it must be closed manually.
- After the boot lid/tailgate has been closed it is unlocked and the alarm is not armed - relock it and re-arm the alarm with the remote control key's lock button .


**Opening the car from inside**

To open the tailgate:



- Press the lighting panel button.

- > The lock releases and the tailgate opens by a few centimetres.

**Locking with the remote control key**

- Press the remote control key's button for locking, , see page 44.
- > The lock indicator on the instrument panel starts flashing, which means that the car is locked and the alarm\* has been activated.

**Fuel filler flap**

The fuel filler flap is unlocked using the remote control key  button. The fuel filler flap remains unlocked until the car is locked with the remote control key  button. If the car is locked during travel or with the interior buttons, the fuel filler flap will remain unlocked.

The fuel filler flap locking logic also follows the locking or unlocking of the keyless-drive and the central locking system. Fuel filler flap locking always occurs after a 10-minute delay.



## Locking/unlocking

### Deadlocks\*<sup>1</sup>

Deadlocks means that all door handles are mechanically disengaged, which prevents doors being opened from the inside.

The deadlocks are activated with the remote control key and are set after an approximately 10 second delay after the doors have been locked.

#### **i** NOTE

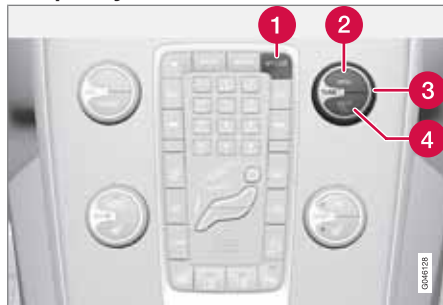
If a door is opened within the delay time then the sequence is interrupted and the alarm is deactivated.

The car can only be unlocked from a deadlock state with the remote control key. The front left door can also be unlocked with the detachable key blade.

#### **!** WARNING

Do not allow anyone to remain in the car without first deactivating the deadlocks in order to avoid the risk of anyone being locked in.

### Temporary deactivation



Active menu options are indicated with a cross.

- 1 MY CAR**
- 2 OK MENU**
- 3 TUNE knob control**
- 4 EXIT**

If someone is going to stay in the car but the doors must be locked from the outside, then the deadlocks function can be temporarily switched off. This is carried out as follows:

1. Access the menu system **MY CAR** under **Settings → Car settings → Reduced Guard** (for a detailed description of the menu system, see page 203).

2. Select **Activate once**.
  - > The instrument panel display shows the message **Reduced guard See manual** and the deadlocks function is switched off when the car is locked.

or

- Select **Ask when exiting**.
  - > Each time the engine is switched off the centre console display screen shows the message **Activate Reduced Guard until engine has started again?** followed by the alternatives **Confirm with OK** and **Cancel with EXIT**.

### If the deadlocks function shall be switched off

- Press **OK/MENU** and lock the car. (Note that the alarm's movement and tilt detectors\* are switched off at the same time, see page 61.)
  - > The next time the engine is started, the system is reset to zero and the instrument panel display shows the message **Full guard** at which the deadlocks function and the alarm's movement and tilt detectors are re-engaged.

<sup>1</sup> Only in combination with alarm.

\* Option/accessory, for more information, see Introduction.



**Locking/unlocking****If the locking system shall not be changed**

- Press **EXIT** and lock the car.

**NOTE**

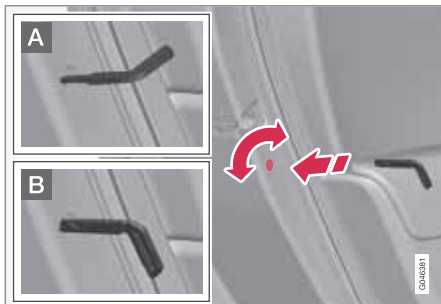
- Remember that the alarm is activated when the car is locked.
- If any of the doors are opened from the inside then the alarm is triggered.



## Child safety locks

### Manual blocking of the rear doors

The child safety locks prevent children from opening a rear door from the inside.



With child safety locks. Not to be mixed up with manual door locks, see page 54.

The child safety locks are located on the trailing edge of the rear doors and are only accessible when the doors are open.

To activate/deactivate the child safety locks:

- Use the remote control key's detachable key blade to turn the knob - see page 46.

- A** The door is blocked against opening from the inside.
- B** The door can be opened from both the outside and the inside.

### NOTE

- A door's knob control only blocks that particular door - not both rear doors simultaneously.
- Cars with an electric child safety lock do not have a manual child lock.

### Electrical locking of the rear doors\* and power windows



Control panel driver's door.

The child safety locks can be activated/deactivated in all key positions higher than **0** - see page 79. Activation/deactivation can be performed up to 2 minutes after switching off the engine, provided that no door is opened.

To activate the child safety locks:

1. Start the engine or choose a key position higher than **0**.
2. Press the button in the driver's door control panel.
  - > The information display shows the message **Rear child lock activated** and the button's lamp illuminates - the locks are active.

When the electric child safety lock is active then the rear:

- windows can only be opened with the driver's door control panel
- doors cannot be opened from inside.

The current setting is stored when the engine is switched off - if the child safety locks are activated at engine shutdown, the function will remain activated the next time the engine is started.

**Alarm\*****General**

Activated alarm is triggered if:

- a door, the bonnet or the tailgate is opened
- a movement is detected in the passenger compartment (if fitted with a movement detector\*)
- the car is raised or towed away (if fitted with a tilt detector\*)
- the battery's cable is disconnected
- the siren is disconnected.

If there is a fault in the alarm system, the information display shows a message. In which case, contact a workshop - an authorised Volvo workshop is recommended.

**NOTE**

The movement sensors trigger an alarm in the event of movement in the passenger compartment - air currents are also registered. For this reason the alarm is triggered if the car is left with a window open or if the passenger compartment heater is used.

To avoid this: Close the window when leaving the car. If the car's integrated passenger compartment heater (or a portable electric heater) shall be used - direct the airflow from the air vents so that they are not pointing upwards in the passenger compartment.

**NOTE**

Do not attempt to repair or alter components in the alarm system yourself. Any such attempts may affect the terms of the insurance.

**Alarm indicator**

Same LED as lock indicator, see page 43.

A red LED on the instrument panel indicates the alarm system's status:

- LED not lit – Alarm not armed
- The LED flashes once every other second – Alarm is armed
- The LED flashes rapidly after disarming the alarm (and until the remote control key is inserted in the ignition switch and key position I is selected) – Alarm has been triggered.

**Arming the alarm**

- Press the remote control key lock button.

**Deactivate the alarm**

- Press the remote control key unlock button.

**Deactivating a triggered alarm**

- Press the remote control key unlock button or insert the remote control key in the ignition switch.

**Other alarm functions****Automatic re-arming of the alarm**

This function prevents the car being left with the alarm disarmed unintentionally.

If the car is unlocked with the remote control key (and the alarm is disarmed) but none of the doors or the tailgate is opened within 2 minutes, then the alarm is automatically re-armed. The car is relocked at the same time.

**Automatic alarm activation**

In certain countries, the alarm is activated after a certain delay if the driver's door was opened and closed but the car was not re-locked.

**Remote control key not working**

If the alarm cannot be deactivated with the remote control key, e.g. if the key's battery is



### Alarm\*

discharged - the car can be unlocked, disarmed and the engine started as follows:

1. Open the left-hand front door with the detachable key blade - see page 51.
  - > The alarm is triggered, the direction indicators flash and the siren sounds.



2. Insert the remote control key in the ignition switch.
  - > The alarm is deactivated.

### Alarm signals

When the alarm is triggered, the following happens:

- A siren sounds for 30 seconds or until the alarm is switched off. The siren has its own

battery and works independently of the car battery.

- The direction indicators flash for 5 minutes or until the alarm is switched off.

### Reduced alarm level

To avoid accidental triggering of the alarm - e.g. if a dog is left in a locked car or during transport on a car train or car ferry - temporarily deactivate the movement and tilt detectors.

The procedure is the same as with the temporary disengaging of deadlocks, see page 58.



Instruments and controls.....	66
Volvo Sensus .....	77
Key positions.....	79
Seats.....	81
Steering wheel.....	86
Lighting.....	87
Wipers and washing.....	99
Windows, rearview and door mirrors.....	102
Compass*.....	107
Alcolock*.....	108
Starting the engine.....	112
Starting the engine – external battery.....	114
Gearboxes.....	115
Eco Guide & Power*.....	121
Start/Stop *.....	123
Foot brake.....	129
Parking brake.....	131
HomeLink® *.....	132



G041142

# 03

## YOUR DRIVING ENVIRONMENT

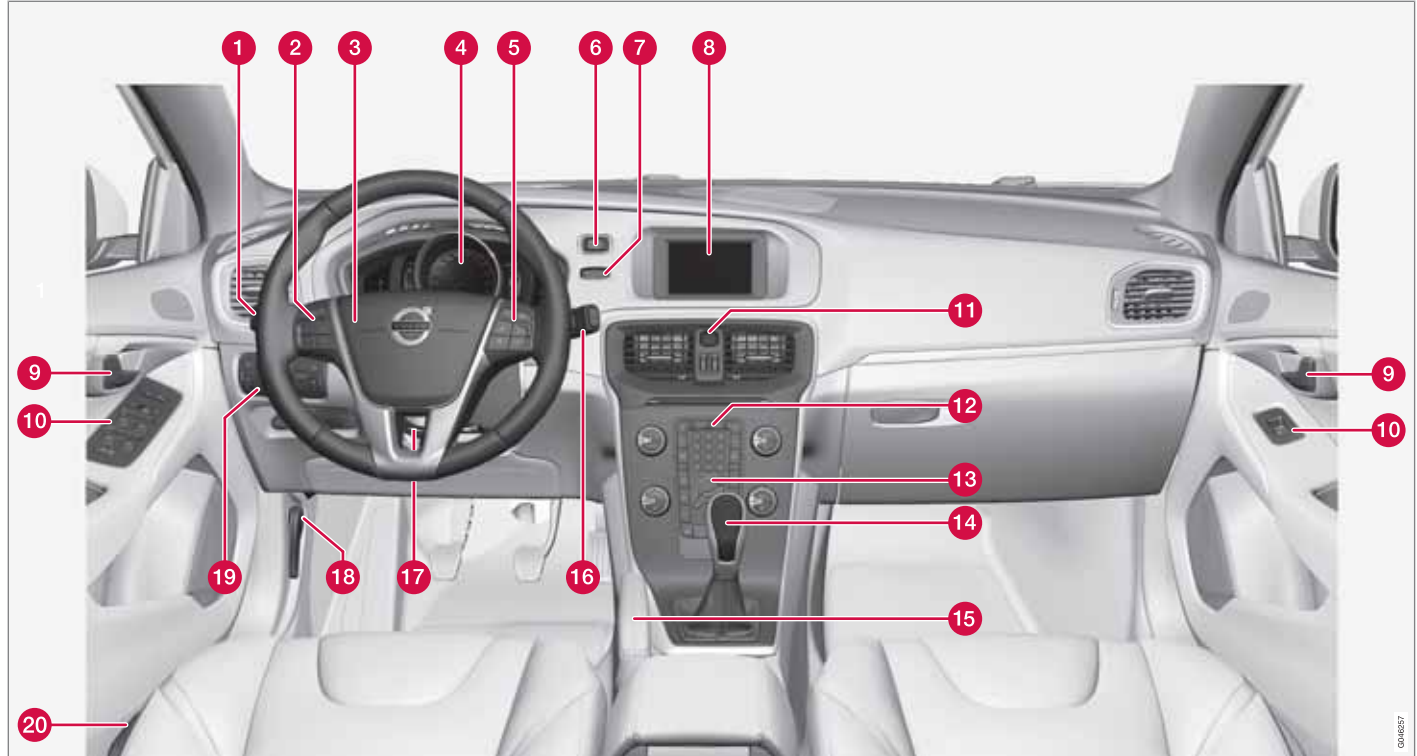




# 03 Your driving environment

## Instruments and controls

### Instrument overview



Left-hand drive.

DAIHATZ

03





## Instruments and controls

	Function	Page
<b>1</b>	Menus and messages, direction indicators, main/dipped beam, trip computer	87, 93, 200, 229
<b>2</b>	Cruise control	145, 147
<b>3</b>	Horn, airbags	18, 86
<b>4</b>	Combined instrument panel	69, 75
<b>5</b>	Menu, audio and phone control	203, 241, 267, 243
<b>6</b>	START/STOP ENGINE button	112
<b>7</b>	Ignition switch	79
<b>8</b>	Display for infotainment and menus	203, 241, 241
<b>9</b>	Door handle	–
<b>10</b>	Control panel	55, 60, 102, 104
<b>11</b>	Hazard warning flashers	92

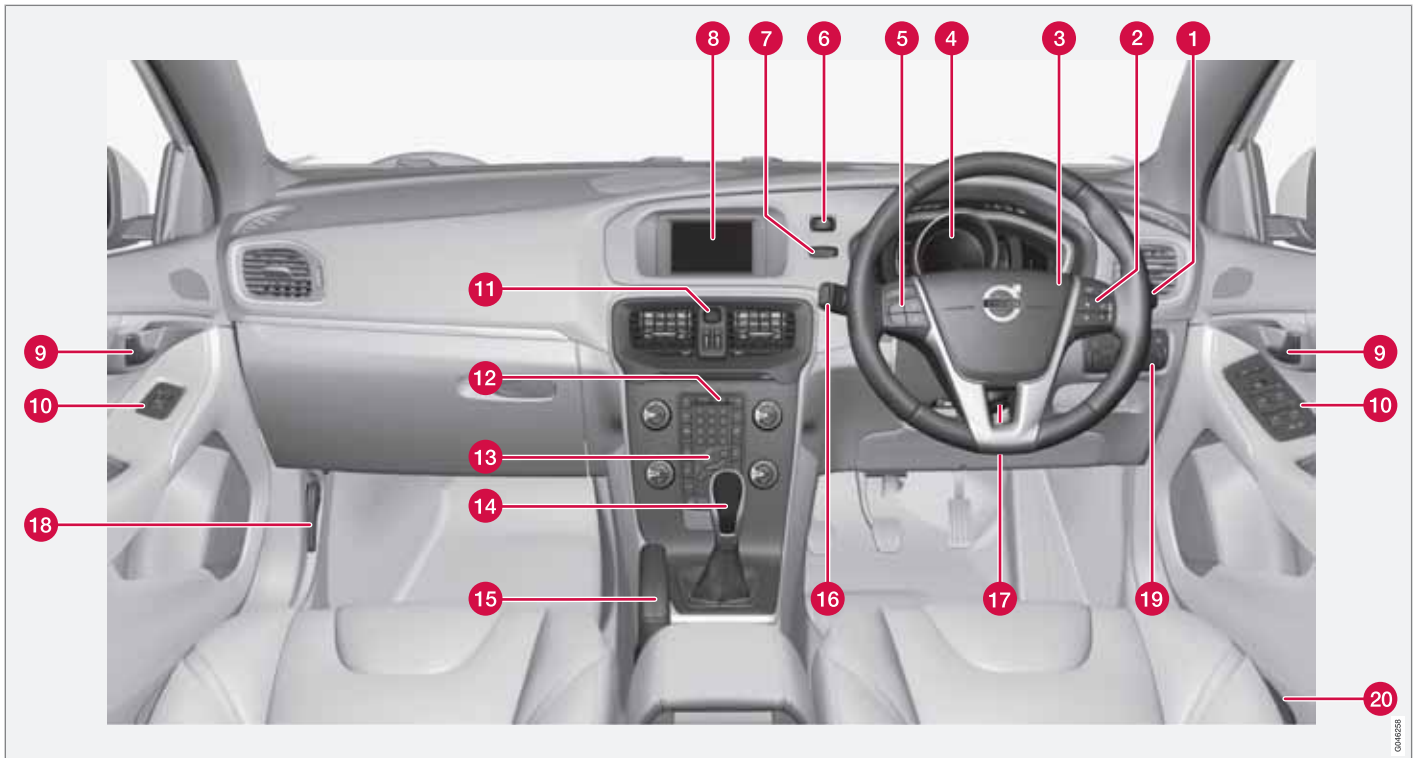
	Function	Page
<b>12</b>	Control for infotainment and menu control	203, 241, 243
<b>13</b>	Control panel for climate control	215
<b>14</b>	Gear selector	115
<b>15</b>	Parking brake	131
<b>16</b>	Wipers and washing	99, 100
<b>17</b>	Steering wheel adjustment	86
<b>18</b>	Bonnet opener	328
<b>19</b>	Light switch, opener for tailgate	56, 87
<b>20</b>	Seat adjustment*	82



# 03 Your driving environment

## Instruments and controls

03



Right-hand drive.

GM18258

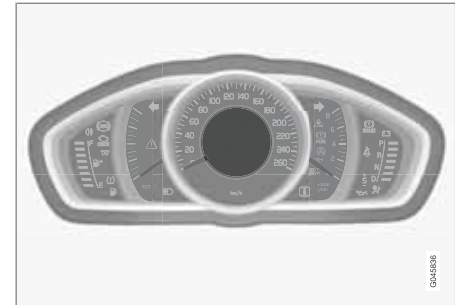


## Instruments and controls

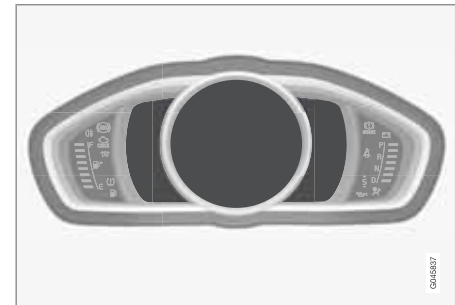
	Function	Page
1	Wipers and washing	99, 100
2	Menu, audio and phone control	203, 241, 267, 243
3	Horn, airbags	17, 86
4	Combined instrument panel	69, 75
5	Cruise control	145, 147
6	START/STOP ENGINE button	112
7	Ignition switch	79
8	Display for infotainment and menus	203, 241, 241
9	Door handle	–
10	Control panel	55, 60, 102, 104
11	Hazard warning flashers	92
12	Control for infotainment and menu control	203, 241, 243

	Function	Page
13	Control panel for climate control	215
14	Gear selector	115
15	Parking brake	131
16	Menus and messages, direction indicators, main/dipped beam, trip computer	87, 93, 200, 229
17	Steering wheel adjustment	86
18	Bonnet opener	328
19	Light switch and tailgate opener	56, 87
20	Seat adjustment*	82

### Information displays



Information display, analogue instrument panel.



Information displays, digital instrument panel.

The combined instrument panel's information displays show information on some of the car's functions, e.g. cruise control, trip computer



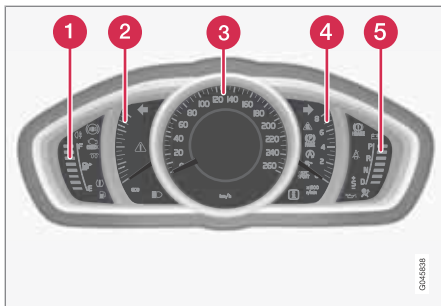
# 03 Your driving environment

## Instruments and controls

and messages. The information is shown with text and symbols.

There are further descriptions under the functions that use the information displays.

### Gauges and indicators, analogue instrument panel



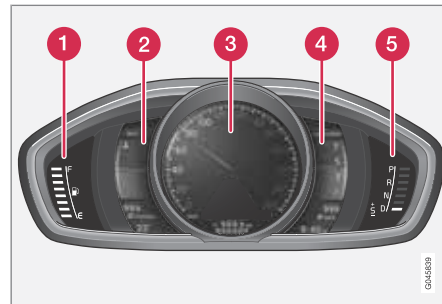
- 1 Fuel gauge. See also Trip computer, page 229, and Refuelling, page 289.
- 2 EcoGuide. See also page 121.
- 3 Speedometer

- 4 Tachometer. The meter indicates engine speed in thousands of revolutions per minute (rpm).
- 5 Gearchange indicator<sup>1</sup> / Gear position indicator<sup>2</sup>. See also page 286.

### Gauges and indicators, digital instrument panel

Various themes can be selected for the digital combined instrument panel. Possible themes are Elegance, Eco and Performance.

To change to a different theme, press the left stalk switch's **OK** button and then select the **Themes** menu option by turning the thumb-wheel on the lever. Confirm your choice by pressing the **OK** button. For more information on menus, see page 200.



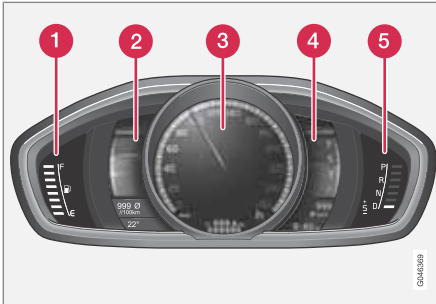
*Meters and indicators, Elegance.*

- 1 Fuel gauge. See also Trip computer, page 229, and Refuelling, page 289.
- 2 Temperature gauge for engine coolant
- 3 Speedometer
- 4 Tachometer. The meter indicates engine speed in thousands of revolutions per minute (rpm).
- 5 Gearchange indicator<sup>3</sup> / Gear position indicator<sup>4</sup>. See also page 286.

1 Manual gearbox  
 2 Automatic gearbox  
 3 Manual gearbox  
 4 Automatic gearbox

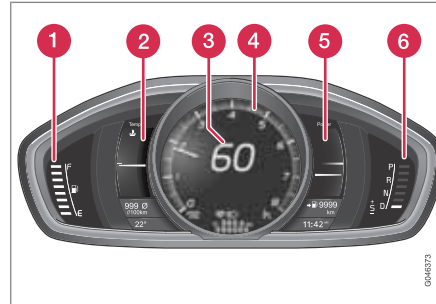


## Instruments and controls



Meters and indicators, Eco.

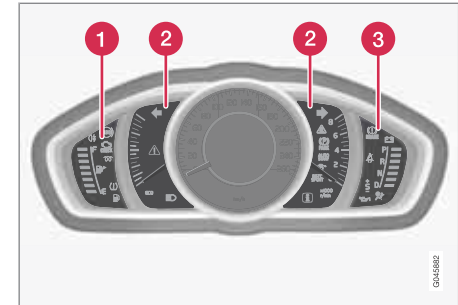
- 1 Fuel gauge. See also Trip computer, page 229, and Refuelling, page 289.
- 2 EcoGuide. See also page 121.
- 3 Speedometer
- 4 Tachometer. The meter indicates engine speed in thousands of revolutions per minute (rpm).
- 5 Gearchange indicator<sup>3</sup> / Gear position indicator<sup>4</sup>. See also page 286.



Meters and indicators, Performance.

- 1 Fuel gauge. See also Trip computer, page 229, and Refuelling, page 289.
- 2 Temperature gauge for engine coolant
- 3 Speedometer
- 4 Tachometer. The meter indicates engine speed in thousands of revolutions per minute (rpm).
- 5 PowerMeter. See also page 121.
- 6 Gearchange indicator<sup>3</sup> / Gear position indicator<sup>4</sup>. See also page 286.

## Indicator and warning symbols



Indicator and warning symbols, analogue instrument panel.

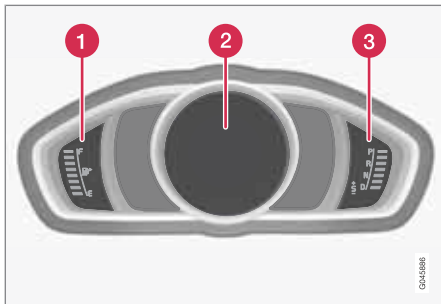
- 1 Indicator symbols
- 2 Indicator and warning symbols
- 3 warning symbols<sup>5</sup>

<sup>3</sup> Manual gearbox

<sup>4</sup> Automatic gearbox

<sup>5</sup> For certain engine variants, the symbol for low oil pressure is not used. Warnings are made via display text. For information on checking the oil level, see page 329.

## Instruments and controls



Indicator and warning symbols, digital instrument panel.

- 1 Indicator symbols
- 2 Indicator and warning symbols
- 3 Warning symbols<sup>5</sup>

### Functionality check

All indicator and warning symbols illuminate in key position II or when the engine is started. When the engine has started, all the symbols should go out except the parking brake symbol, which only goes out when the brake is disengaged.

If the engine does not start or if the functionality check is carried out in key position II then all symbols go out within 5 seconds except the

symbol for faults in the car's emissions system and the symbol for low oil pressure.

### Indicator symbols

Symbol	Specification
	ABL fault
	Emissions system
	ABS fault
	Rear fog lamp on
	Stability system
	Stability system, sport mode
	Engine preheater (diesel)
	Low level in fuel tank
	Information, read display text
	Main beam On

Symbol	Specification
	Left-hand direction indicators
	Right-hand direction indicators
	DRIVE - Start/Stop, the engine auto-stopped, see page 123

### ABL fault

The symbol illuminates if a fault has arisen in the ABL function (Active Bending Lights).

### Emissions system

If the symbol illuminates then it may be due to a fault in the car's emissions system. Drive to a workshop for checking. Volvo recommends that you seek assistance from an authorised Volvo workshop.

### ABS fault

If this symbol illuminates then the system is not working. The car's regular brake system continues to work, but without the ABS function.

1. Stop the car in a safe place and turn off the engine.
2. Restart the engine.
3. If the symbol remains illuminated, drive to a workshop to have the ABS system

<sup>5</sup> For certain engine variants, the symbol for low oil pressure is not used. Warnings are made via display text. For information on checking the oil level, see page 329.



## Instruments and controls

checked. Volvo recommends that you seek assistance from an authorised Volvo workshop.

### Rear fog lamp on

This symbol illuminates when the rear fog lamp is on. The rear fog lamp is made up of two bulbs.

### Stability system

A flashing symbol indicates that the stability system is operating. If the symbol illuminates with constant glow then there is a fault in the system.

### Stability system, Sport mode

**Sport** mode allows for a more active driving experience. The system then detects whether the accelerator pedal, steering wheel movements and cornering are more active than in normal driving and then allows controlled skidding of the rear section up to a certain level before it intervenes and stabilises the car.

### Engine preheater (diesel)

This symbol illuminates during engine preheating. Preheating mostly takes place due to low temperature.

### Low level in fuel tank

When the symbol illuminates the level in the fuel tank is low, refuel as soon as possible.

### Information, read display text

When one of the car's systems does not behave as intended, this information symbol illuminates and a text appears on the information display. The message text is cleared with the **OK** button, see page 200, or it disappears automatically after a time (time depending on which function is indicated). The information symbol can also illuminate in conjunction with other symbols.

#### NOTE

When a service message is shown, the symbol and message are cleared using the **OK** button, or disappear automatically after a time.

### Main beam On

The symbol illuminates when main beam is on and with main beam flash.









### Left/right-hand direction indicators

Both direction indicator symbols flash when the hazard warning flashers are used.

### DRIVE – Start/Stop

The symbol shines when the engine is auto-stopped.

### Warning symbols

Symbol	Specification
	Low oil pressure <sup>A</sup>
	Parking brake applied
	Parking brake applied, alternative symbol
	Airbags – SRS
	Seatbelt reminder
	Alternator not charging
	Fault in brake system
	Warning

<sup>A</sup> For certain engine variants, the symbol for low oil pressure is not used. Warnings are made via display text, see pages 329 and 331.

### Low oil pressure

If this symbol illuminates during driving then the engine's oil pressure is too low. Stop the engine immediately and check the engine oil level, top up if necessary. If the symbol illumi-



### Instruments and controls

nates and the oil level is normal, contact a workshop. Volvo recommends that you seek assistance from an authorised Volvo workshop.

#### Parking brake applied

This symbol illuminates with a constant glow when the parking brake is applied. The symbol is illuminated during application. For more information, see page 131.

#### Airbags – SRS

If this symbol remains illuminated or illuminates while driving, it means a fault has been detected in the seatbelt buckle, SRS, SIPS, or IC systems. Drive immediately to a workshop to have the system checked. Volvo recommends that you seek assistance from an authorised Volvo workshop.

#### Seatbelt reminder

This symbol illuminates if someone in a front seat has not put on their seatbelt or if someone in a rear seat has taken off their seatbelt.

#### Alternator not charging

This symbol illuminates during driving if a fault has occurred in the electrical system. Visit a workshop. Volvo recommends that you seek assistance from an authorised Volvo workshop.

#### Fault in brake system

If this symbol illuminates, the brake fluid level may be too low. Stop the car in a safe place and check the level in the brake fluid reservoir, see page 333.

If the brake and ABS symbols illuminate at the same time, there may be a fault in the brake force distribution system.

1. Stop the car in a safe place and turn off the engine.
2. Restart the engine.
  - If both symbols extinguish, continue driving.
  - If the symbols remain illuminated, check the level in the brake fluid reservoir, see page 333. If the brake fluid level is normal but the symbols are still illuminated, the car can be driven, with great care, to a workshop to have the brake system checked. Volvo recommends that you seek assistance from an authorised Volvo workshop.



#### WARNING

If the brake fluid is below the **MIN** level in the brake fluid reservoir, do not drive further before topping up the brake fluid.

The loss of brake fluid must be investigated by a workshop. Volvo recommends that you contact an authorised Volvo workshop.



#### WARNING

If the BRAKE and ABS symbols are lit at the same time, there is a risk that the rear end will skid during heavy braking.

#### Warning

The red warning symbol illuminates when a fault has been indicated which could affect the safety and/or driveability of the car. An explanatory text is shown on the information display at the same time. The symbol remains visible until the fault has been rectified but the text message can be cleared with the **OK** button, see page 200. The warning symbol can also illuminate in conjunction with other symbols.

Action:

1. Stop in a safe place. Do not drive the car further.







## Instruments and controls

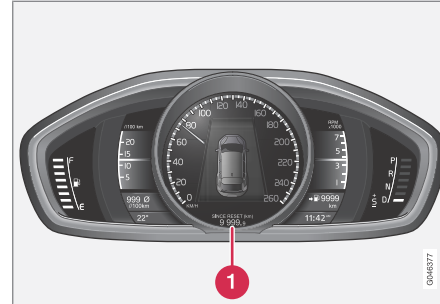
- Read the information on the information display. Implement the action in accordance with the message in the display. Clear the message using the **OK** button.

**Reminder – doors not closed**

If one of the doors, the bonnet<sup>6</sup> or tailgate is not closed properly then the information or warning symbol illuminates together with an explanatory text message in the combined instrument panel. Stop the car in a safe place as soon as possible and close the door, bonnet or boot lid, whichever is open.

 If the car is driven at a speed lower than approx. 7 km/h then the information symbol illuminates.

 If the car is driven at a speed higher than approx. 7 km/h then the warning symbol illuminates.

**Trip meter**

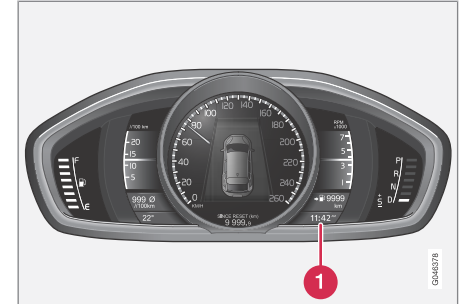
*Trip meter.*

- Display for trip meter<sup>7</sup>

The two trip meters **T1** and **T2** are used for measuring short distances. The distance is shown in the display.

Turn the left stalk switch thumbwheel to show the required meter.

One long press (more than 1 second) on the left stalk switch **RESET** button resets the trip meter currently displayed. A longer press (4 seconds) resets the trip computer if the car is fitted with a digital instrument panel. For more information, see page 229.

**Clock**

*Clock, digital instrument panel.*

- Display for showing the time<sup>8</sup>

**Set the clock**

The clock can be set in the menu group **MY CAR**, for more information see page 203.

<sup>6</sup> Only cars with alarm\*.

<sup>7</sup> The appearance of the display may vary depending on variant.

<sup>8</sup> The time is shown in the middle of the instrument panel when an analogue instrument panel is fitted.



### Instruments and controls

#### RSI\*

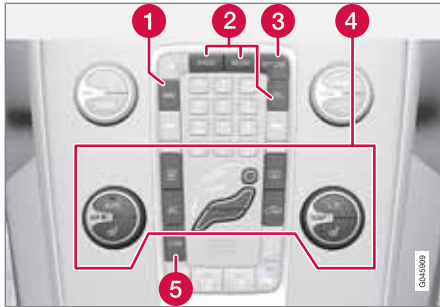
The function RSI (Road Sign Identification) helps the driver to see road signs containing information on current speed, that a motorway or road is starting/ending and when overtaking is prohibited. For detailed information on RSI, see page 141.

#### Combined Instrument Panel Software

"Combined Instrument Panel Software:  
Portions of this software are copyright © 2.4.3  
The FreeTypeProject ([www.freetype.org](http://www.freetype.org)). All  
rights reserved."



## General



Control panel in centre console

- 1 Navigation\* - **NAV**, see separate owner's manual (Road and Traffic Information System - RTI).
- 2 Infotainment (**RADIO, MEDIA, TEL\***), see page 241.
- 3 Car settings - **MY CAR**, see page 203.
- 4 Climate control, see page 212.
- 5 Park assist camera - **CAM\***, see page 187.

Volvo Sensus is the car's operating system, the heart of your personal Volvo experience. Volvo Sensus combines and presents many functions in several of the car's systems on the centre console TV screen. With Volvo Sensus

the car can be personalised by means of an intuitive user interface. Settings can be made in Car settings, Infotainment, Climate, etc.

With the centre console buttons and controls or the steering wheel's right-hand keypad\* functions can be activated or deactivated and many different settings can be made.

With a press on **MY CAR** all settings related to the driving and control of the car are presented, such as City Safety, Locks and alarm, setting the clock, etc.

With a press on the respective function: **RADIO, MEDIA, TEL\***, **NAV\*** and **CAM\*** other sources, systems and functions can be activated, e.g. AM, FM1, CD, DVD\*, TV\*, Bluetooth\*, navigation\* and park assist camera\*.

For more information on all functions/systems, see the respective section in the owner's manual.

## Sensus software

This software uses parts of sources from clib2 and Prex Embedded Real-time OS - Source (Copyright (c) 1982, 1986, 1991, 1993, 1994), and Quercus Robusta (Copyright (c) 1990, 1993), The Regents of the University of California. All rights reserved. (c) UNIX System Laboratories, Inc. All or some portions are derived from material licensed to the University

of California by American Telephone and Telegraph Co. or Unix System Laboratories, Inc. and are reproduced herein with the permission of UNIX System Laboratories, Inc. Redistribution and use in source and binary forms, with or without modification, are permitted provided that the following conditions are met: Redistributions of source code must retain the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer. Redistributions in binary form must reproduce the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer in the documentation and/or other materials provided with the distribution. Neither the name of the <ORGANIZATION> nor the names of its contributors may be used to endorse or promote products derived from this software without specific prior written permission. THIS SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED BY THE COPYRIGHT HOLDERS AND CONTRIBUTORS "AS IS" AND ANY EXPRESS OR IMPLIED WARRANTIES, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE ARE DISCLAIMED. IN NO EVENT SHALL THE COPYRIGHT OWNER OR CONTRIBUTORS BE LIABLE FOR ANY DIRECT, INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL, EXEMPLARY, OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES (INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, PROCUREMENT OF



### Volvo Sensus

SUBSTITUTE GOODS OR SERVICES; LOSS OF USE, DATA, OR PROFITS; OR BUSINESS INTERRUPTION) HOWEVER CAUSED AND ON ANY THEORY OF LIABILITY, WHETHER IN CONTRACT, STRICT LIABILITY, OR TORT (INCLUDING NEGLIGENCE OR OTHERWISE) ARISING IN ANY WAY OUT OF THE USE OF THIS SOFTWARE, EVEN IF ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGE.

This software is based in part on the work of the Independent JPEG Group.

This software uses parts of sources from "libtess". The Original Code is: OpenGL Sample Implementation, Version 1.2.1, released January 26, 2000, developed by Silicon Graphics, Inc. The Original Code is Copyright (c) 1991-2000 Silicon Graphics, Inc. Copyright in any portions created by third parties is as indicated elsewhere herein. All Rights Reserved. Copyright (C) [1991-2000] Silicon Graphics, Inc. All Rights Reserved. Permission is hereby granted, free of charge, to any person obtaining a copy of this software and associated documentation files (the "Software"), to deal in the Software without restriction, including without limitation the rights to use, copy, modify, merge, publish, distribute, sublicense, and/or sell copies of the Software, and to permit persons to whom the Software is furnished to do so, subject to the following conditions: The above copyright

notice including the dates of first publication and either this permission notice or a reference to <http://oss.sgi.com/projects/FreeB/> shall be included in all copies or substantial portions of the Software. THE SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED "AS IS", WITHOUT WARRANTY OF ANY KIND, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING BUT NOT LIMITED TO THE WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE AND NONINFRINGEMENT. IN NO EVENT SHALL SILICON GRAPHICS, INC. BE LIABLE FOR ANY CLAIM, DAMAGES OR OTHER LIABILITY, WHETHER IN AN ACTION OF CONTRACT, TORT OR OTHERWISE, ARISING FROM, OUT OF OR IN CONNECTION WITH THE SOFTWARE OR THE USE OR OTHER DEALINGS IN THE SOFTWARE. Except as contained in this notice, the name of Silicon Graphics, Inc. shall not be used in advertising or otherwise to promote the sale, use or other dealings in this Software without prior written authorization from Silicon Graphics, Inc.

This software is based in parts on the work of the FreeType Team.

This software uses parts of SSLeay Library: Copyright (C) 1995-1998 Eric Young (eay@cryptsoft.com). All rights reserved



## Key positions

### Insert and remove the remote control key



Ignition switch with remote control key extracted/inserted.

#### **i** NOTE

For cars with the Keyless\* function the key does not need to be inserted into the ignition switch but can be stored in e.g. a pocket. For more information on Keyless functions - see page 50.

### Insert the key

1. Hold the end of the remote control key with the detachable key blade and insert the key in the ignition switch.
2. Then press the key in the lock up to its end position.

#### **!** IMPORTANT

Foreign objects in the ignition switch can impair the function or destroy the lock.

Do not press in the remote control key incorrectly turned - Hold the end with the detachable key blade, see page 46.

### Withdraw the key

- Push the remote control key, allow it to eject, then pull it out from the ignition switch.

### Functions at different levels

In order to enable the use of a limited number of functions with the engine switched off, the car's electrical system can be set in 3 different levels (key positions) - **0**, **I** and **II** - with the remote control key. Throughout this owner's manual these levels are described using the denomination "key positions".

The following table shows the functions available in each key position/level.

Level	Functions
<b>0</b>	<p>Odometer, clock and temperature gauge are illuminated.</p> <p>Power seats can be adjusted.</p> <p>The audio system can be used for a limited time - see page 240.</p>
<b>I</b>	<p>Sun visor for glass roof, power windows, 12 V socket in the passenger compartment, RTI, phone, ventilation fan and windscreen wipers can be used.</p>
<b>II</b>	<p>The headlamps come on.</p> <p>Warning/indicator lamps illuminate for 5 seconds.</p> <p>Several other systems are activated. However, heating in seat cushions and the rear window can only be activated after the engine has been started.</p> <p><b>This key position consumes a lot of current from the starter battery and should therefore be avoided!</b></p>



## 03 Your driving environment

### Key positions

#### Choosing key position/level

##### Key position 0

- Unlock the car - this means that the car's electrical system is at level **0**.

##### Key position I

- With the remote control key fully inserted into the ignition switch<sup>1</sup> - Briefly press **START/STOP ENGINE**.

#### NOTE

To reach level **I** or **II** **without** starting the engine - do **not** depress the brake/clutch pedal when these key positions are due to be selected.

##### Key position II

- With the remote control key fully inserted into the ignition switch<sup>1</sup> - Give a long<sup>2</sup> press on **START/STOP ENGINE**.

##### Back to key position 0

- To return to key position **0** from position **II** and **I** - Briefly press on **START/STOP ENGINE**.

#### Audio system

For information on the audio system's functions with remote control key removed - see page 240.

#### Starting and stopping the engine

For information about starting/switching off the engine - see page 112.

#### Towing

For important information about the remote control key during towing - see page 305.

<sup>1</sup> Not necessary for cars with the Keyless\* function.

<sup>2</sup> Approx. 2 seconds.

\* Option/accessory, for more information, see Introduction.



## Seats

## Front seats



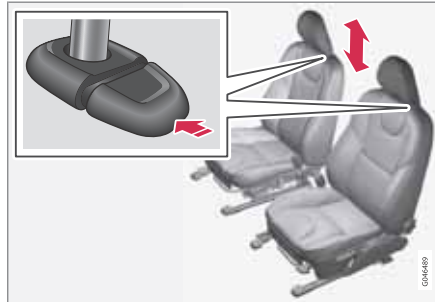
- 1 To adjust lumbar support\*, turn the wheel<sup>1</sup>.
- 2 Forward/backward: lift the handle to adjust the distance to the steering wheel and pedals. Check that the seat is locked after changing position.
- 3 To raise/lower the front edge of seat cushion\*, pump up/down.
- 4 Adjust backrest rake, turn the wheel.
- 5 Raise/lower the seat\*, pump up/down.
- 6 Control panel for power seat\*.

<sup>1</sup> Also applies to power seat.

**WARNING**

Adjust the position of the driver's seat before setting off, never while driving. Make sure that the seat is in locked position in order to avoid personal injury in the event of sudden braking or an accident.

## Adjusting front seat head restraints



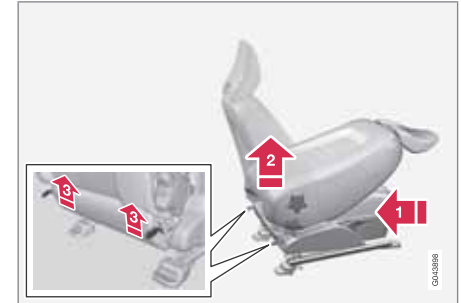
*The height of the front seat head restraints can be adjusted.*

Adjust the head restraint based on the person's height so that the whole of the back of the head is covered if possible.

To adjust the height, the button (see illustration) must be pressed while the restraint is moved up or down.

The head restraint can be adjusted in three different positions.

## Lowering the front seat backrest



The passenger seat backrest can be folded forward to make room for long loads.

- 1 Move the seat as far back/down as possible.
- 2 Adjust the backrest to an upright position.
- 3 Lift the catches on the rear of the backrest and fold it forward.
- 4 Push the seat forward so that the head restraint "locks" in under the glovebox.

Raising takes place in reverse order.

## Seats

### WARNING

Do not use the space behind the front seat, or the rear seat's centre seat, when the front seat backrest is lowered.

### WARNING

Grasp the backrest and make sure that it is properly locked after being folded up in order to avoid personal injury in the event of sudden braking or an accident.

### Power seat\*



- 1** Front edge of seat cushion up/down
- 2** Seat forward/backward and up/down
- 3** Backrest rake

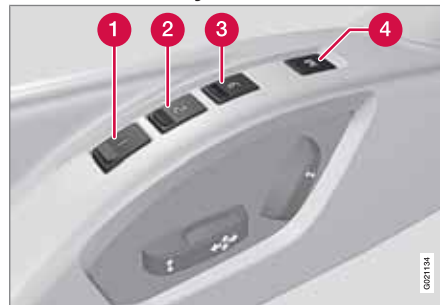
The power front seats have overload protection which is tripped if a seat is blocked by an object. If this happens, go to key position **I** or **0** and wait a short time before adjusting the seat again.

Only one movement (forward/back/up/down) can be made at a time.

### Preparations

The seats can be adjusted for a certain time after unlocking the door with the remote control key without the key in the ignition switch. Seat adjustment is normally made in key position **I** and can always be made when the engine is running.

### Seat with memory function\*



### Store setting

- 1** Memory button
- 2** Memory button
- 3** Memory button
- 4** Button for storing settings

1. Adjust the seat and the door mirrors.
2. Hold the button depressed to store settings while depressing one of the memory buttons.

### Using a stored setting

Hold one of the memory buttons depressed until the seat and the door mirrors stop. If you release the button then the movement of the seat will stop.





## Seats

### Key memory\* in remote control key<sup>2</sup>



All remote control keys can be used by different drivers to store the settings for the driver's seat and door mirrors<sup>3</sup>. Proceed as follows:

- Adjust the seat as you want it.
- Lock the car by pressing the lock button on the remote control key that you normally use. This stores the positions of the seat and door mirrors in the remote control key's memory<sup>4</sup>.
- Unlock the car (by pressing the unlock button on the **same** remote control key) and open the driver's door. The driver's seat and door mirrors will automatically adopt the positions that are stored in the remote

control key's memory (if the seat has been moved since you locked the car).

The key memory can be activated/deactivated in the menu system **MY CAR** under **Settings** → **Car settings** → **Car key memory**. For a description of the menu system, see page 203.

### Emergency stop

If the seat accidentally begins to move, press one of the setting buttons for the seat or memory buttons in order to stop the seat.

Restarting to reach the seat position stored in the key memory is performed by pressing the unlock button on the remote control key. The driver's door must then be open.

### WARNING

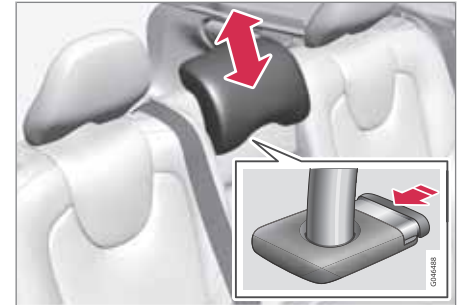
Risk of crushing! Make sure that children do not play with the controls. Check that there are no objects in front of, behind or under the seat during adjustment. Ensure that none of the rear seat passengers is in danger of becoming trapped.

### Heated seats

For heated seats, see page 217.

### Rear seats

#### Head restraint, centre seat, rear



Adjust the head restraint according to passenger height so that the whole of the back of the head is covered if possible. Slide it up as required.

To lower the head restraint again, the button (see illustration) must be pressed while the restraint is carefully moved down.

The head restraint can be adjusted in five different positions.

<sup>2</sup> For key memory for Keyless function, see page 52.

<sup>3</sup> Only if the car is equipped with power seat with memory and retractable power door mirrors.

<sup>4</sup> This setting does not affect settings that have been stored in the power seat's memory function.

## Seats

### NOTE

Do not sit in the centre seat with the head restraint in fully lowered position.

### Manual lowering of the outer head restraints, rear seat



Pull the locking handle closest to the head restraint to fold the head restraint forward.

The head restraint is moved back manually.

### WARNING

The head restraint must be in locked position after being folded up.

### Lowering the rear seat backrest

### IMPORTANT

When the backrest is to be folded, the rear seat cup holder must not be open and there must be no objects in the rear seat. Nor may the seat belts be connected. Otherwise there is a risk of damage to the rear seat upholstery.

The two-section backrest can be folded in different ways.

### NOTE

The front seats may need to be pushed forwards, and/or the backrests adjusted upwards, in order that the rear backrests can be folded forward fully.

- Both sections can be folded separately.
- If the entire backrest is to be folded then the different sections should be folded separately.



- 1 If the right-hand section is being lowered - release and adjust the centre seat head restraint downwards, see page 83.
- 2 The outer head restraints are lowered automatically when the backrests are lowered. Pull up the backrest's locking handle **A** while folding the backrest forward at the same time. A red indicator on the lock catch **B** shows that the backrest is no longer locked in place.

**NOTE**

When the backrests have been lowered the head restraints must be moved forward slightly so as not to make contact with the seat cushion.

Raising takes place in reverse order.

**NOTE**

When the backrest has been raised, the red indicator should no longer be showing. If it is still showing then the backrest is not locked in place.

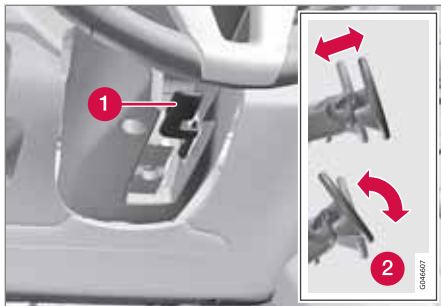
**WARNING**

Check that the backrests and head restraints in the rear seat are locked properly after being folded up.



## Steering wheel

### Adjusting



Adjusting the steering wheel.

- ① Lever - releasing the steering wheel
- ② Possible steering wheel positions

The steering wheel can be adjusted for both height and depth:

1. Push the lever forwards to release the steering wheel.
2. Adjust the steering wheel to the position that suits you.
3. Pull the lever back to fix the steering wheel in place. If the lever is stiff, press the steering wheel lightly at the same time as you push the lever back.

### WARNING

Adjust the steering wheel and fix it before driving away.

With speed related power steering\* the level of steering force can be adjusted, see page 233.

### Keypads\*



Keypads in the steering wheel.

- ① Cruise control, see page 145
- Adaptive cruise control, see page 147
- ② Audio and phone control, see page 241.

### Horn



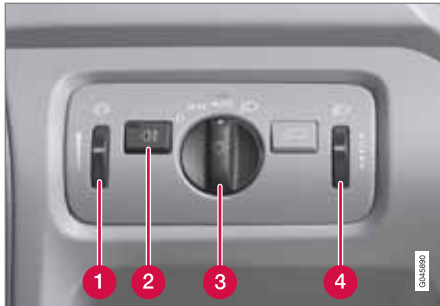
Horn.

Press the centre of the steering wheel to signal.



## Lighting

## Light switches



Overview, light switches.

- 1 Thumbwheel for adjusting display and instrument lighting as well as ceiling lamps, mood lights and lighting in the front door storage compartments\*
- 2 Rear fog lamp
- 3 Light switches
- 4 Thumbwheel<sup>1</sup> for headlamp levelling

## Instrument lighting

Different display and instrument lighting is switched on depending on key position, see page 79.

The display lighting is automatically subdued in darkness - the sensitivity is set with the thumbwheel.

The intensity of the instrument lighting is adjusted with the thumbwheel.

## Headlamp levelling

The load in the car changes the vertical alignment of the headlamp beam, which could dazzle oncoming motorists. Avoid this by adjusting the height of the beam. Lower the beam if the car is heavily laden.

1. Leave the engine running, or have the car's electrical system in key position I.
2. Roll the thumbwheel up/down to raise/lower beam alignment.

Cars with active Xenon headlamps\* have automatic headlamp levelling and are therefore not equipped with the thumbwheel.

## Main/dipped beam



Headlamp control and stalk switch.

- 1 Position for main beam flash
- 2 Position for main beam

<sup>1</sup> Not available for cars equipped with active Xenon headlamps\*.



# 03 Your driving environment

## Lighting

Position	Specification
0	Daytime running lights Main beam flash operates in this position.
	Daytime running lights when the car is being driven. Automatic switching to parking lights when the car is parked.

Position	Specification
AUTO	Daytime running lights during daytime driving. Automatic switching to dipped beam in poor light conditions and when windscreen wipers or rear fog lamps are activated.  The "Tunnel detection*" function activates dipped beam in poor light conditions.  The function for "Main beam with automatic activation*" can be used.  Main beam flash operates in this position.
	Dipped beam Main beam can be activated.  Main beam flash operates in this position.

Volvo recommends that **AUTO** mode is used, as long as the traffic situation or weather conditions are not unfavourable for the function for "Main beam with automatic activation\*".

### Main beam flash

Move the stalk switch gently towards the steering wheel to the position for main beam flash. Main beam comes on until the stalk switch is released.

### Daytime running lights during the day. DRL



Light switch in position **AUTO**.

With the light switch in the **AUTO** position, the Daytime Running Lights (DRL) are activated automatically during the daytime. This is regulated by a light sensor which switches from daytime running lights to dipped beam off the main headlamps at dusk or when the daylight becomes too weak. Switching to dipped beam also takes place if the windscreen wipers or rear foglights are activated.

03

## Lighting

## NOTE

To achieve minimal energy consumption, the rear lights are also switched off when switching automatically from dipped beam to DRLs.

## WARNING

This system help to save energy - it cannot determine in all situations when daylight is too weak or sufficiently strong, e.g. in mist and rain.

The driver is always responsible for ensuring that the car is driven with its lights in a correct state and in accordance with applicable traffic regulations.

## Dipped beam

In **AUTO** position, dipped beam is activated automatically at dusk or when daylight becomes too weak. Dipped beam is also activated automatically if the windscreen wipers or rear foglights are activated.

In position dipped beam is always activated when the engine is running or when key position **II** is active.

## Main beam

Main beam can be activated when the headlamp control is in position . Activate/

deactivate main beam by moving the stalk switch towards the steering wheel to the end position and release. Alternatively, the main beam can be deactivated by a light press of the stalk switch toward the steering wheel.

When main beam has been activated the symbol illuminates in the combined instrument panel.

## Main beam with automatic activation - AHB\*

Main beam with automatic activation (Active High Beam - AHB) is a function which uses a camera sensor at the top edge of the windscreen to detect the headlamp beams of oncoming traffic or the rear lights of vehicles in front, and then switches from main beam to dipped beam. The lights are switched back to main beam a second or so after the camera sensor no longer detects any such light.

This function can be activated when the headlamp control is in position **AUTO**. For activation to take place, the engine must have been running for at least 20 seconds and the speed of the car must be 20 km/h or higher.



Light switch in position **AUTO**.

Activate/deactivate AHB by moving the left-hand stalk switch towards the steering wheel to the end position and release. Deactivation when main beam is on means that the lights switch directly to dipped beam.





Headlamp control and stalk switch.




## Lighting

### In cars with analogue combined instrument panel:

When AHB has been activated, the symbol  illuminates in the instrument panel display. When main beam has been activated, the  symbol also illuminates in the instrument panel display.

### In cars with digital combined instrument panel:



When AHB is activated, the  symbol shines white in the instrument panel display. When main beam is activated, the symbol shines blue.


### NOTE

Keep the windscreen surface in front of the camera sensor free from ice, snow, mist and dirt.

Do not stick or attach anything to the windscreen in front of the camera sensor as this may reduce effectiveness or cause one or more of the systems dependent on the camera to stop working.

If the message **Active main beam Temporary unavailable** is shown in the combined instrument panel's display then you have to switch manually between

main and dipped beam. However, the headlamp control may nevertheless be in position **AUTO**. The same applies if the message **Windscreen sensors blocked** See manual and the  symbol are shown. The  symbol goes out when these messages are shown.

AHB may be temporarily unavailable e.g. in situations with dense fog or heavy rain. When AHB becomes available again, or the windscreen sensors are no longer blocked, the message goes out and the  symbol illuminates.

### WARNING

AHB is an aid for using optimum light composition when conditions are favourable.

The driver always bears responsibility for manually switching between main and dipped beam when traffic situations or weather conditions so require.

### IMPORTANT

Examples of when manual switching between main and dipped beam may be required:

- In heavy rain or dense fog
- In freezing rain
- In snow flurries or slush
- In moonlight
- When driving in poorly lit built-up areas
- When the traffic ahead has weak lighting
- If there are pedestrians on or beside the road
- If there are highly reflective objects such as signs in the vicinity of the road
- When the lighting from oncoming traffic is obscured by e.g. a crash barrier
- When there is traffic on connecting roads
- On the brow of a hill or in a hollow
- In sharp bends.

For more information on the limitations of the camera sensor, see page 171.

### Tunnel detection\*

In cars fitted with a rain sensor\*, the rain sensor detects the change in light conditions when the

\* Option/accessory, for more information, see Introduction.

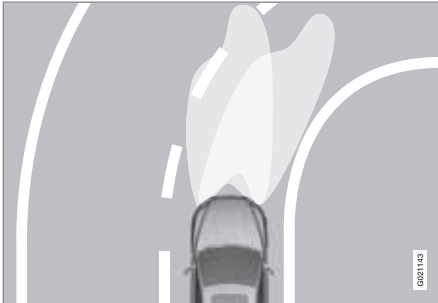




## Lighting

car enters a tunnel, for example. The lighting is then switched within one second from daytime running lights to the main headlamps' dipped beam. Approx. 20 seconds after the car has emerged from the tunnel, the lights return to daytime running lights. If the car is driven into another tunnel within this time period, the return to daytime running lights is cancelled. This prevents frequent changes to the car lighting. Note! - The headlamp control must be in **AUTO** position for tunnel detection to work.


## Active Xenon headlamps ABL\*




Headlamp pattern with function deactivated (left) and activated (right) respectively.

If the car is equipped with active Xenon headlamps Active Bending Lights - ABL the light from the headlamps follows the steering wheel

movement in order to provide maximum lighting in bends and junctions and so provide increased safety.

The function is activated automatically when the car is started (provided that it has not been deactivated in the menu system **MY CAR**). In the event of a fault in the function the  symbol illuminates in the combined instrument panel at the same time as the information display shows an explanatory text and a further illuminated symbol.

Symbol	Display	Specification
	<b>Headlamp failure</b> <b>Service required</b>	The system is disengaged. Visit a workshop if the message remains. Volvo recommends that you contact an authorised Volvo workshop.

The function is only active in twilight or darkness and only when the car is moving.

The function<sup>2</sup> can be deactivated/ activated in the menu system **MY CAR** under **Settings** → **Car settings** → **Light settings** → **Active Bending Lights**. For a description of the menu system, see page 204.

<sup>2</sup> Activated on delivery from the factory.



# 03 Your driving environment

## Lighting

### Position/parking lamps



Headlamp control in position for position/parking lamps.

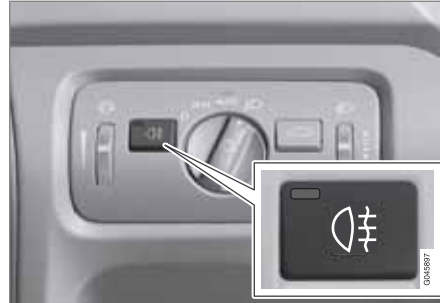
Turn the light switch to the position for position/parking lights (the numberplate lights come on at the same time).

When it is dark outside and the tailgate is opened the rear position lamps illuminate to alert traffic behind. This takes place irrespective of what position the headlamp control is in or what key position the car's electrical system is in.

### Brake lights


The brake light automatically comes on during braking. For information on the Emergency brake lights and automatic hazard warning flashers, see page 129.

### Rear fog lamp



Button for rear fog lamp.

The rear fog lamp consists of two rear lamps and can only be switched on in combination with main/dipped beam.

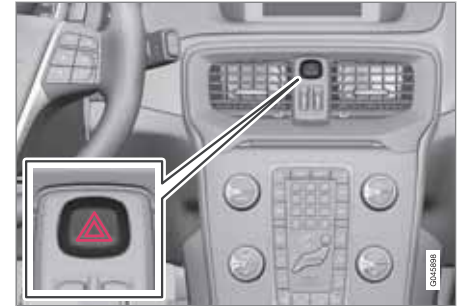
Press the button for On/Off. The rear fog lamp indicator symbol  on the combined instrument panel and the light in the button illuminate when the rear fog lamp is switched on.

The rear fog lamp is switched off automatically when the engine is switched off.

### NOTE

Regulations on the use of rear fog lamps vary from country to country.

### Hazard warning flashers



Button for hazard warning flashers.

Press the button to activate the hazard warning flashers. Both direction indicator symbols in the combined instrument panel flash when the hazard warning flashers are in use.

The hazard warning flashers are activated automatically when the car has been braked so suddenly that the emergency brake lights have been activated at a speed below 10 km/h. The hazard warning flashers remain on when the car has stopped and are deactivated automatically when the car is driven off again or the



## Lighting

button is depressed. For more information on Emergency brake lights and automatic hazard warning flashers, see page 129.

### Direction indicators/flashers



Direction indicators/flashers.

### Short flash sequence

- 1 Move the stalk switch up or down to the first position and release. The direction indicators flash three times. The function can be activated/deactivated in the menu system **MY CAR** under **Settings** → **Car settings** → **Light settings** → **Triple indicator**. For a description of the menu system, see page 204.

### Continuous flash sequence

- 2 Move the stalk switch up or down to the outer position.

The stalk switch remains in its position and is moved back manually, or automatically by the steering wheel movement.

### Direction indicator symbols

For direction indicator symbols, see page 72.

### Interior lighting



Controls in the roof console for the front reading lamps and ceiling lamps.

- 1 Reading lamp, left-hand side
- 2 Passenger compartment lighting (floor lamps\* and ceiling lamps) - On/Off

- 3 Auto function for passenger compartment lighting
- 4 Reading lamp, right-hand side

All lighting in the passenger compartment can be switched on and off manually within 30 minutes from when:

- the engine has been switched off and the car's electrical system is in key position **0**
- the car has been unlocked but the engine has not been started.

### Front reading lamps\*

The reading lamps are switched on or off by briefly pressing the relevant button in the roof console.

Brightness is adjusted by holding the button pressed in.

## Lighting

## Rear reading lamps\*



Rear reading lamps.

The lamps are switched on or off by briefly pressing the relevant button.

Brightness is adjusted by holding the button pressed in.

## Floor lamps\* and ceiling lamps

The floor lamps and ceiling lamps are switched on and off respectively when a side door is opened or closed.

Floor lamp intensity can be changed in the **MY CAR** menu system under **Settings** → **Car settings** → **Light settings** → **Interior light** → **Floor lights**. Select from **Off**, **Low** and **High**. For more information on the **MY CAR** menu system, see page 205.

## Lighting in the front door storage compartments\*

Lighting in the front door storage compartments comes on when the engine starts.

## Glovebox lighting

Glovebox lighting is switched on and off respectively when the lid is opened or closed.

## Vanity mirror

The lighting for the vanity mirror, see page 236, is switched on and off respectively when the cover is opened or closed.

## Lighting, cargo area

The lighting in the cargo area is switched on and off respectively when the tailgate is opened or closed.

## Auto function for passenger compartment lighting

The auto function is activated when the lamp in the **AUTO** button is lit.

The passenger compartment lighting is then switched on and off as indicated below.

The passenger compartment lighting is switched on and remains on for 30 seconds if:

- the car is unlocked with the remote control key or key blade, see pages 44 or 47
- the engine has been switched off and the car's electrical system is in key position **0**.

Passenger compartment lighting is switched off when:

- the engine is started
- the car is locked.

The passenger compartment lighting comes on and remains on for two minutes if one of the doors is open.

If any lighting is switched on manually and the car is locked then it will be switched off automatically after two minutes.

## Mood lights

When the normal passenger compartment lighting is switched off and the engine is running, an LED in the front roof console illuminates in order to provide a low light and enhance the mood while driving. The light also makes it better to see objects in the storage compartments, etc. when it is dark out. Light intensity can be changed in the **MY CAR** menu system under **Settings** → **Car settings** → **Light settings** → **Interior light** → **Ambient light**. Select from **Off**, **Low** and **High**. This lighting extinguishes when the engine is switched off.

If the car also has mood lights in the roof console for rear reading lamps\*, the colour of the lights can be set in the **MY CAR** menu system under **Settings** → **Car settings** → **Light**



## Lighting

settings → Interior light → Ambient light colours. If you select **Temperature**, the colour shifts between warm white and cold white depending on the temperature in the car or you can choose between different colour themes. The available colour themes are **Frosty White, Toscana White, Ember Gold, Red Sunset, Rainforest, Glacier Blue** and **Violet Purple**. For more information on the **MY CAR** menu system, see page 205.

### Home safe light duration

Some of the exterior lighting can be kept switched on to work as home safe lighting after the car has been locked.

1. Remove the remote control key from the ignition switch.
2. Move the left-hand stalk switch toward the steering wheel to the end position and release it. The function can be activated in the same way as with main beam flash, see page 87.
3. Get out of the car and lock the door.

When the function is activated, dipped beam, parking lamps, door mirror lamps, number plate lighting, interior ceiling lamps and floor lamps are switched on.

The length of time for which the home safe lighting should be kept on can be set in the

menu system **MY CAR** under **Settings → Car settings → Light settings → Home safe light duration**. For a description of the menu system, see page 204.

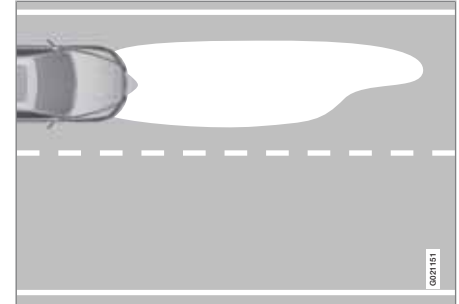
### Approach light duration

Approach lighting is switched on with the remote control key, see page 44, and is used to switch on the car's lighting at a distance.

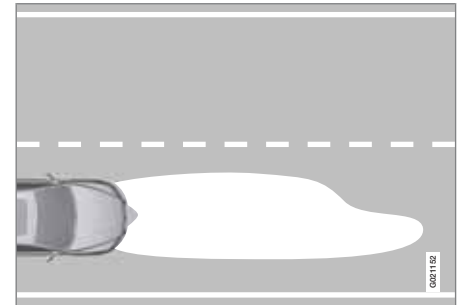
When the function is activated with the remote control, parking lamps, door mirror lamps, number plate lighting, interior ceiling lamps and floor lamps are switched on.

The length of time for which the approach lighting should be kept on can be set in the menu system **MY CAR** under **Settings → Car settings → Light settings → Approach light duration**. For a description of the menu system, see page 204.

### Adjusting headlamp pattern



Headlamp pattern, left-hand traffic.



Headlamp pattern, right-hand traffic.

The headlamp pattern must be adjusted to avoid dazzling oncoming motorists and can be set for right or left-hand traffic.



### Lighting

#### Active Xenon headlamps\*

The light pattern does not need to be adjusted.

#### Halogen headlamps

The headlamp pattern for halogen headlamps is readjusted by masking the headlamp lens.

The headlamp pattern may not be as good.

#### Masking the headlamps

1. Copy the A and B templates for left-hand drive cars or the C and D templates for right-hand drive cars see page 98. The template scale is 1:2. Use a photocopier with a zoom function to copy the templates at 200 %:
  - A = LHD Right (left-hand drive, right lens)
  - B = LHD Left (left-hand drive, left lens)
  - C = RHD Right (right-hand drive, right lens)
  - D = RHD Left (right-hand drive, left lens)
2. Transfer the template to a self-adhesive waterproof material and cut it out.
3. Start from the design lines on the headlamp lenses; see the lines on page 97. Position the self-adhesive templates at the design lines with the help of the illustration.

\* Option/accessory, for more information, see Introduction.



## Lighting

## Aligning the templates

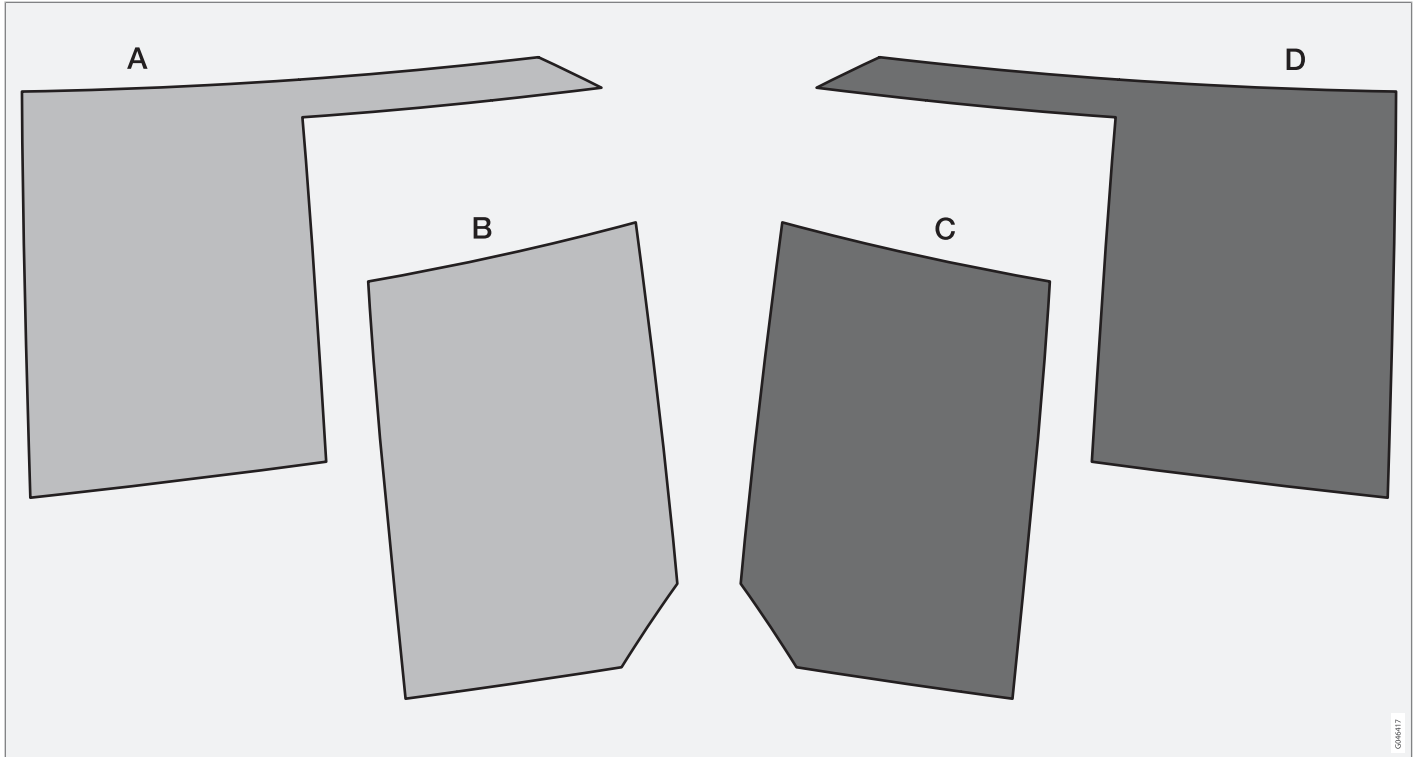


Upper row: left-hand drive cars, templates A and B. Lower row: right-hand drive cars, templates C and D.



## Lighting

Templates for halogen headlamps



03/01/17

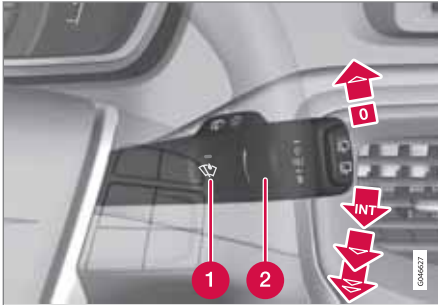
03





## Wipers and washing

### Windscreen wipers<sup>1</sup>




Windscreen wipers and windscreen washers.

- 1** Rain sensor, on/off
- 2** Thumbwheel sensitivity/frequency

### Windscreen wipers off

**0** Move the stalk switch to position **0** to switch off the windscreen wipers.


### Single sweep


 Raise the stalk switch and release to make one sweep.

### Intermittent wiping

**INT** Set the number of sweeps per time unit with the thumbwheel when intermittent wiping is selected.

### Continuous wiping

 The wipers sweep at normal speed.

 The wipers sweep at high speed.

### ! IMPORTANT

Before activating the wipers during winter ensure that the wiper blades are not frozen in, and that any snow or ice on the windscreen is scraped away.

### ! IMPORTANT

Use plenty of washer fluid when the wipers are cleaning the windscreen. The windscreen must be wet when the windscreen wipers are operating.


### Service position wiper blade

For cleaning the windscreen/wiper blades and replacement of wiper blades see see page 341 and 357.

### Rain sensor\*


The rain sensor automatically starts the windscreen wipers based on how much water it detects on the windscreen. The sensitivity of

the rain sensor can be adjusted using the thumbwheel.

When the rain sensor is activated a light in the button the rain sensor symbol  is shown in the right-hand display in the combined instrument panel.

### Activating and setting the sensitivity


When activating the rain sensor, the car must be running or the remote control key in position **I** or **II** while the windscreen wiper stalk switch must be in position **0** or in the position for a single sweep.

Activate the rain sensor by pressing the button . The windscreen wipers make one sweep.

Press the stalk switch up for the wipers to make an extra sweep.

Turn the thumbwheel upward for higher sensitivity and downward for lower sensitivity. (An extra sweep is made when the thumbwheel is turned upward.)

### Deactivate

Deactivate the rain sensor by pressing the button  or move the stalk switch down to another wiper program.

<sup>1</sup> Replacing the wiper blades see page 341, service position, wiper blade see page 341 and filling washer fluid see page 343.

## Wipers and washing

The rain sensor is automatically deactivated when the remote control key is removed from the ignition switch or five minutes after the engine has been switched off.

### **IMPORTANT**

The windscreen wipers could start and be damaged in an automatic car wash. Switch off the rain sensor while the car is in motion or when the remote control key is in position **I** or **II**. The symbol in the combined instrument panel and the light in the button go out.

### Washing the headlamps and windows



Washing function.

### Washing the windscreen

Move the stalk switch toward the steering wheel to start the windscreen and headlamp washers.

The windscreen wipers will make several more sweeps and the headlamps are washed once the stalk switch has been released.

### High-pressure headlamp washing\*

High-pressure headlamp washing consumes a large quantity of washer fluid. To save fluid, the headlamps are washed automatically at every fifth windscreen wash cycle.

### Reduced washing

If only approx. 1 litre of washer fluid remains in the reservoir and the message that you should fill the washer fluid is shown in the combined instrument panel's display, then the supply of washer fluid to the headlamps is switched off. This is in order to prioritise cleaning the windscreen and the visibility through it.

### Wiping and washing the rear window



- 1 Rear window wiper – intermittent wiping
- 2 Rear window wiper – continuous speed

Press the stalk switch forward (see the arrow in the illustration above) to initiate rear window washing and wiping.

### **NOTE**

The rear window wiper is equipped with overheating protection which means that the motor is switched off if it overheats. The rear window wiper works again after a cooling period (30 seconds or longer, depending on the heat in the motor and the outside temperature).



## Wipers and washing

### Wiper – reversing

Engaging reverse gear while the windscreen wipers are on initiates intermittent rear window wiping<sup>2</sup>. The function stops when reverse gear is disengaged.

If the rear window wiper is already on at continuous speed, no change is made.



#### NOTE

On cars with rain sensors, the rear wiper is activated during reversing if the sensor is activated and it is raining.

<sup>2</sup> This function (intermittent wiping when reversing) can be deactivated. Visit a workshop. Volvo recommends that you contact an authorised Volvo workshop.

## Windows, rearview and door mirrors

### General

#### Laminated glass



The glass is reinforced which provides better protection against break-ins and improved sound insulation in the passenger compartment.

The windscreen and other windows\* have laminated glass.

#### Water and dirt-repellent coating\*



Windows are treated with a coating that improves the view in difficult

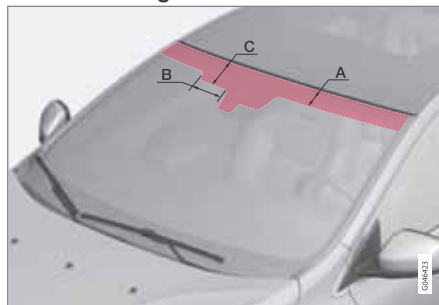
weather conditions. Maintenance, see page 358.



### IMPORTANT

Do not use a metal ice scraper to remove ice from the windows. Use the heating to remove ice from the door mirrors, see page 105.

#### Heat-reflecting windscreen\*



Areas where IR film is not applied.

	Dimensions
A	65 mm
B	150 mm
C	125 mm

The windscreen is equipped with a heat-reflecting film (IR) that reduces the solar heat radiation into the passenger compartment.

The positioning of electronic equipment, such as a transponder, behind a glass surface with heat-reflecting film may affect its function and performance.

For the optimal function of electronic equipment, it should be positioned on the part of the windscreen with no heat-reflecting film (see the highlighted area in the above illustration).

#### Power windows



Driver's door control panel.

- 1 Switch for electric child safety locks\* and disengaging rear power window buttons, see page 60.
- 2 Rear window controls
- 3 Front window controls



## Windows, rearview and door mirrors

### WARNING

Check that no rear seat passengers are trapped when the windows are closed from the driver's door.

### WARNING

Check that children or other passengers are not trapped if the windows are closed, even when the remote control key is used.

### WARNING

If there are children in the car - remember to always switch off the power supply to the power windows by selecting key position **0** and then take the remote control key with you when leaving the car. For information on key positions - see page 80.

### Operating



*Operating the power windows.*

 Operating without auto

 Operating with auto

All power windows can be operated using the control panel for the driver's door - the control panels for the other doors can only each operate their respective power window. Only one control panel can be operated at a time.

In order for the power windows to be used the key position must be at least **I** - see page 79. The power windows can be operated for a few minutes after the engine has been switched off and after the remote control key has been removed - although not after a door has been opened.

Closing of the windows is stopped and the window is opened if anything prevents its movement. It is possible to override the pinch protection when closing has been interrupted, e.g. if there is ice forming. After two successive closing interruptions the pinch protection will be forced and the automatic function deactivated for a short while, now it is possible to close by continually holding the button pulled up.

### NOTE

One way to reduce the pulsating wind noise when the rear windows are open is to also open the front windows slightly.

### Operating without auto

Move one of the controls up/down gently. The power windows move up/down as long as the control is held in position.

### Operating with auto

Move one of the controls up/down to the end position and release it. The window runs automatically to its end position.

### Operating with the remote control key and central locking

To remotely operate the power windows from the outside with the remote control key or from inside with central locking, see pages 44 and 55.

## Windows, rearview and door mirrors

### Resetting

If the battery is disconnected then the function for automatic opening must be reset so that it can work correctly.

1. Gently raise the front section of the button to raise the window to its end position and hold it there for one second.
2. Release the button briefly.
3. Raise the front section of the button again for one second.

### WARNING

A reset must take place for pinch protection to work.

### Door mirrors



Door mirror controls.

### Adjusting

1. Press the **L** button for the left-hand door mirror or the **R** button for the right-hand door mirror. The light in the button illuminates.
2. Adjust the position with the joystick in the centre.
3. Press the **L** or **R** button again. The light should no longer be illuminated.

### WARNING

The mirror on the driver's side is the wide-angle type to provide optimal vision. Objects may appear further away than they actually are.

### Storing the position<sup>1</sup>

The mirror positions are stored in the key memory when the car has been locked with the remote control key. When the car is unlocked with the same remote control key the mirrors and the driver's seat adopt the stored positions when the driver's door is opened.

The function can be activated/deactivated in the menu system **MY CAR** under **Settings** → **Car settings** → **Car key memory** → **Personal settings in key memory**. For a description of the menu system, see page 204.

### Angling the door mirror when parking<sup>1</sup>

The door mirror can be angled down for the driver to view the side of the road when parking for example.

- Engage reverse gear and press the **L** or **R** button.

When reverse gear is disengaged the mirror automatically returns to its original position

<sup>1</sup> Only in combination with power seat with memory, see page 82.



## Windows, rearview and door mirrors

after about 10 seconds, or earlier by pressing the button labelled **L** or **R** respectively.

### Automatic angling of the door mirror when parking<sup>1</sup>

When reverse gear is engaged the door mirror is automatically angled down so that the driver can see the side of the road when parking for example. When reverse gear is disengaged the mirror automatically returns to its original position after a short time.

The function can be activated/deactivated in the menu system **MY CAR** under **Settings** → **Car settings** → **Side mirror settings** → **Tilt left mirror** or **Tilt right mirror**. For a description of the menu system, see page 204.

### Automatic retraction when locking<sup>1</sup>

When the car is locked/unlocked with the remote control key the door mirrors are automatically retracted/extended.

The function can be activated/deactivated in the menu system **MY CAR** under **Settings** → **Car settings** → **Side mirror settings** → **Fold mirrors**. For a description of the menu system, see page 204.

### Resetting to neutral

Mirrors that have been moved out of position by an external force must be reset electrically to the neutral position for electric retracting/ extending to work correctly:

1. Retract the mirrors with the **L** and **R** buttons.
2. Fold them out again with the **L** and **R** buttons.
3. Repeat the above procedure as necessary.

The mirrors are now reset in neutral position.

### Retractable power door mirrors\*

The mirrors can be retracted for parking/driving in narrow spaces:

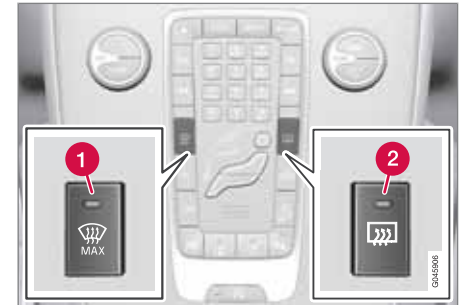
1. Depress the **L** and **R** buttons simultaneously (key position must be at least **I**).
2. Release them after approximately 1 second. The mirrors automatically stop in the fully retracted position.

Fold out the mirrors by pressing down the **L** and **R** buttons simultaneously. The mirrors automatically stop in the fully extended position.

### Home safe and approach lighting

The light on the door mirrors illuminates when approach lighting or home safe lighting is selected, see page 95.

### Heated windscreen\*, rear window and door mirrors



Heating for windscreen (1), rear window and door mirrors (2)

Use the defroster to quickly remove misting and ice from the windscreen, rear window and door mirrors.

One press of the button starts the heating. The light in the button indicates that the function is active. Disconnect the heating as soon as the ice/misting is cleared in order not to load the

<sup>1</sup> Only in combination with power seat with memory, see page 82.

## Windows, rearview and door mirrors

battery unnecessarily. However, the heating is switched off automatically after a certain time.

Refer to the section "Heated windscreen and max. defroster" on page 219.

The door mirrors and rear window are demisted/defrosted automatically if the car is started in an outside temperature lower than +9 °C. Automatic defrosting can be selected in the menu system **MY CAR** under **Settings** → **Climate settings** → **Automatic rear defroster**. Select between **On** or **Off**. For a description of the menu system, see page 204.

The compass is deactivated when the heated windscreen is activated. When the heated windscreen is deactivated, the compass is reactivated.

### Interior rearview mirror



1 Control for dimming

### Manual dimming

Bright light from behind could be reflected in the rearview mirror and dazzle the driver. Use dimming with the dimming control when lights from behind are distracting:

1. Use dimming by moving the control in towards the passenger compartment.
2. Return to normal position by moving the control towards the windscreen.

### Automatic dimming\*

Bright light from behind is automatically dimmed by the rearview mirror. The control is not available in mirrors with automatic dimming.

The compass\* can only be specified for rearview mirrors with automatic dimming, see page 107.

### Glass roof\*

The glass roof is fixed, but the blind can be operated in key position **I** or **II** with the control in the roof console. For information on key positions - see page 79.



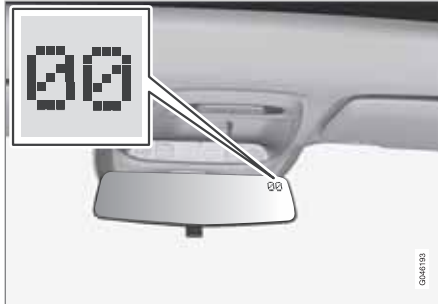
- 1 Automatic opening to end position
- 2 Manual opening until the button is released
- 3 Manual closing until the button is released
- 4 Automatic closing to end position





## Compass\*

## Operation



Rearview mirror with compass.

The upper right-hand corner of the rearview mirror has an integrated display that shows the compass direction in which the front of the car is pointing. Eight different directions are shown with English abbreviations: **N** (north), **NE** (north east), **E** (east), **SE** (south east), **S** (south), **SW** (south west), **W** (west) and **NW** (north west).

The compass is activated automatically when the car is started or in key position **II**, see page 79. To deactivate/activate the compass - press in the button on the rear side of the mirror using a paper clip for example.

The compass is deactivated when the heated windscreen is activated. When the heated windscreen is deactivated, the compass is reactivated.

## Calibration

The earth is divided into 15 magnetic zones. The compass is set for the geographic area to which the car was delivered. The compass should be calibrated if the car is moved across several magnetic zones. Proceed as follows:

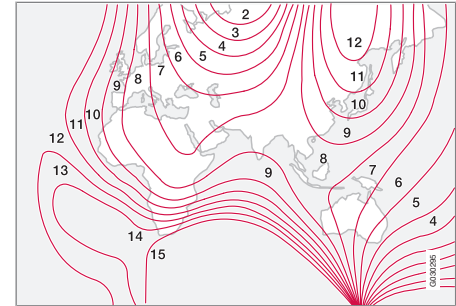
1. Stop the car in a large open area free from steel structures and high-voltage power lines.
2. Start the car.



## NOTE

For the best calibration, switch off all electrical equipment (climate control system, wipers, etc.) and makes sure that all doors are closed.

3. Hold the button on the rear of the rearview mirror depressed approx. 6 seconds (using a paper clip for example) until the character **C** is shown.



Magnetic zones.

4. Hold the button on the rear of the rearview mirror depressed approx. 3 seconds. The number of the current magnetic zone is shown.
5. Press the button repeatedly until the required magnetic zone (1-15) is shown. See the map of magnetic zones for the compass.
6. Wait until the display resumes showing the character **C**.
7. Drive slowly in a circle at a speed of no more than 10 km/h until a compass direction is shown in the display, indicating that calibration is complete. Then drive a further 2 circles to fine-tune calibration.
8. Repeat the above procedure as necessary.

## Alcolock\*

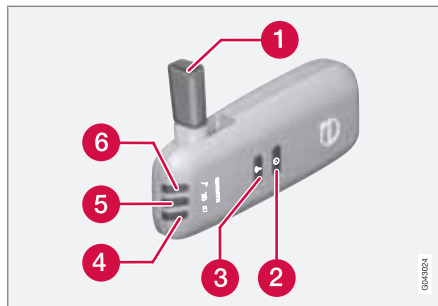
### General information on the alcolock

The function of the Alcolock<sup>1</sup> is to prevent the car from being driven by individuals under the influence of alcohol. Before the engine can be started the driver must take a breath test that verifies that he/she is not under the influence of alcohol. Alcolock calibration takes place in accordance with each market's limit value in force for driving legally.

### WARNING

The Alcolock is an aid and does not exempt the driver from responsibility. It is always the responsibility of the driver to be sober and to drive the car safely.

### Functions



- 1 Nozzle for breath test.
- 2 Switch.
- 3 Transmission button.
- 4 Lamp for battery status.
- 5 Lamp for result of breath test.
- 6 Lamp indicates ready for breath test.

### Operation

#### Battery

Alcolock indicator lamp (4) shows battery status:

Indicator lamp (4)	Battery status
Green flashing	Charging in progress
Green	Fully charged
Yellow	Semi-charged
Red	Discharged - fit the charger in the holder or connect the power supply cable from the glovebox.

#### NOTE

Store the Alcolock in its holder. This will keep the built-in battery fully charged and the Alcolock is activated automatically when the car is opened.

<sup>1</sup> Also called Alcoguard.

\* Option/accessory, for more information, see Introduction.



## Alcolock\*

## Storage



Handheld unit storage and charging station.

- The handheld alcolock unit is released by depressing it slightly in its holder and releasing it - it then springs out and can be removed from the holder.
- Replace the handheld unit in the holder by pushing it in until it engages.
- Store the handheld unit in the holder - this provides it with the best protection and keeps its batteries fully charged.

## Before starting the engine

The Alcolock is activated automatically and is then ready for use when the car is opened.

1. When the indicator lamp (6) is green the Alcolock is ready for use.
2. Withdraw the Alcolock from its holder. If the Alcolock is outside the car when it is

unlocked then it must first be activated with the switch (2).

3. Fold up the nozzle (1), take a deep breath and blow with an even pressure until a "click" is heard after approx. 5 seconds. The result will be one of the alternatives in the following table **Result after breath test**.
4. If no message is shown then the transmission to the car may have failed - in which case, press the button (3) to transmit the result to the car manually.
5. Fold down the nozzle and refit the Alcolock in its holder.
6. Start the engine following an approved breath test within 5 minutes - otherwise it must be repeated.

## Result after breath test

Indicator lamp (5) + Display text	Specification
Green lamp + Alcolock Approved test	Start the engine - no alcohol content measured.
Yellow lamp + Alcolock Approved test	Engine starting possible - measured alcohol content is above 0.1 promille but below the limit value in force <sup>A</sup> .
Red lamp + Disapproved test Wait 1 minute	Engine starting not possible - measured alcohol content is above the limit value in force <sup>A</sup> .

<sup>A</sup> Limits vary between countries, so find out what limits apply. See also the section entitled General information on the Alcolock on page 108

 NOTE

After a completed period of driving, the engine can be restarted within 30 minutes without a new breath test.



## 03 Your driving environment

### Alcolock\*

#### To bear in mind

##### Before the breath test

In order to obtain correct function and as accurate a measurement result as possible:

- Avoid eating or drinking approx. 5 minutes before the breath test.
- Avoid excess windscreen washing - the alcohol in the washer fluid may result in an incorrect measurement result.

##### Change of driver

In order to ensure that a new breath test is carried out in the event of a change of driver - depress the switch (2) and the send button (3) simultaneously for approx. 3 seconds. At which point the car returns to start inhibition mode and a new approved breath test is required before starting the engine.

##### Calibration and service

The Alcolock must be checked and calibrated at a workshop<sup>2</sup> every 12 months.

30 days before recalibration is necessary the display shows **Alcoguard Calibr. required**. If calibration is not carried out within these 30 days then normal engine starting will be blocked - only starting with the Bypass func-

tion will then be possible, see page 110 section Emergency situation.

The message can be cleared by pressing the send button (3) once. Otherwise it goes out on its own after approx. 2 minutes but then reappears each time the engine is started - only recalibration at a workshop<sup>2</sup> can clear the message permanently.

##### Cold or hot weather

The colder the weather the longer it takes before the Alcolock is ready for use:

Temperature (°C)	Maximum heating time (seconds)
+10 to +85	10
-5 to +10	60
-40 to -5	180

At temperatures below -20 °C or above +60 °C the Alcolock requires additional power supply. The display shows **Alcoguard insert power cable**. In which case, connect the power supply cable from the glovebox and wait until indicator lamp (6) is green.

In extremely cold weather the heating time can be reduced by taking the Alcolock indoors.

##### Emergency situation

In the event of an emergency situation or the Alcolock is out of order, it is possible to bypass the Alcolock in order to drive the car.

#### NOTE

All Bypass activation is logged and saved in memory, see page 8 in the section, Recording data.

After the Bypass function has been activated the display shows **Alcoguard Bypass enabled** the whole time while driving and can only be reset by a workshop<sup>2</sup>.

The Bypass function can be tested without the error message being logged - in which case, carry out all the steps without starting the car. The error message is cleared when the car is locked.

When the Alcolock is installed, either the Bypass or Emergency function is selected as the bypassing option. This setting can be changed afterwards at a workshop<sup>2</sup>.

<sup>2</sup> An authorised Volvo workshop is recommended.

\* Option/accessory, for more information, see Introduction.



## Alcolock\*

### Activating the Bypass function

- Depress and hold the left-hand stalk switch **OK** button and the button for hazard warning flashers simultaneously for approx. 5 seconds - the display first shows **Bypass activated Wait 1 minute** and then **Alcoguard Bypass enabled** - after which the engine can be started.

This function can be activated several times. The error message shown during driving can only be cleared at a workshop<sup>2</sup>.

### Activating the Emergency function

- Depress and hold the left-hand stalk switch **OK** button and the button for hazard warning flashers simultaneously for approx. 5 seconds - the display shows **Alcoguard Bypass enabled** and the engine can be started.

This function can be used once, after which a reset must be made at a workshop<sup>2</sup>.

### Symbols and display messages

In addition to the previously described messages, the combined instrument panel's display can also show the following:

Display text	Meaning/Action
Alcoguard Restart possible	The engine has been switched off for less than 30 minutes - engine starting possible without new test.
Alcoguard Service required	Contact a workshop <sup>2</sup> .
Alcoguard No signal	Transmission failed - send manually with button (3) or take a new breath test.
Alcoguard Invalid test	Test failed - take a new breath test.
Alcoguard Blow longer	Blowing too short - blow for longer.
Alcoguard Blow softer	Blowing too hard - blow more gently.

Display text	Meaning/Action
Alcoguard Blow harder	Blowing too weak - blow harder.
Alcoguard wait Preheating	Heating not finished - wait for text <b>Alcoguard Blow 5 seconds</b> .

<sup>2</sup> An authorised Volvo workshop is recommended.

## Starting the engine

### Petrol and diesel engines



Ignition switch with remote control key extracted/inserted. and **START/STOP ENGINE** button.

#### **IMPORTANT**

Do not press in the remote control key incorrectly turned - Hold the end with the detachable key blade, see page 46.

1. Insert the remote control key in the ignition switch and press it in to its end position. Note that if the car is equipped with an alcolock then a breath test must first be approved before the engine can be started - see page 108.

2. Hold the clutch pedal fully depressed<sup>1</sup>. (For cars with automatic gearbox - Depress the brake pedal.)
3. Press the **START/STOP ENGINE** button and then release it.

The starter motor works until the engine starts or until its overheating protection triggers.

#### **IMPORTANT**

If the engine fails to start after 3 attempts - wait for 3 minutes before making a further attempt. Starting capacity increases if the battery is allowed to recover.

#### **WARNING**

Always remove the remote control key from the ignition switch when leaving the car, and make sure that the key position is **0** - in particular if there are children in the car. For information on how this works - see page 79.

#### **NOTE**

The idling speed can be noticeably higher than normal for certain engine types during cold starting. This is done in order that the emissions system can reach normal operating temperature as quickly as possible, which minimises exhaust emissions and protects the environment.

#### **Keyless drive\***

Follow steps 2–3 for starting petrol and diesel engines. For more information on Keyless drive - see page 50.

#### **NOTE**

A prerequisite for the car to start is that one of the car's remote control keys with the Keyless drive\* function is in the passenger compartment or cargo area.

#### **WARNING**

**Never** remove the remote control key from the car while driving or during towing.

#### **Stop the engine**

To switch off the engine:

<sup>1</sup> If the car is moving then it is enough to press the **START/STOP ENGINE** button to start the car.



## Starting the engine

- Press **START/STOP ENGINE** - the engine stops.
- If the car has an automatic gearbox and the gear selector is not in a position **P** or if the car is moving - Press twice or hold the **START/STOP ENGINE** button depressed until the engine stops.

### Steering lock

A mechanical noise can be perceived when the steering lock unlocks or locks.

- The steering lock unlocks when the remote control key is in the ignition switch<sup>2</sup> and the **START/STOP ENGINE** button is depressed.
- The steering lock locks when the driver's door is opened after the engine has been switched off.

### Key positions

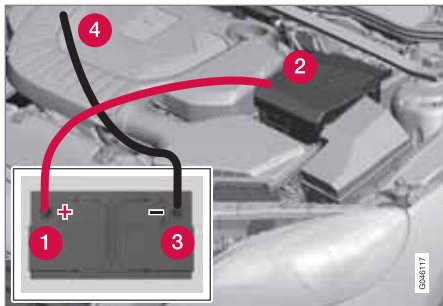
For information on the remote control key's different key positions - see page 79

<sup>2</sup> Cars with Keyless drive must have a remote control key inside the passenger compartment.



## Starting the engine – external battery

### Jump starting



If the battery is flat then the car can be started with current from another battery.

When jump starting the car, the following steps are recommended to avoid short circuits or other damage:

1. Insert the remote control key in key position 0, see page 79.
2. Check that the donor battery has a voltage of 12 V.
3. If the donor battery is installed in another car - switch off the donor car's engine and make sure that the two cars do not touch each other.

4. Connect one of the red jump lead's clamps to the donor battery's positive terminal (1).

### ! IMPORTANT

Connect the start cable carefully to avoid short circuits with other components in the engine compartment.

5. Open the clips on the front cover of the battery in your car and remove the cover.
6. Connect the red jump lead's other clamp onto the car's positive terminal (2).
7. Connect one of the black jump lead's clamps to the donor battery's negative terminal (3).
8. Connect the other clamp to a grounding point, e.g. right-hand engine mounting at the top, the outer screw head (4).
9. Check that the jump lead clamps are affixed securely so that there are no sparks during the starting procedure.
10. Start the engine of the "donor car" and allow it to run a few minutes at a speed slightly higher than idle approx. 1500 rpm.
11. Start the engine in the car with the discharged battery.

### ! IMPORTANT

Do not use the connections when attempting to start, as there is a risk of sparking.

12. Remove the jump leads in reverse order - first the black and then the red.
  - > Make sure that none of the black jump lead's clamps comes into contact with the battery's positive terminal or the clamp connected to the red jump lead!

### ! WARNING

- The battery can generate oxyhydrogen gas, which is highly explosive. A spark can be formed if a jump lead is connected incorrectly, and this can be enough for the battery to explode.
- The battery contains sulphuric acid, which can cause serious burns.
- If sulphuric acid comes into contact with eyes, skin or clothing, flush with large quantities of water. If acid splashes into the eyes - seek medical attention immediately.

For more information on the car's battery - see page 344.





## Gearboxes

### General

#### HSA

The HSA (Hill Start Assist) function is available for both manual and automatic transmissions.

The function means that the pedal pressure in the brake system remains for several seconds while the foot is moved from the brake pedal to the accelerator pedal before setting off or reversing uphill.

The temporary braking effect releases after several seconds or when the driver accelerates.

#### IMPORTANT

The operating temperature of the gearbox is checked in order to prevent damage to any of the drive system's components. In the event of a risk of overheating a warning symbol illuminates on the instrument panel combined with a text message - In which case, follow the recommendation given.

### Manual gearbox



*Gearing pattern.*

Look at the actual gearshift pattern imprinted on the gear lever.

- Depress the clutch pedal fully during each gear change.
- Take your foot off the clutch pedal between gear changes.

#### WARNING

Always apply the parking brake when parking on a slope - leaving the car in gear is not sufficient to hold the car in all situations.

### Reverse gear inhibitor

The reverse gear inhibitor hinders the possibility of mistakenly attempting to engage reverse gear during normal forward travel.

- Follow the gearing pattern printed on the gear lever and start from neutral position, **N** then **depress** the gear lever before moving it to **R** position.
- Engage reverse gear only when the car is stationary.

### Gear indicator\*

An essential detail in connection with environmental driving is to drive in the right gear and to change gear in plenty of time.

As an aid, certain variants have an indicator - GSI (Gear Shift Indicator) - that informs the driver when it is appropriate to engage the next higher or lower gear to achieve the lowest possible fuel consumption. However, taking into consideration characteristics such as performance and vibration-free running, it may be advantageous to change gear at a higher engine speed. The framed number indicates the current gear.

## Gearboxes



Instrument panel "Digital" with gear indicator.



Gear indicator for manual box. Only one marker is illuminated at a time - it is illuminated in the centre only during normal driving.

When gearing up/down as recommended, the upper one is illuminated at "+" or the lower at "-", marked red in the illustration.



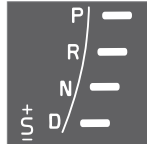
With instrument panel "Analogue", the gear positions and indicator arrows are displayed in the centre of the combined instrument panel.

### Automatic gearbox Geartronic\*



**D:** Automatic gear positions. **+/-:** Manual gear positions.

#### Gear positions



Automatic gear positions are indicated on the right of the instrument panel in this manner. (Only one marker is illuminated at a time - the one showing the current gear selector position.)

Symbol **S** for "Sport mode" is ORANGE when the mode is active.

#### P – Parking position

Select **P** when starting the engine or when the car is parked. The brake pedal must be depressed to disengage the gear selector from the **P** position.

The gearbox is mechanically blocked when the **P** position is engaged. Apply the parking brake as well, as a precaution - see page 131.

#### NOTE

The gear selector must be in **P** position to allow the car to be locked and alarmed.

#### IMPORTANT

The car must be stationary when position **P** is selected.

#### WARNING

Always apply the parking brake when parking on a slope - the automatic transmission in **P** is not sufficient to hold the car in all situations.

#### R – Reverse

The car must be stationary when position **R** is selected.

#### N – Neutral

No gear is engaged and the engine can be started. Apply the parking brake if the car is stationary with the gear selector in position **N**.

#### D – Drive

**D** is the normal driving position. Shifting up and down takes place automatically based on the level of acceleration and speed. The car must



## Gearboxes

be stationary when the gear selector is moved to position **D** from position **R**.

### Geartronic – Manual gear positions (+/-)

The driver can also change gear manually using the Geartronic automatic gearbox. The car engine-brakes when the accelerator pedal is released.

The manual gear position is reached by moving the lever to the side from position **D** to the end position at "+/-". The information display's symbol "+/-" changes colour from WHITE to orange and the digits **1 6** is displayed in a box, which corresponds to the gear which has just been selected.

- Move the lever forwards towards + (plus) to change up a gear and release the lever, which returns to its rest position between + and –.

or

- Pull the lever back towards – (minus) to change down a gear and release it.

The manual gearshift mode "+/-" can be selected at any time while driving.

Geartronic automatically shifts down if the driver allows the speed to decrease lower than a level suitable for the selected gear, in order to avoid jerking and stalling.

To return to automatic driving mode:

- Move the lever to the side to the end position at **D**.

### NOTE

If the gearbox has a Sport programme then the gearbox will only become manual after the lever has been moved forwards or backwards in its "+/-" position. The information display then shifts the indication from **S** to show which of the gears **1-6** is engaged.

### Geartronic - Sport mode (S)

The Sport programme provides sportier characteristics and allows higher engine speed for the gears. At the same time it responds more quickly to acceleration. During active driving, the use of a lower gear is prioritised, leading to a delayed upshift.

Sport mode is obtained by moving the lever to the side from **D** position to the end position at "+/-". The information display shifts the indication from **D** to **S**.

Sport mode can be selected at any time while driving.

### Geartronic - Winter mode

It can be easier to pull away on slippery roads if 3rd gear is engaged manually.

1. Depress the brake pedal and move the gear lever from the **D** position to the end

position at "+/-" - the instrument panel display shifts the indication from **D** to the figure **1**.

2. Scroll up to gear 3 by pushing the lever forward towards + (plus) twice - the display shifts the indication from **1** to **3**.
3. Release the brake and accelerate carefully.

The gearbox "winter mode" means that the car moves off with a lower engine speed and reduced engine power on the drive wheels.

### Kick-down

When the accelerator pedal is pressed all the way to the floor (beyond the position normally regarded as full acceleration) a lower gear is immediately engaged. This is known as kick-down.

If the accelerator is released from the kick-down position, the gearbox automatically changes up.

Kick-down is used when maximum acceleration is needed, such as for overtaking.

### Safety function

To prevent overrevving the engine, the gearbox control program has a protective downshift inhibitor which prevents the kick-down function.

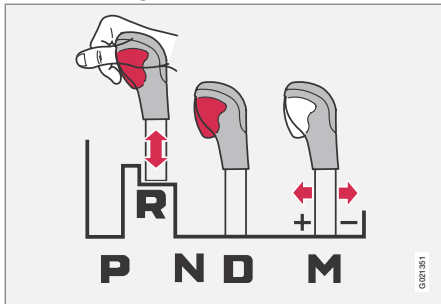
Geartronic does not permit downshifting/kick-down which would result in an engine speed

## Gearboxes

high enough to damage the engine. Nothing happens if the driver still tries to shift down in this way at high engine speed – the original gear remains engaged.

When kick-down is activated the car can change one or more gears at a time depending on engine speed. The car changes up when the engine reaches its maximum speed in order to prevent damage to the engine.

### Mechanical gear selector inhibitor



The gear selector can be moved forward and back freely between **N** and **D**. Other positions are locked with a latch that is released with the inhibitor button on the gear selector.

With the inhibitor button depressed the lever can be moved forwards or backwards between **P**, **R**, **N** and **D**.

### Automatic gear selector inhibitor

The automatic gearbox has special safety systems:

#### Parking position (P)

Stationary car with engine running:

Keep your foot on the brake pedal when moving the gear selector to another position.

#### Electric gear inhibitor – Shiftlock Parking position (P)

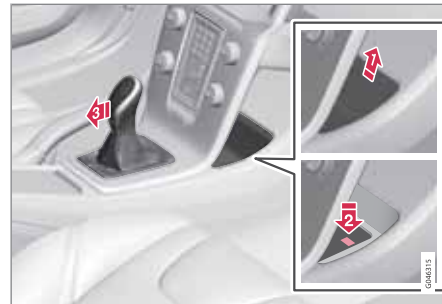
To be able to move the gear selector from **P** to other gear positions, the brake pedal must be depressed and the remote control key must be in position **II**, see page 79.

#### Shiftlock – Neutral (N)

If the gear selector is in the **N** position and the car has been stationary for at least 3 seconds (irrespective of whether the engine is running) then the gear selector is locked.

To be able to move the gear selector from **N** to other gear positions, the brake pedal must be depressed and the remote control key must be in position **II**, see page 79.

### Deactivate automatic gear selector inhibitor



If the car cannot be driven, e.g. due to a flat battery, the gear selector must be moved from the **P** position so that the car can be moved.

- 1 Lift the rubber mat in the compartment behind the centre console.
- 2 Press and release the yellow button in the console.
- 3 Move the gear selector from the **P** position.
- 4 Put the rubber mat back in place.

### Automatic gearbox Powershift\*



**D:** Automatic gear positions. +/-: Manual gear positions.

Powershift is an automatic gearbox that has double mechanical clutch discs in contrast to a conventional automatic gearbox. An automatic gearbox has a hydraulic torque converter instead that transfers power from engine to gearbox.

Powershift transmission operates in the same way and has similar controls and functions as the Geartronic automatic transmission, described in the previous section.

### Powershift or Geartronic?

In the event of uncertainty as to whether or not the car is equipped with Powershift transmission, this can be verified by checking the designation on the transmission's label under the bonnet - see page 366. The designation "MPS6" means that it is Powershift - transmission otherwise it is Geartronic automatic transmission.

### To bear in mind

The transmission's double clutch has overload protection that is activated if it becomes too hot, e.g. if the car is held stationary with the accelerator pedal on an uphill gradient for a long time.

Overheated transmission causes the car to shake and vibrate, and the warning symbol illuminates and the information display shows a message. The transmission can also overheat during slow driving in queues (10 km/h or slower) on an uphill gradient, or with a trailer hitched. The transmission cools down when the car is stationary, with foot brake depressed and the engine running at idling speed.

Overheating during slow driving in queues can be avoided by driving in stages:

- Stop the car and wait with your foot on the brake pedal until there is a moderate distance to the traffic ahead, drive forward a short distance, and then wait another moment with your foot on the brake pedal.

### IMPORTANT

Use the foot brake to hold the car stationary on an uphill gradient - do not hold the car with the accelerator pedal. The gearbox could then overheat.

For important information regarding Powershift transmission and towing - see page 305.

### Text message and action

In some situations the display may show a message at the same time as a symbol is illuminated.



## 03 Your driving environment

### Gearboxes

Symbol	Display	Driving characteristics	Action
	Transm. overheat brake to hold	Difficulty in maintaining even speed at constant engine speed.	Transmission overheated. Keep the car stationary using the foot brake. <sup>A</sup>
	Transm. overheat park safely	Significant pulling in the car's traction.	Transmission overheated. Park the car immediately in a safe manner. <sup>A</sup>
	Transm. cooling let engine run	No drive due to overheated gearbox.	Transmission overheated. For fastest cooling: Run the engine at idling speed with the gear lever in the <b>N</b> or <b>P</b> position until the message clears.

<sup>A</sup> For fastest cooling: run the engine at idling speed with the gear lever in the **N** or **P** position, until the message clears.

The table shows three steps with an increased degree of seriousness should the transmission become too hot. In parallel with the display text the driver is also advised that the car's electronics are temporarily changing the driving characteristics. Follow the instructions on the information display where appropriate.

#### NOTE

The examples in the table are no indication of the car being defective, but show that a safety function has been activated with a view to preventing damage to any of the car's components.

#### WARNING

If a warning symbol combined with the text **Transm. overheat park safely** is ignored then the heat in the gearbox may become so high that the power transmission between engine and gearbox is temporarily halted in order to prevent the clutch from malfunctioning - the car then loses drive and is stationary until gearbox temperature has cooled to an acceptable level.

For more possible display messages with their respective proposals for solutions concerning automatic transmission, see page 200.

A display text clears automatically after the action has been carried out or after one press on the indicator stalk **OK** button.



## Eco Guide &amp; Power\*

### General

These meters help the driver to drive the car while maintaining the best possible economy.

To display or close a display of these functions, see page 70.

The car also stores statistics of journeys made, which can be viewed in the form of a block diagram, see page 232.

### EcoGuide

This meter provides an indication of how economically the car is being driven.



- 1 Instantaneous value
- 2 Average value

### Instantaneous value

The instantaneous value is displayed here - the higher the result on the scale, the better.

The instantaneous value is calculated on the basis of speed, engine speed, engine power utilised plus use of the foot brake.

Optimum speed (50-80 km/h) and low revs are encouraged. The pointers fall under acceleration and braking.

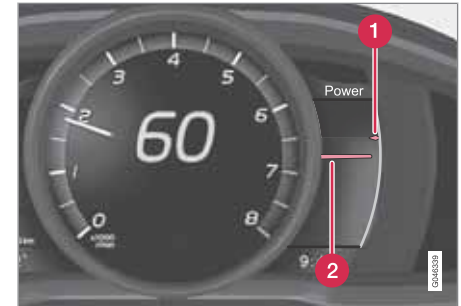
Very low instantaneous values illuminate the red zone on the meter, which means poor economy and hence should be avoided.

### Average value

The average value slowly follows the instantaneous value and describes how the car has been driven of late. The higher the pointers on the scale, the better the economy achieved by the driver.

### Power

This meter shows how much power is being taken from the engine and how much power is available.



- 1 Available engine power
- 2 Engine power utilised

### Available power

The smaller, upper pointer shows the available engine power<sup>1</sup>. The higher the result on the scale, the more power is available in the current gear.

### Utilised power

The larger, lower pointer shows the engine power utilised<sup>1</sup>. The higher the result on the

<sup>1</sup> Power is dependent on engine speed.



## 03 Your driving environment

### Eco Guide & Power\*

scale, the more power is being taken from the engine.

A large gap between the two pointers indicates a large power reserve.





## Start/Stop \*

### Quieter and cleaner



Environmental care is one of Volvo Car Corporation's core values and it influences all of our operations. This target-orientation has resulted in the DRIVe vehicle series whose concept consists of an interaction between several separate energy-saving functions, all with the common purpose of reducing fuel consumption, which in turn contributes to reduced exhaust emissions.

### General information on Start/Stop



*The engine is switched off - it becomes quieter and cleaner...*

Some engine and gearbox combinations come fitted with a Start and Stop function which engages in the event of e.g. stationary traffic or waiting at traffic lights - the engine is then switched off temporarily and restarts automatically when the journey is due to continue.

The Start/Stop function gives the driver the opportunity for a more active environmentally conscious way of driving the car by means of being able to allow the engine to stop automatically, whenever appropriate.

#### Manual or Automatic

Note that there are differences in the Start/Stop function depending on whether the gearbox is manual or automatic.

### Function and operation



The Start/Stop function is activated automatically when the engine is started with the key. The driver is alerted to the function by means of this symbol on the instrument panel illuminating briefly, the display text **Auto Start-Stop ON** is shown and the green lamp for the On/Off button illuminates.

All of the car's normal systems such as lighting, radio, etc. work as normal even with an engine that has stopped automatically, except that some equipment may have the function temporarily reduced, e.g. the climate control system's fan speed or extremely high volume on the audio system.

#### Auto-stopping the engine

In order that the engine should stop automatically the car must be completely stationary:



## Start/Stop \*

Conditions	M/A <sup>A</sup>
Declutch, set the gear lever in neutral position and release the clutch pedal - the engine is switched off.	M
Stop the car with the foot brake and then keep your foot on the pedal - the engine stops automatically.	A

A M = Manual gearbox, A = Automatic gearbox.



The **AUTO START** symbol on the information display illuminates as verification and reminder that the engine has stopped automatically.

### Auto-starting the engine

Conditions	M/A <sup>A</sup>
With the gear lever in neutral position: Depress the clutch pedal or press the accelerator pedal - the engine starts. Engage a suitable gear and continue the journey.	M
The following option is also available on a downhill gradient: Release the foot brake and let the car move off - the engine starts automatically when the speed exceeds normal walking pace.	M
Release the foot pressure on the foot brake - the engine starts automatically and the journey can continue.	A

A M = Manual gearbox, A = Automatic gearbox.

### Start assistance HSA

The foot brake can also be released on an uphill gradient to start the engine automatically - the HSA function means that the car does not roll backwards.

HSA (Hill Start Assist) means that the pressure in the brake system remains temporarily available while the driver moves his/her foot from the brake pedal to the accelerator pedal for

driving off with the engine having stopped automatically. The temporary braking effect releases after a couple of seconds or when the driver accelerates.

There is more information available on HSA on page 115.

### Deactivating the Start/Stop function



In certain situations, it may be advisable to temporarily switch off the automatic Start/Stop function - this is carried out by pressing this button once, at which point the button's lamp goes out.

Disengaged Start/Stop function is indicated by the information display's symbol going out and the message **Auto Start-Stop OFF** being displayed for a few seconds. The lamp in the button extinguishes at the same time.

The Start/Stop function is disengaged until it is reactivated with the button or until the next time the engine is started with the key.

### Limitations

#### The engine does not auto-stop

Even if the Start/Stop function is activated, the engine does not stop automatically if:



## Start/Stop \*

Conditions	M/A <sup>A</sup>
the car has not achieved approx. 5 km/h (= fast walking pace) first after a key start or the last auto-stop.	M + A
the driver has opened the seat-belt's buckle.	M + A
the capacity of the battery is below the minimum permissible level.	M + A
the engine does not have normal operating temperature.	M + A
outside temperature is below freezing point or above approx. 30 °C.	M + A
the environment in the passenger compartment differs from the preset values <sup>B</sup> - indicated by the ventilation fan running at a high speed.	M + A
the car is reversed.	M + A
battery temperature is below freezing point or above approx. 55 °C.	M + A

Conditions	M/A <sup>A</sup>
the driver makes greater steering wheel movements.	M + A
the exhaust system's particulate filter is full - the temporarily dis-engaged Start/Stop function is reactivated once an automatic cleaning cycle has been performed (see page 293).	M + A
the road is very steep.	M + A
a trailer is connected electrically to the car's electrical system.	M + A
the atmospheric air pressure is less than equivalent to 1500-2400 metres above sea level - the current air pressure varies with the prevailing weather conditions.	M + A
adaptive cruise control Queue Assist is activated.	A

Conditions	M/A <sup>A</sup>
the driver's door has been opened with the gear selector in <b>D</b> position.	A
the gear selector is moved out of the <b>D</b> position to <b>S</b> position <sup>C</sup> or "+/-".	A

A M = Manual gearbox, A = Automatic gearbox.

B Car with ECC.

C Sport mode.

### The engine auto-starts

An engine that has stopped automatically may restart in some cases without the driver having decided that the journey should continue. In the following cases the engine also starts automatically if the driver has not depressed the clutch pedal (manual gearbox) or takes his/her foot off the brake pedal (automatic gearbox):

Conditions	M/A <sup>A</sup>
Misting forms on the windows.	M + A
The environment in the passenger compartment deviates from the preset values <sup>B</sup> .	M + A



# 03 Your driving environment

## Start/Stop \*

Conditions	M/A <sup>A</sup>
The outside temperature falls below freezing point or exceeds approx. 30 °C.	M + A
There is a temporarily high current take-off or battery capacity drops below the lowest permissible level.	M + A
Repeated pumping of the brake pedal.	M + A
The car starts to roll - faster than the equivalent normal walking pace.	M
The driver's belt lock is opened with the gear selector in <b>D</b> or <b>N</b> position.	A
Steering wheel movements.	A
The gear selector is moved from the <b>D</b> position to "+/-" or <b>R</b> .	A
The driver's door is opened with the gear selector in <b>D</b> position.	A

A M = Manual gearbox, A = Automatic gearbox.

### WARNING

Do not open the bonnet when the engine has stopped automatically - the engine may suddenly start automatically. First switch off the engine as normal using the **START/STOP ENGINE** button before opening the bonnet.

### The engine does not auto-start

In the following cases the engine does not auto-start after having auto-stopped:

Conditions	M/A <sup>A</sup>
A gear is engaged without declutching - a display text prompts the driver to set the gear lever in neutral position in order to enable automatic starting.	M
The driver is unrestrained, the gear selector is in <b>P</b> position and the driver's door is open - a normal engine start must take place.	A

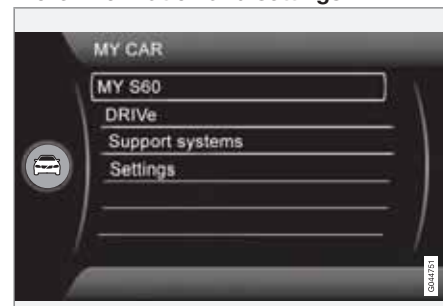
A M = Manual gearbox, A = Automatic gearbox.

### Involuntary engine stop with manual gearbox

In the event that a start-up fails and the engine stops, proceed as follows:

1. Depress the clutch pedal again - the engine starts automatically.
2. In certain cases the gear lever must be set in neutral position. The information display then shows the text **Put gear in neutral**

### More information and settings




The **MY CAR** menu system in the car includes instructions which explain parts of the **DRIVE** concept along with several possible settings and options - see page 204.






## Start/Stop \*

**Text message**

 In combination with this indicator lamp the Start/Stop function may dis-

play text messages on the information display for certain situations. For some of them there is a recommended action that should be per-

formed. The following table shows some examples.

Symbol	Message	Info/Action	M/A <sup>A</sup>
	Auto Start-Stop ON	Illuminates for a few seconds after Start/Stop has been activated.	M + A
	Auto Start-Stop OFF	Illuminates for a few seconds after Start/Stop has been switched off.	M + A
	Auto Start-Stop Service required	Start/Stop is not operational. Contact a workshop - an authorised Volvo workshop is recommended.	M + A
	Engine management system	An automatic function check is carried out.	M + A
<b>AUTO-STOP</b>	Engine in Auto Start	The engine is ready to start automatically - waiting for the brake or clutch pedal to be depressed.	M
	Press Start button	The engine will not start automatically - start the engine as normal with the <b>START/STOP ENGINE</b> button.	M
	Depress clutch pedal to start	The engine is ready to auto-start - waiting for the clutch pedal to be depressed.	M
	Depress brake pedal to start	The engine is ready to auto-start - waiting for the brake pedal to be depressed.	M
	Press brake and clutch to start	The engine is ready to auto-start - waiting for the brake or clutch pedal to be depressed.	M



## 03 Your driving environment

### Start/Stop \*

Symbol	Message	Info/Action	M/A <sup>A</sup>
	Put gear in neutral	Gear is engaged without declutching - disengage and set the gear lever in neutral position.	M
<b>AUTO-STOP</b>	Engine in Auto Start	The engine is ready to start automatically - waiting for the brake pedal to be released.	A
	Select P or N to start	Start/Stop has been deactivated - move the gear selector to <b>N</b> or <b>P</b> position and start the engine as normal with the <b>START/STOP ENGINE</b> button.	A
	Press Start button	The engine will not start automatically - start the engine as normal with the <b>START/STOP ENGINE</b> button and the gear selector in <b>P</b> or <b>N</b> .	A

<sup>A</sup> M = Manual gearbox, A = Automatic gearbox.

If a message does not go out following completion of the action then a workshop should be contacted - an authorised Volvo workshop is recommended.



## Foot brake

### General

The car is equipped with two brake circuits. If one brake circuit is damaged then this will mean that the brakes engage at a deeper level and harder pressure on the pedal is needed to produce the normal braking effect.

The driver's brake pedal pressure is assisted by a brake servo.



### WARNING

The brake servo only works when the engine is running.

If the brake is used when the engine is switched off then the pedal will feel stiff and more force must be used to brake the car.

In very hilly terrain or when driving with a heavy load the brakes can be relieved by using engine braking. Engine braking is most efficiently used if the same gear is used downhill as up.

For more general information on heavy loads on the car, see page 372.

### Anti-lock braking system

The car is equipped with ABS (Anti-lock Braking System) which prevents the wheels from locking during braking. This means the ability to steer is maintained and it is easier to swerve to avoid a hazard for example. Vibration

may be felt in the brake pedal when this is engaged and this is normal.

A short test of the ABS system is made automatically after the engine has been started when the driver releases the brake pedal. A further automatic test of the ABS system may be made when the car reaches 10 km/h. The test may be experienced as pulses in the brake pedal.

### Emergency brake lights and automatic hazard warning flashers

Emergency brake lights are activated to alert vehicles behind about sudden braking. The function means that the brake light flashes instead of - as in normal braking - shining with a constant glow.

Emergency brake lights are activated at speeds above 50 km/h if the ABS system is working and/or in the event of sudden braking. Once the car's speed has been braked to below 10 km/h, the brake light stops flashing and returns to a normal steady shine - hazard warning flashers are activated at the same time, which flash until the driver accelerates the car to at least 20 km/h or they are disabled with their button, see page 92.

### Cleaning the brake discs

Coatings of dirt and water on the brake discs may result in delayed brake function. This delay is minimised by cleaning the brake linings.

Manual cleaning is advisable with wet road surfaces, prior to long-stay parking and after the car has been washed. Carry this out by braking gently during a short period while en route.

### Emergency Brake Assistance

Emergency Brake Assistance EBA (Emergency Brake Assist) helps to increase brake force and so reduce braking distance. EBA detects the driver's braking style and increases brake force as necessary. The brake force can be reinforced up to the level when the ABS system is engaged. The EBA function is interrupted when the pressure on the brake pedal is reduced.



### NOTE

When EBA is activated the brake pedal lowers slightly more than usual, depress (hold) the brake pedal as long as necessary. If the brake pedal is released then all braking ceases.

### Maintenance

To keep the car as safe and reliable as possible, follow the Volvo service intervals as speci-



# 03 Your driving environment

## Foot brake

fied in the Service and Warranty Booklet, see page 328.

### ! IMPORTANT

The wear on the brake system's components must be checked regularly.

Contact a workshop for information about the procedure or engage a workshop to carry out the inspection - an authorised Volvo workshop is recommended.

### Symbols in the combined instrument panel

Symbol	Specification
	Constant glow – Check the brake fluid level. If the level is low, fill with brake fluid and check for the cause of the brake fluid loss.
	Constant glow for 2 seconds when the engine is started – There was a fault in the brake system's ABS function when the engine was last running.

**! WARNING**

If and illuminate at the same time, there may be a fault in the brake system.

If the level in the brake fluid reservoir is normal at this stage, drive carefully to the nearest workshop and have the brake system checked - an authorised Volvo workshop is recommended.

If the brake fluid is below the **MIN** level in the brake fluid reservoir, do not drive further before topping up the brake fluid.

The reason for the loss of brake fluid must be investigated.





## Parking brake

### General

#### WARNING

Always apply the parking brake when parking on a slope - leaving the car in gear, or in **P** if it has automatic transmission, is not sufficient to hold the car in all situations.




The instrument panel's warning symbol.

The lever is located between the front seats.

#### Applying the parking brake

1. Press the foot brake pedal down firmly.
2. Pull the lever firmly.
  - > The instrument panel's warning symbol lights up.

#### NOTE

 - The warning symbol in the combined instrument panel comes on irrespective of whether the parking brake is applied lightly or hard.

3. Release the foot brake pedal and make sure that the car is at a standstill position.
4. If the vehicle moves then the parking brake lever must be applied at least a little more firmly.
  - When parking the vehicle, always engage 1st gear (for manual gearbox) or put the gear selector in position **P** (for automatic gearbox).

#### Parking on a hill

If the car is parked facing uphill:

- Turn the wheels **away from** the kerb.

If the car is parked facing downhill:

- Turn the wheels **towards** the kerb.

#### Disengaging the parking brake

1. Press the foot brake pedal down firmly.
2. Pull the lever up slightly, press the button, release the lever and release the button.
  - > The instrument panel's warning symbol goes out.

If the driver forgets to release the parking brake – in addition to the illuminated warning lamp – a pinging sound combined with a message in the instrument panel alerts the driver of this when the car's speed exceeds 10 km/h.



## HomeLink® \*

### General



HomeLink®<sup>1</sup> is a programmable remote control which is integrated in the rearview mirror and can remotely control up to three different devices (e.g. garage door opener, alarm system, outdoor lighting and indoor lighting etc.) and in doing so replace their remote controls. In addition to the three programmable buttons, there is also an indicator lamp in the panel.

HomeLink® cannot be activated when the car is locked from the outside. For more information on HomeLink®, visit: [www.homelink.com](http://www.homelink.com) or ring 00 8000 466 354 65 (or premium rate phone number, +49 6838 907 277).

### WARNING

- If HomeLink® is used to operate a garage door or gate, make sure that there is no-one in the vicinity of the door or gate while it is moving.
- The car should remain outside the garage while a garage door opener is being programmed.
- Do not use HomeLink® for any garage door that does not have safety stop and safety reverse.

Save the original remote controls for future programming (e.g. when changing to another car or for use in another vehicle). It is also recommended that the programming for the buttons is deleted if the car is sold. See the section "Resetting the HomeLink® buttons" on page 133.

### Programming HomeLink®

#### NOTE

In certain vehicles the ignition must be switched on or in "accessory position" before HomeLink® can be programmed or used. If possible, fit new batteries in the remote control that shall be replaced by HomeLink® for faster programming and improved transmission of the radio signal. The HomeLink® buttons should be reset before programming. When this has been done HomeLink® is set in "learn mode" and ready for programming.

1. Press and hold the desired HomeLink® button until the indicator lamp flashes yellow. This indicates that the button is ready for programming.
2. Aim the original remote control towards the HomeLink® button to be programmed and hold it 5-30 cm from the button. Do not obstruct the indicator lamp on HomeLink®.
3. Press and hold the button on the original remote control. Do not release the button until the indicator lamp has changed from a yellow light to either red or green. If the indicator lamp is red – make a new attempt

<sup>1</sup> HomeLink and the HomeLink house symbol are registered trademarks of Johnson Controls, Inc.

\* Option/accessory, for more information, see Introduction.



to program the remote control, holding the original remote control at a different distance from the HomeLink® button. A green light indicates that programming was successful.

4. **Depress the HomeLink® button being programmed, hold it depressed for 5 seconds and then release it.** Repeat if necessary until the garage door is activated. If the door is not activated, press the programmed HomeLink® button and hold it depressed and check the indicator lamp.
  - > **Steady green light:** The indicator lamp illuminates with a constant glow when the button is kept depressed, this indicates that the **programming is complete.** The garage door, gate or similar should now be activated when the programmed HomeLink® button is depressed.

**Flashing green light:** The indicator lamp flashes while the button is held depressed. In which case, continue with the programming steps 5-7 in order to complete the programming of a device with rolling code (usually a garage door opener).

5. Locate the "programming button<sup>2</sup>" on the receiver for the garage door for example, normally located close to the antenna's bracket on the receiver.
6. Depress and release the receiver's "programming button". The button flashes for approx. 30 seconds and the next step must be carried out within this period.
7. While the receiver's "programming button" is still flashing, press the button on HomeLink® being programmed and hold it depressed for approx. 3 seconds and then release it. Repeat the press/hold/release sequence up to 3 times to conclude the programming.

### Operation

When HomeLink® is fully programmed it can be used in place of the separate original remote controls.

Press and hold the programmed button<sup>3</sup> until the garage door, alarm system, etc. is activated (may take several seconds). Naturally the original remote controls can still be used in parallel with HomeLink® if required.



### NOTE

If the ignition is switched off, HomeLink® will work for 30 minutes after the driver's door has been opened.

If programming problems persist, contact HomeLink® on: [www.homelink.com](http://www.homelink.com) or ring 00 8000 466 354 65 (or premium rate phone number +49 6838 907 277).

### Resetting the HomeLink® buttons

It is only possible to reset all of the HomeLink® buttons at the same time, not each button individually. However, individual buttons can be reprogrammed, see the following section "Programming individual buttons".

1. Press and hold the two outer buttons on HomeLink®. Do not release them until the indicator lamp has changed from a yellow light to either red or green.
2. Release the buttons.
  - > HomeLink® is now set in so-called "learn mode" and is ready to be reprogrammed, see section "Programming HomeLink®" on page 132.

<sup>2</sup> Button designation and colour vary depending on manufacturer.

<sup>3</sup> The indicator lamp remains lit while the button is held depressed.



### HomeLink® \*

#### Programming individual buttons

To reprogram an individual HomeLink® button, proceed as follows:

1. Depress the required button and **do not release**.
2. When the indicator lamp on HomeLink® starts to flash yellow (after about 10 seconds), release the button and start with step 2 of section "Programming HomeLink®" on page 132.

For more information or to leave comments about HomeLink®, visit: [www.homelink.com](http://www.homelink.com) or ring 00 8000 466 354 65 (or premium rate phone number +49 6838 907 277).



DSTC – Stability and traction control system.....	138
Road sign information - RSI* .....	141
Speed limiter* .....	143
Cruise control* .....	145
Adaptive cruise control* .....	147
Distance Warning* .....	158
City Safety™ .....	161
Collision Warning with Auto Brake & Pedestrian Detection* .....	167
Driver Alert System* .....	175
Driver Alert System - DAC* .....	176
Driver Alert System - Lane Keeping Aid* .....	180
Park assist syst* .....	184
Park assist camera* .....	187
Park Assist Pilot - PAP* .....	190
BLIS and CTA* .....	194



G000000

# 04

## DRIVER SUPPORT





## DSTC – Stability and traction control system

### General information on DSTC

The stability and traction control system, DSTC (Dynamic Stability & Traction Control) helps the driver to avoid skidding and improves the car's traction.

The activation of the system during braking may be noticed as a throbbing sound. The car may accelerate slower than expected when the accelerator pedal is depressed.

### WARNING

The stability and traction control system is a supplementary function - it cannot handle all situations in all road conditions.

The driver always bears responsibility for ensuring that the vehicle is driven safely and that applicable road traffic rules and regulations are followed.

### Active Yaw Control

The function limits the driving and brake force of the wheels individually in order to stabilise the car.

### Spin Control

The function reduces engine power if the drive wheels slip against the underlying surface in order to maintain stability and traction.

### Traction control system

The function is active at low speed and transfers power from the driving wheel that is spinning to the one that is not.

### Engine drag control - EDC

EDC (Engine Drag Control) prevents involuntary wheel locking, e.g. after shifting down or engine braking when driving in low gears on slippery road surfaces.

Involuntary wheel locking while driving can, amongst other things, impair the driver's ability to steer the car.

### Corner Traction Control – CTC

CTC compensates for understeer and allows higher than normal acceleration in a bend without wheelspin on the inner wheel, e.g. on an arcing motorway entrance road to quickly reach the prevailing traffic speed.

### Driver Steering Recommendation – DSR

DSR (Driver Steering Recommendation) helps the driver steer the car in the right direction when there is reduced traction or when the ABS system engages.

The primary role of the DSR function is to help the driver steer in the right direction when the car is skidding.

DSR engages by applying slight torque to the steering wheel in the direction in which the car

should be steered to maintain/achieve maximum possible traction and stabilise the car.

### Trailer Stability Assist\* - TSA

The function serves to stabilise the car and trailer combination if it begins to snake, see page 299.

### NOTE

The function is deactivated if the driver selects **Sport** mode.

### Operation

#### Selection of level - Sport mode

The DSTC system is always activated - it cannot be deactivated.

However, the driver can select the **Sport** mode, which allows for a more active driving experience. In **Sport** mode the system detects whether the accelerator pedal, steering wheel movements and cornering are more active than in normal driving and then allows controlled skidding with the rear section up to a certain level before it intervenes and stabilises the car.

If the driver stops a controlled skid by releasing the accelerator pedal then the DSTC system intervenes and stabilises the car.



**DSTC – Stability and traction control system**

With **Sport** mode, maximum traction is obtained if the car has become stuck, or when driving on a loose surface - e.g. sand or deep snow.

Proceed as follows to select **Sport** mode:

1. Press the centre console button **MY CAR** and search in the display screen's menu system and locate **My V40 → DSTC**. (For information on the menu system, see page 203).
  - > The system then allows a more sporty driving style.
2. Uncheck the box and back out of the menu system with **EXIT**.
  - The **Sport** mode is active until the driver deselects it or until the engine is switched off - after the engine is started the next time the DSTC system is back in its normal mode again.

**Symbols and messages in the display**

Symbol <sup>A</sup>	Message	Specification
	DSTC Temporarily OFF	DSTC system temporarily reduced due to excessive brake disc temperature. - The function is reactivated automatically when the brakes have cooled.
	DSTC Service required	DSTC system disengaged. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Stop the car in a safe place, switch off the engine and start it again.</li> <li>• Visit a workshop if the message remains - an authorised Volvo workshop is recommended.</li> </ul>
 and 	"Message"	There is a message on the speedometer's display - Read it!
	Constant glow for 2 seconds.	System check when the engine is started.



### DSTC – Stability and traction control system

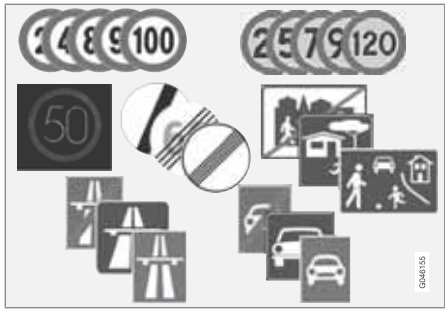
Symbol <sup>A</sup>	Message	Specification
	Flashing light.	DSTC system is being activated.
		<b>Sport</b> mode is activated.

<sup>A</sup> The symbols are schematic.



## Road sign information - RSI\*

### General information on RSI



Examples of readable speed related<sup>1</sup> signs.

The Road sign information function (RSI – Road Sign Information) helps the driver to remember which road signs the car has passed through information on - among other things - the current speed, the start/end of a motorway or road, and when overtaking is prohibited.

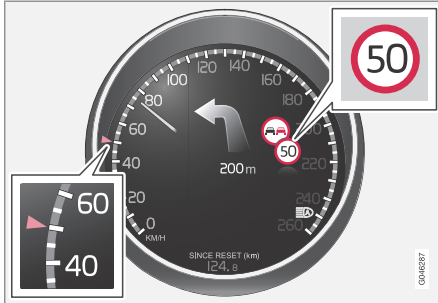
If a sign for both a motorway/road for motorised traffic and a sign showing the maximum permitted speed are passed, RSI decides to show the sign symbol for maximum permitted speed.

**⚠ WARNING**

RSI does not work in all situations but is designed merely as a supplementary aid.

The driver always bears ultimate responsibility for ensuring that the vehicle is driven safely and that applicable road traffic rules and regulations are followed.

### Operation



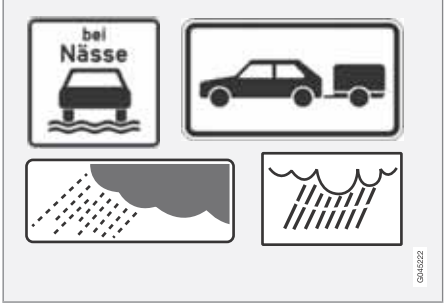
Recorded speed information.

When RSI has recorded a road sign with an imposed speed, the sign is displayed as a symbol on the instrument panel.



Together with the symbol for the current speed limit, a sign showing that overtaking is prohibited may also be displayed where appropriate.

### Additional signs



Examples of additional signs<sup>1</sup>.

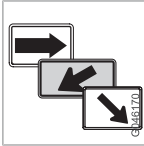
Sometimes different speed limits are signposted for the same road - an additional sign then indicates the circumstances under which the different speeds apply. The road section may be particularly susceptible to accidents in rain and/or fog, for example.

An additional sign relating to rain is displayed only if the windscreen wipers are in use.

<sup>1</sup> Road signs which are displayed in the instrument panel are dependent on the market - the illustration shows examples only.



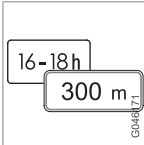
## Road sign information - RSI\*



The speed applicable on an exit is indicated by means of an additional sign containing an arrow. The arrow is displayed under the symbol showing the speed.

Speed signs linked to this type of additional sign are displayed only if the driver is using the direction indicator.

### Limited distance or time of day



Some speeds are applicable only after a specific distance or at a certain time of day. The driver's attention is drawn to the situation by means of an empty frame under the symbol showing the speed.

### Setting in MY CAR



Options in MY CAR.

The instrument panel's speed symbol display can be disabled. To deactivate the RSI function:

- Uncheck the option in **MY CAR Settings → Car settings → Road Sign Information** and go back out of the menu by pressing **EXIT**, see page 205.

### Speed warning

The driver can opt to receive a warning (Speed Alert) when the applicable speed limit is exceeded by 5 km/h or more. This warning is given by the symbol showing the applicable maximum speed temporarily flashing when this speed is exceeded.

To activate speed warning:

- Check speed warning in **MY CAR Settings → Car settings → Speed alert** and go back out of the menu by pressing **EXIT**, see page 205.

### Limitations

The RSI function's camera sensor is limited - just like the human eye. Find out more about this on page 171.

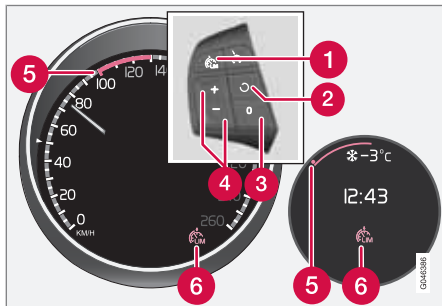
Signs which indirectly provide information on a prevailing speed limit, e.g. name signs for towns/districts, are not recorded by the RSI function.

Here are some other examples of what can disrupt the function:

- Faded signs
- Signs positioned on bends
- Rotated or damaged signs
- Concealed or poorly positioned signs
- Signs completely or partly covered with frost, snow and/or dirt.

**Speed limiter\*****General information on the speed limiter**

A (Speed Limiter) can be regarded as a reverse cruise control - the driver regulates the speed using the accelerator pedal but is prevented from accidentally exceeding a pre-selected/set speed by the speed limiter.

**Operation**

Steering wheel keypad and instrument panel (Digital or Analogue).

- 1 Speed limiter - On/Off.
- 2 Standby mode ceases and the stored speed is resumed.
- 3 Standby mode
- 4 Activate and adjust the max. speed.

- 5 Selected speed
- 6 Speed limiter active

**Switch on and activate**

When the speed limiter is active, its symbol (6) is displayed in combination with a mark (5) by the set maximum speed in the display.

Selection and storage of the highest possible speed in the memory can be made both during a journey and while stationary.

**While driving**

1. Press the steering wheel button to switch on the speed limiter.
  - > The symbol (6) for the speed limiter is illuminated on the instrument panel display.
2. When the car is moving at the desired highest possible speed: Press one of the steering wheel buttons or until the instrument panel display shows a mark (5) next to the desired maximum speed.
  - > The speed limiter is then active and the selected max. speed is stored in the memory.

**When stationary**

1. Press the steering wheel button to switch on the speed limiter.

2. Scroll with the button until the instrument panel display shows a mark (5) next to the desired maximum speed.
  - > The speed limiter is then active and the selected max. speed is stored in the memory.

**Changing the speed**

To change the stored speed:

- Adjust with short presses on or - every press gives +/- 5 km/h. The last presses made are stored in the memory.

To adjust +/- 1 km/h:

- Hold down the button and release it when the instrument panel's display shows a mark (5) next to the desired maximum speed.


**Temporary deactivation - standby mode**

To temporarily deactivate the speed limiter and set it in standby mode:

- Press **[0]**.
  - > The display mark (5) changes colour from GREEN to WHITE (Digital) or from WHITE to GREY (Analogue) and the driver can temporarily exceed the set maximum speed.



### Speed limiter\*

The speed limiter is reactivated with one press on . The mark (5) in the display then changes colour from WHITE to GREEN (Digital) or GREY to WHITE (Analogue) and the car's maximum speed is limited again.

#### Temporary deactivation with the accelerator pedal

The speed limiter can also be set in standby mode with the accelerator pedal, e.g. for rapidly accelerating the car out of a situation:

- Depress the accelerator pedal fully.
  - > The display shows the stored maximum speed with a coloured mark (5) and the driver can temporarily exceed the set maximum speed – the display mark (5) changes colour from GREEN to WHITE (Digital) or WHITE to GREY (Analogue) during that time.



The speed limiter is automatically reactivated after the accelerator pedal is released and the car's speed is slowed down to below the selected/stored maximum speed - the mark (5) in the display changes colour from WHITE to GREEN (Digital) or GREY to WHITE (Analogue) and the car's maximum speed is again limited.

#### Alarm for speed exceeded

On steep roads the engine braking effect may be inadequate and the selected maximum speed exceeded. The driver is alerted about this with an acoustic signal.



The signal is active until the driver has slowed to below the selected maximum speed.

#### NOTE

The alarm is only activated after 5 seconds if the speed has been exceeded by at least 3 km/h provided that none of the buttons  or  has been depressed during the last half minute.

#### Deactivate

To deactivate the speed limiter:

- Press the steering wheel button 
  - > The display's speed limiter symbol (6) and the set speed mark (5) are cleared. The selected and stored speed are thus deleted from the memory and cannot be resumed with the  button.

The driver can then use the accelerator pedal to choose a speed without limitation.



## Cruise control\*

## General information on CC

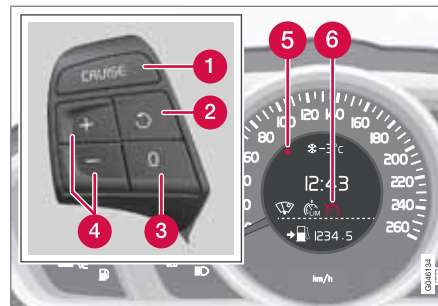
The cruise control (CC – Cruise Control) helps the driver maintain an even speed, resulting in more relaxing driving on motorways and long, straight roads with regular traffic flows.

**WARNING**

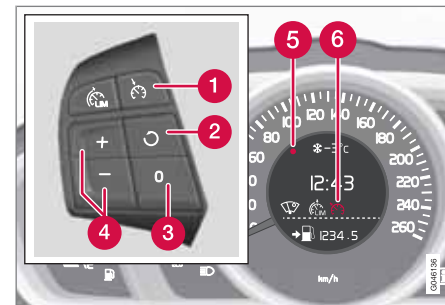
The driver must always be observant with regard to the traffic conditions and intervene when the cruise control is not maintaining a suitable speed and/or suitable distance.

The driver always bears ultimate responsibility for ensuring that the vehicle is driven safely.

## Operation



The steering wheel buttons and display in cars **without** speed limiter<sup>1</sup>.



The steering wheel buttons and display in cars **with** speed limiter<sup>1</sup>.

- 1 Cruise control - On/Off.
- 2 Standby mode ceases and the stored speed is resumed.
- 3 Standby mode
- 4 Activate and adjust the speed.
- 5 Selected speed (GREY = Standby mode).
- 6 Cruise control active - WHITE symbol (GREY = Standby mode).

## Activating and setting the speed

To enable cruise control:

- Press the steering wheel button

<sup>1</sup> A Volvo dealer has updated information about what applies in each respective market.



## Cruise control\*

- > Symbol (6) in the display changes from GREY to WHITE and shows that the cruise control is in standby mode.

To activate cruise control:

- At the required speed - press the steering wheel button or .
- > The current speed is stored in the memory and the display dot (5) comes on at the selected speed.

### NOTE

Cruise Control cannot be enabled at speeds below 30 km/h.

### Changing the speed

To change the stored speed:

- Adjust with short presses on or - every press gives +/- 5 km/h. The last presses made are stored in the memory.

To adjust +/- 1 km/h:

- Hold down the button and release it at the required speed.

A temporary increase in speed with the accelerator pedal, e.g. during overtaking, does not affect the cruise control setting - the car returns to the set speed when the accelerator pedal is released.

### NOTE

If any of the Cruise Control buttons are held depressed for several minutes then it is blocked and deactivated. To be able to reactivate Cruise Control, the car must be stopped and the engine restarted.

### Temporary deactivation - standby mode

To temporarily disengage cruise control and set it in standby mode:

- Press .
- > The display dot (5) and symbol (6) change colour from WHITE to GREY.

### Automatic standby mode

Cruise control is temporarily disengaged and set in standby mode if:

- wheels lose traction
- the foot brake is used
- speed falls below approx. 30 km/h
- the clutch pedal is depressed
- the gear selector is moved to neutral position (automatic gearbox)
- the driver maintains a speed higher than the set speed for longer than 1 minute.

The driver must then regulate the speed.

### Resume set speed

To reactivate the cruise control from standby mode:

- Press the steering wheel button .
- > The display dot (5) and symbol (6) change colour from GREY to WHITE and the speed is then set to the last speed stored.

### NOTE

A marked speed increase may occur once the speed has been resumed by selecting .

### Deactivate

The cruise control is switched off with the steering wheel button (1) or by switching off the engine - the set speed is deleted from the memory and cannot be resumed with the button.



**Adaptive cruise control\*****General information on ACC**

The adaptive cruise control (ACC – Adaptive Cruise Control) helps the driver maintain a safe distance from the vehicle ahead. Adaptive cruise control provides a more relaxing driving experience on long journeys on motorways and long straight main roads in smooth traffic flows.

The driver sets the desired speed and time interval to the car in front. When the radar detector detects a slower vehicle in front of the car, the speed is automatically adapted to that. When the road is clear again the car returns to the selected speed.

If the adaptive cruise control is switched off or set to the standby mode and the car comes too close to a vehicle in front, then the driver is warned instead by Distance Warning (see page 158) about the short distance.

**WARNING**

The driver must always be observant with regard to the traffic conditions and intervene when the adaptive cruise control is not maintaining a suitable speed or suitable distance.

The adaptive cruise control cannot handle all traffic, weather and road conditions.

Read the whole of this section for information on the limitations of the adaptive cruise control. The driver must be familiar with this information before using the adaptive cruise control.

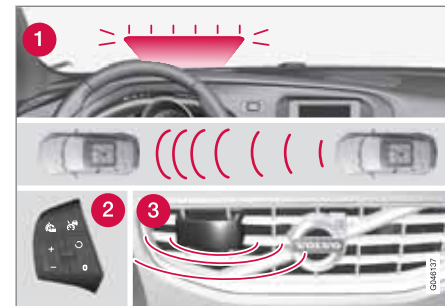
The driver always bears responsibility for maintaining the correct distance and speed, even when the adaptive cruise control is being used.

**IMPORTANT**

Maintenance of adaptive cruise control components must only be performed at a workshop - an authorised Volvo workshop is recommended.

**Automatic gearbox**

Cars with automatic gearbox have enhanced functionality with the adaptive cruise control's Queue Assistant, see page 152.

**Function**

Function overview<sup>1</sup>.

- ❶ Warning lamp - braking by driver required
- ❷ Steering wheel keypad
- ❸ Radar sensor

Adaptive cruise control consists of a cruise control system and a coordinated spacing system.

<sup>1</sup> NOTE: The illustration is schematic - details may differ depending on car model.



## 04 Driver support

### Adaptive cruise control\*

#### WARNING

Adaptive cruise control is not a collision avoidance system. The driver must intervene if the system does not detect a vehicle in front.

The adaptive cruise control does not brake for humans or animals, and not for small vehicles such as bicycles and motorcycles. Nor for oncoming, slow or stationary vehicles and objects.

Do not use the adaptive cruise control, for example, in city traffic, in dense traffic, at junctions, on slippery surfaces, with a lot of water or slush on the road, in heavy rain/snow, in poor visibility, on winding roads or on slip roads.

The distance to the vehicle ahead is mainly measured by a radar sensor. Cruise control regulates the speed with acceleration and braking. It is normal for the brakes to emit a low sound when they are being used by the adaptive cruise control.

#### WARNING

The brake pedal moves when Cruise Control brakes. Do not rest your foot beneath the brake pedal as it may become trapped.

The adaptive cruise control aims to follow the vehicle ahead in the same lane at a time interval set by the driver. If the radar sensor cannot see any vehicle in front then the car will instead maintain the cruise control's set speed. This also happens if the speed of the vehicle in front exceeds the cruise control's set speed.

The adaptive cruise control aims to control the speed in a smooth way. In situations that demand sudden braking the driver must brake himself/herself. This applies with large differences in speed, or if the vehicle in front brakes heavily. Due to limitations in the radar sensor, braking may come unexpectedly or not at all, see page 154.

The adaptive cruise control can be activated to follow another vehicle at speeds from 30 km/h<sup>2</sup> up to 200 km/h. If the speed falls below 30 km/h or if the engine speed becomes too low, the cruise control is set in standby mode at which automatic braking ceases - the driver must then take over himself/herself to maintain a safe distance to the vehicle ahead.

#### Warning lamp - braking by driver required

Adaptive cruise control has a braking capacity that is equivalent to more than 40% of the car's braking capacity.

If the car needs to be braked more heavily than cruise control capacity and the driver does not brake, then the cruise control uses the collision warning system's warning lamp and warning sound (see figure on page 167) to alert the driver that immediate intervention is required.

#### NOTE

The warning lamp may be difficult to see in strong sunlight or when wearing sunglasses.

#### WARNING

Cruise Control warns only of vehicles which the radar sensor has detected. Hence the warning may not be given, or it may be given with a certain delay. Do not wait for a warning without braking when so required.

#### Steep roads and/or heavy load

Bear in mind that the adaptive cruise control is primarily intended for use when driving on level road surfaces. It may have difficulty in keeping the correct distance from the vehicle ahead when driving on steep downhill slopes, with a heavy load or with a trailer - in which case, be extra attentive and ready to slow down.

<sup>2</sup> Queue Assistant (in cars with automatic gearbox) can operate in the range of 0-200 km/h, see page 152.

\* Option/accessory, for more information, see Introduction.

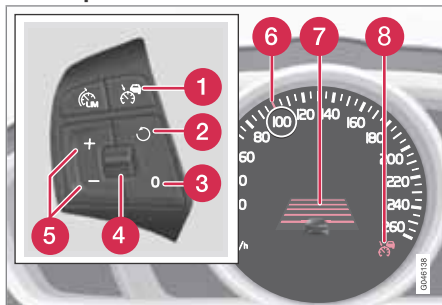


## Adaptive cruise control\*

## Operation

The design of the steering wheel keypad differs depending on whether the car is equipped with the speed limiter<sup>3</sup>.

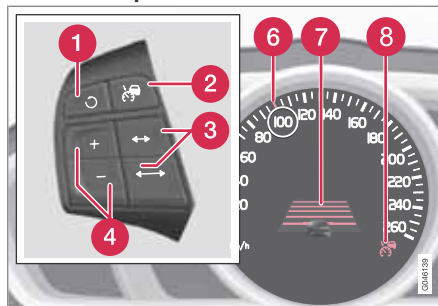
## WITH speed limiter



- 1 Cruise control - On/Off.
- 2 Standby mode ceases and the stored speed is resumed.
- 3 Standby mode
- 4 Time interval - Increase/decrease.
- 5 Activate and adjust the speed.
- 6 Green marking at stored speed (WHITE = standby mode).

- 7 Time distance
- 8 ACC is active at the GREEN symbol (WHITE = standby mode).

## WITHOUT speed limiter



- 1 Standby mode ceases and the stored speed is resumed.
- 2 Cruise control - On/Off or Standby mode.
- 3 Time interval - Increase/decrease.
- 4 Activate and adjust the speed.
- 5 (Not used)
- 6 Green marking at stored speed (WHITE = standby mode).

- 7 Time distance
- 8 ACC is active at the GREEN symbol (WHITE = standby mode).

## Activating and setting the speed

To enable cruise control:

- Press the steering wheel button - a similar WHITE symbol comes on in the display (6) which shows the cruise control is in standby mode.

To activate cruise control:

- At the required speed - press the steering wheel button or .
- > The current speed is stored in the memory, the display shows a "magnifying glass" around the selected speed for a second or so and its marking (6) changes from WHITE to GREEN.



When this display symbol changes colour from WHITE to GREEN, the cruise control is active and the car maintains the stored speed.

<sup>3</sup> A Volvo dealer has updated information about what applies in each respective market.



## Adaptive cruise control\*



Only when the display shows a picture of another vehicle in front is the **distance** to the vehicle in front controlled by the cruise control.



At the same time a speed range is marked:

- the higher speed with GREEN marking (6) is the pre-programmed speed

• the lower speed is the speed of the car in front.

### Changing the speed

To change the stored speed:

- Adjust with short presses on or - every press gives +/- 5 km/h. The last presses made are stored in the memory.

If speed is increased using the accelerator pedal prior to pressing the , then it is the car's current speed when the button is pressed that is stored in the cruise control.

To adjust +/- 1 km/h:

- Hold down the button and release it at the required speed.

### NOTE

If any of the Cruise Control buttons are held depressed for several minutes then it is blocked and deactivated. To be able to reactivate Cruise Control, the car must be stopped and the engine restarted.

In certain situations, cruise control cannot be activated. Then the display shows **Cruise control Unavailable**, see page 156.

### Set time interval



Different time intervals to the vehicle in front can be selected and shown in the display as 1-5 horizontal lines - the more lines the longer the time interval. One line corresponds to

approximately 1 second to the vehicle in front, 5 lines approximately 3 seconds.

To set/change the time distance:

- Turn the steering wheel button set's thumbwheel (or use the / buttons for cars without Speed limiters).

At low speed, when the distances are short, the adaptive cruise control increases the time interval slightly.

The adaptive cruise control allows the time interval to vary noticeably in certain situations in order to allow the car to follow the vehicle in front smoothly and comfortably.

Note that a short time interval only allows the driver a short time to react and take action if any unforeseen traffic problem should arise.

The same symbol is also shown when Distance Warning is activated, see page 158.

### NOTE

Only use the time intervals permitted by local traffic regulations.

If Cruise Control does not appear to react when activated, this may be because the time distance to the car in front is preventing an increase in speed.

The higher the speed the longer the calculated distance in metres for a given time interval.

### Temporary deactivation - standby mode

To temporarily disengage cruise control and set it in standby mode:

- Press the steering wheel button



This display symbol and stored speed marking then changes colour from GREEN to WHITE.

**Adaptive cruise control\*****Keypad without Speed limiter\***

To temporarily disengage cruise control and set it in standby mode:

- Press the steering wheel button .

**Standby mode due to driver intervention**

Cruise control is temporarily disengaged and set automatically in standby mode if:

- the foot brake is used
- the clutch pedal is depressed for longer than 1 minute<sup>4</sup>
- the gear selector is moved to **N** position (automatic gearbox)
- the driver maintains a speed higher than the set speed for longer than 1 minute.

The driver must then regulate the speed.

A temporary increase in speed with the accelerator pedal, e.g. during overtaking, does not affect the cruise control setting - the car returns to the last stored speed when the accelerator pedal is released.

**Automatic standby mode**

The adaptive cruise control is dependent on other systems, such as DSTC (see page 138).


If any of these systems stop working then cruise control is automatically deactivated.

In the event of automatic deactivation a signal will sound and the message **Cruise control Cancelled** is shown in the display. The driver must then intervene and adapt the speed and distance to the vehicle ahead.


An automatic deactivation can be due to:

- the driver opens the door
- the driver takes off his seatbelt
- engine speed is too low/high
- speed falls below 30 km/h<sup>5</sup>
- wheels lose traction
- brake temperature is high
- the radar sensor is covered e.g. by wet snow or heavy rain (radar waves blocked).

**Resume set speed**

Cruise control in standby mode is re-activated with one press on the steering wheel button  - the speed is then set to the last stored speed.

**NOTE**

A marked speed increase may occur once the speed has been resumed by selecting .

**Overtaking another vehicle**


When the car is following another vehicle and the driver indicates an impending overtake with the direction indicator<sup>6</sup>, the cruise control helps to briefly accelerate the car towards the vehicle in front.

This function is active at speeds above 70 km/h.

**WARNING**

Be aware that this function can be activated in more situations other than during overtaking, e.g. when a direction indicator is used to indicate a change of lane or exit to another road - the car will then accelerate briefly.

**Deactivate****Keypad with Speed limiter**

The adaptive cruise control is disengaged with a **short** press of the steering wheel button .


<sup>4</sup> Disengaging and selecting a higher or lower gear does not involve standby mode.

<sup>5</sup> Does not apply to a car with Queue Assistant - it manages right down to stationary.



<sup>6</sup> On left flash only in left-hand-drive car, or right flash in right-hand-drive car.



## Adaptive cruise control\*




The set speed is cleared and cannot be resumed with the  button.

### Keypad without Speed limiter

A **short** press on the steering wheel button  sets cruise control to standby mode. With a further short press the cruise control is deactivated. The set speed is cleared and cannot be resumed with the  button.

### Switch from ACC to CC


A button press can be used to deactivate the adaptive element (spacing system) in the cruise control, the car then only following the set speed.

- **Hold down** the steering wheel button  - the display's symbol changes from  to .
- > This activates the standard cruise control CC (Cruise Control), see page 145.

### WARNING

The car no longer brakes automatically after switching from ACC to CC - it merely follows the set speed.

### Switch from CC back to ACC

Deactivate CC with 1-2 presses on  as described under the heading "Switch off – Key-

pad without speed limiter". ACC will be activated the next time the system is switched on.

### Queue Assistant

In cars with automatic gearbox the adaptive cruise control is supplemented with the Queue Assist function (also referred to as "Queue Assist").

Queue Assistant has the following functions:

- Extended speed range - also below 30 km/h and at standstill
- Change of target
- Automatic braking ceases when stationary

Note that the lowest programmable speed for the cruise control is 30 km/h - even though the cruise control is capable of following another vehicle down to a standstill, a lower speed **cannot** be selected.

### Extended speed range

### NOTE


In order to activate the cruise control the driver's door must be closed and the driver must be wearing the seatbelt.

With an automatic gearbox, the cruise control can follow another vehicle within the range 0-200 km/h.

### NOTE

Activation of the cruise control below 30 km/h requires a vehicle in front within a reasonable distance.

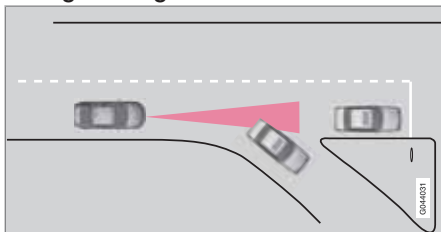
For shorter stops in connection with inching in slow traffic or at traffic lights driving is automatically resumed if the stops do not exceed about 3 seconds - if it takes longer before the car in front starts moving again then the cruise control is set in standby mode with automatic braking. The driver must then re-activate the cruise control in one of the following ways:

- Press the steering wheel button .
- or
- Depress the accelerator pedal.
- > The cruise control will then resume following the vehicle in front.

**Adaptive cruise control\*****NOTE**

Queue Assist can keep the car stationary for a maximum of 4 minutes - then the brakes release.

See more information under the header below, "Cessation of automatic braking when stationary".

**Change of target**

*If the target vehicle in front suddenly turns then there may be stationary traffic in front.*

When the cruise control is following another vehicle at speeds **below** 30 km/h and changes target from a moving to a stationary vehicle, the cruise control will slow down for the stationary vehicle.

**WARNING**

When the cruise control is following another vehicle at speeds **in excess of** 30 km/h and the target is changed from a moving vehicle to a stationary vehicle, the cruise control will ignore the stationary vehicle and instead select the stored speed.

- The driver must intervene him/herself and brake.

**Automatic standby mode with change of target**

Cruise control is disengaged and set in standby mode:

- when the speed is below 5 km/h and cruise control is not sure whether the target object is a stationary vehicle or some other object, e.g. a speed bump.
- when the speed is below 5 km/h and the vehicle in front turns off so the cruise control no longer has a vehicle to follow.

**Termination of automatic braking at a standstill**

In the following situations, Queue Assist stops automatic braking at a standstill:

- the driver opens the door
- the driver takes off his seatbelt

This means that the brakes are released and the car will start to roll - the driver must therefore intervene and brake the car himself in order to maintain its position.

**IMPORTANT**

Queue Assist can keep the car stationary for a maximum of 4 minutes - then the brakes release.

The driver's attention is drawn to this over several stages, with increasing intensity:

1. Acoustic alarm (pinging) and text message.
2. A warning lamp in the windscreen also starts to flash.
3. "Stabbing" braking occurs.

Queue Assist releases the foot brake and is set to standby mode in these situations as well:

- the driver puts his/her foot on the brake pedal
- the gear selector is moved to **P**, **N** or **R** position
- the driver sets the cruise control in standby mode
- the parking brake is applied.



### Adaptive cruise control\*

#### The radar sensor and its limitations

The radar sensor is used - apart from by Adaptive cruise control - by the following functions as well:

- Collision Warning with Auto Brake, see page 167
- Distance Warning, see page 158.

The function of the radar sensor is to detect cars or larger vehicles in the same direction, in the same lane.

Modification of the radar sensor could result in it being illegal to use.

#### WARNING

The driver must always be observant with regard to the traffic conditions and intervene when the adaptive cruise control is not maintaining a suitable speed or suitable distance.

The adaptive cruise control cannot handle all traffic, weather and road conditions.

Read the whole of this section for information on the limitations of the adaptive cruise control. The driver must be familiar with this information before using the adaptive cruise control.

The driver always bears responsibility for maintaining the correct distance and speed, even when the adaptive cruise control is being used.

#### WARNING

Accessories or other objects such as auxiliary lamps must not be fitted in front of the grille.

#### WARNING

Adaptive cruise control is not a collision avoidance system. The driver must intervene if the system does not detect a vehicle in front.

The adaptive cruise control does not brake for humans or animals, and not for small vehicles such as bicycles and motorcycles. Nor for oncoming, slow or stationary vehicles and objects.

Do not use the adaptive cruise control, for example, in city traffic, in dense traffic, at junctions, on slippery surfaces, with a lot of water or slush on the road, in heavy rain/snow, in poor visibility, on winding roads or on slip roads.

The capacity of the radar sensor to detect vehicles in front is reduced significantly:

- if the radar sensor becomes blocked and cannot detect other vehicles e.g. in heavy rain or slush, or if other objects have collected in front of the radar sensor.

#### NOTE

Keep the area in front of the radar sensor clean - see the "Maintenance" page 170

- if the speed of vehicles in front is significantly different from your own speed.

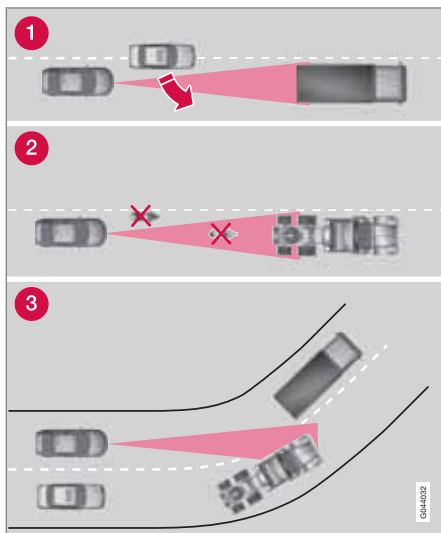




## Adaptive cruise control\*

### Examples where the cruise control does not work optimally

The radar sensor has a limited field of vision. In some situations another vehicle is not detected, or the detection is made later than expected.



ACC field of vision.

- 1 Sometimes the radar sensor is late at detecting vehicles at close distances, e.g. a vehicle that drives in between the car and vehicles in front.
- 2 Small vehicles, such as motorcycles, or vehicles not driving in the centre of the lane can remain undetected.
- 3 In bends the radar sensor may detect the wrong vehicle or lose a detected vehicle from view.

### Fault tracing and action

If the display shows the message **Radar blocked** See manual this means that the radar signals from the radar sensor are blocked and that vehicles in front of the car could not be detected.

In turn this means that - apart from Adaptive Cruise Control - Distance Warning and Collision Warning with Auto Brake functions are not operating either.

The following table presents possible causes for a message being shown along with the appropriate action.



## 04 Driver support

### Adaptive cruise control\*

Cause	Action
The radar surface in the grille is dirty or covered with ice or snow.	Clean the radar surface in the grille from dirt, ice and snow.
Heavy rain or snow blocking the radar signals.	No action. Sometimes the radar does not work during heavy rain or snowfall.
Water or snow from the road surface swirls up and blocks the radar signals.	No action. Sometimes the radar does not work on a very wet or snowy road surface.
The radar surface has been cleaned but the message remains.	Wait. It could take several minutes for the radar to sense that it is no longer blocked.




### Symbols and messages in the display

Symbol <sup>A</sup>	Message	Specification
	The symbol is WHITE	Adaptive cruise control is set to standby mode.
	The symbol is GREEN	The car maintains the stored speed.
		Standard cruise control is selected manually.
	<b>DSTC Normal to enable Cruise</b>	The adaptive cruise control cannot be activated until <b>DSTC</b> has been set to Normal position - see page 138.
	<b>Cruise control Cancelled</b>	The adaptive cruise control has been deactivated - the driver has to regulate the speed himself.

\* Option/accessory, for more information, see Introduction.



### Adaptive cruise control\*

Symbol <sup>A</sup>	Message	Specification
	<b>Cruise control Unavailable</b>	<p>The adaptive cruise control cannot be activated.</p> <p>This could be due to:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• brake temperature is high</li> <li>• the radar sensor is blocked by e.g. wet snow or rain.</li> </ul>
	<b>Radar blocked See manual</b>	<p>The adaptive cruise control is temporarily disengaged.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• The radar sensor is blocked and cannot detect other vehicles. For example, in the event of heavy rain or if slush has collected in front of the radar sensor.</li> </ul> <p>The driver can then choose to switch to ordinary Cruise control (CC), see page 152 - a display text provides information on appropriate alternatives.</p> <p>Read about the limitations of the radar sensor, see page 154.</p>
	<b>Cruise control Service required</b>	<p>The adaptive cruise control is disengaged.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Contact a workshop - an authorised Volvo workshop is recommended.</li> </ul>
	<p><b>Press Brake To hold</b> + acoustic alarm + warning light in windscreen + "pulling" brakes</p> <p>(Only with Queue Assistant)</p>	<p>The car is at a standstill and the adaptive cruise control will release the foot brake, which is why the car may start rolling soon.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• The driver must brake himself/herself. The message remains and the alarm sounds until the driver depresses the brake pedal or uses the accelerator pedal.</li> </ul>
	<p><b>Below 30 km/h Only following</b></p> <p>(Only with Queue Assistant)</p>	<p>Shown with attempts to activate the adaptive cruise control at speeds below 30 km/h without a vehicle in front within the activation distance (approx. 30 metres).</p>

<sup>A</sup> The symbols are schematic.

04



## 04 Driver support

### Distance Warning\*

#### General

Distance Warning (Distance Alert) is a function that informs the driver about the time interval to vehicles in front.

Distance Warning is active at speeds above 30 km/h and only reacts to vehicles driving in front of the car, in the same direction. No distance information is provided for oncoming, slow or stationary vehicles.



Orange warning lamp<sup>1</sup>.

An orange warning lamp in the windscreen illuminates with a constant glow if the distance to the vehicle in front is shorter than the set time interval.

#### NOTE

Distance warning is deactivated during the time the adaptive cruise control is active.

#### WARNING

Distance warning only reacts if the distance to the vehicle ahead is shorter than the pre-set value - the speed of the driver's vehicle is not affected.

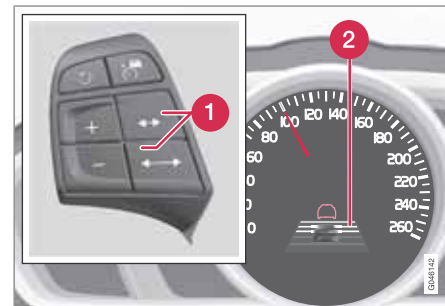
#### Operation



Press the button in the centre console to switch the function on or off. The function is switched on if one lamp is illuminated in the button.

Some combinations of the selected equipment leave no vacant space for a button in the centre console - in which case the function is handled by the car's menu system **MY CAR** under **Settings** → **Car settings** → **Distance Alert**. For a description of the menu system - see page 203.

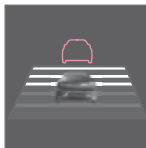
#### Set time interval



Controls and display for time interval.

- ① Time interval - Increase/decrease.
- ② Time interval - On (during adjustment).

<sup>1</sup> NOTE: The illustration is schematic - details may vary depending on car model.

**Distance Warning\***

Different time intervals to the vehicle in front can be selected and shown in the display as 1-5 horizontal lines - the more lines the longer the time interval. One line corresponds to

approximately 1 second to the vehicle in front, 5 lines approximately 3 seconds.

The same symbol is also shown when adaptive cruise control is activated.

**NOTE**

The higher the speed the longer the calculated distance in metres for a given time interval.

The set time interval is also used by the Adaptive Cruise Control function, see page 147.

Only use the time interval permitted by the local traffic regulations.

**Limitations**

The function uses the same radar sensor as adaptive cruise control and the collision warning system. For more information on the radar sensor and its limitations, see page 154.

**NOTE**

Strong sunlight, reflections or strong variations in light intensity, as well as wearing sunglasses, could mean that the warning light in the windscreen cannot be seen.

Poor weather or winding roads could affect the radar sensor's capacity to detect vehicles in front.



The size of other vehicles could also affect detection capacity, e.g. motorcycles. This could mean that the warning lamp illuminates at a shorter distance than the setting or that the warning is temporarily absent.

Extremely high speeds can also cause the lamp to illuminate at a shorter distance than that set due to limitations in sensor range.



## Distance Warning\*

### Symbols and messages in the display

Symbol <sup>A</sup>	Message	Specification
	Radar blocked See manual	Distance Warning temporarily disengaged. The radar sensor is blocked and cannot detect other vehicles, e.g. in the event of heavy rain or if slush has collected in front of the radar sensor. Read about the limitations of the radar sensor, see page 154.
	Collision warn. Service required	Distance Warning and Collision Warning with Auto Brake fully or partially disengaged. Visit a workshop if the message remains - an authorised Volvo workshop is recommended.

<sup>A</sup> The symbols are schematic.



## City Safety™

**General**

City Safety™ is a function for helping the driver to avoid a collision when driving in queues, amongst other things, when changes in the traffic ahead, combined with a lapse in attention, could lead to an incident.

The function is active at speeds under 50 km/h and it helps the driver by automatically braking the car in the event of imminent risk of collision with vehicles in front, should the driver not react in time by braking and/or steering away.

City Safety™ is activated in situations where the driver should have started braking earlier, which is why it cannot help the driver in every situation.

City Safety™ is designed to be activated as late as possible in order to avoid unnecessary intervention.

City Safety™ must not be used as an excuse for the driver to change his/her driving style. If the driver solely relies on City Safety™ to do the braking, there will be a collision sooner or later.

The driver or passengers normally only notice City Safety™ if a situation arises where the car is extremely close to being in a collision.

If the car is also equipped with a Collision Warning function with Auto Brake\*, these two systems complement each other. For more information on Collision Warning function with Auto Brake, see page 167.

**! IMPORTANT**

Maintenance and replacement of City Safety™ components must only be performed by a workshop - an authorised Volvo workshop is recommended.

**! WARNING**

City Safety™ does not engage in all driving situations or traffic, weather or road conditions.

City Safety™ does not react to vehicles driving in a different direction from the car, to small vehicles, motorcycles and bicycles or to humans and animals.

City Safety™ can prevent collision at a speed difference of less than 15 km/h - at a higher speed difference, it is only possible to reduce collision speed. In order to obtain full brake function, the driver must depress the brake pedal.

Never wait for City Safety™ to engage. The driver always bears responsibility for maintaining the proper distance and speed.

**Function**

Laser sensor transmitter and receiver window<sup>1</sup>.

City Safety™ detects the traffic in front of the car with a laser sensor fitted in the top edge of the windscreen. If there is an imminent risk of collision, City Safety™ will automatically brake the car, which may be experienced as sudden braking.

If the speed difference is 4-15 km/h in relation to the vehicle in front then City Safety™ can completely prevent a collision.

City Safety™ activates a short, sharp braking and stops the car in normal circumstances, just behind the vehicle in front. For most drivers this is well outside normal driving style and may be experienced as being uncomfortable.

<sup>1</sup> NOTE: The illustration is schematic - details may vary depending on car model.



## 04 Driver support

### City Safety™

If the difference in speed between the vehicles is greater than 15 km/h then City Safety™ may not prevent the collision on its own. To obtain full brake force, the driver must depress the brake pedal. This could then make it possible to prevent a collision, even at speed differences above 15 km/h.

When the function is activated and brakes, the instrument panel display shows a message to the effect that the function is/has been active.

#### NOTE

When City Safety™ brakes, the brake lights come on.

### Operation

#### NOTE

The City Safety™ function is always enabled after the engine has been started via key position **I** and **II** (see page 79 on key positions).

### On and Off

In certain situations, it may be advisable to disable City Safety™, e.g. where leafy branches could sweep over the bonnet and/or windscreen.

After starting the engine City Safety™ can be deactivated as follows:

- Using **MY CAR** on the centre console display screen with its menu system, search and locate **Settings** → **Car settings** → **Driver support systems** → **City Safety**.

Select the **Off** option. For more information on the menu system **MY CAR**, see page 203.

However, the function will be enabled the next time the engine is started, regardless of whether the system was enabled or disabled when the engine was switched off.

#### WARNING

The laser sensor emits laser light even when City Safety™ is disabled manually.

To enable City Safety™ again:

- Follow the same procedure as for disabling, but select the **On** option.

### Limitations

The sensor in City Safety™ is designed to detect cars and other large vehicles in front of the car irrespective of whether it is day or night.

The sensor has limitations. It does not work as well – or does not work at all – in e.g. heavy snowfall or rain, dense fog, dust storms or blizzards. Mist, dirt, ice or snow on the windscreen may disrupt the function.

Low-hanging objects, e.g. a flag/pennant for projecting load, or accessories such as auxiliary lamps and bull bars that are higher than the bonnet limit the function.

The laser light from the sensor in City Safety™ measures how the light is reflected. The sensor cannot detect objects with low reflection capacity. The rear sections of the vehicle generally reflect the light sufficiently thanks to the number plate and rear light reflectors.

On slippery road surfaces the braking distance is extended, which may reduce the capacity of City Safety™ to avoid a collision. In such situations the ABS and DSTC systems will provide best possible braking force with maintained stability.

When your own car is reversing, City Safety™ is temporarily deactivated.

City Safety™ is not activated at low speeds – under 4 km/h, which is why the system does not intervene in situations where a vehicle in front is being approached very slowly, e.g. when parking.

Driver commands are always prioritised, which is why City Safety™ does not intervene in situations where the driver is steering or accelerating in a clear manner, even if a collision is unavoidable.





When City Safety™ has prevented a collision with a stationary object the car remains stationary for a maximum of 1.5 seconds. If the car is braked for a vehicle in front that is moving, then speed is reduced to the same speed as that maintained by the vehicle in front.

On a car with manual gearbox the engine stops when City Safety™ has stopped the car, unless the driver manages to depress the clutch pedal beforehand.

**NOTE**

- Keep the windscreen surface in front of the laser sensor free from ice, snow and dirt (see the illustration for sensor location, page 161).
- Do not affix or mount anything on the windscreen in front of the laser sensor
- Remove ice and snow from the bonnet - snow and ice must not exceed a height of 5 cm.

**Fault tracing and action**

If the message **Windscreen Sensors blocked** is shown on the instrument panel display, it indicates that the laser sensor is blocked and cannot detect vehicles in front of the car. This means that City Safety™ is not operational.

The **Windscreen Sensors blocked** message is not shown for all situations in which the laser sensor is blocked. The driver must therefore be diligent about keeping the windscreen and area in front of the laser sensor clean.

The following table presents possible causes for the message being shown, along with suggestions for appropriate action.

Cause	Action
The windscreen surface in front of the laser sensor is dirty or covered with ice or snow.	Clean the windscreen surface in front of the sensor from dirt, ice and snow.
The laser sensor field of vision is blocked.	Remove the blocking object.

**IMPORTANT**

If there are cracks, scratches or stone chips in the windscreen in front of either of the laser sensor's "windows" and they cover a surface of approx. 0.5 x 3.0 mm (or larger), then a workshop must be contacted for repair or replacement of the windscreen (see the illustration for sensor location, page 161) - an authorised Volvo workshop is recommended.

Failure to take action may result in reduced performance for City Safety™.

To avoid the risk of reducing City Safety™ performance the following also applies:

- Before replacing a windscreen, contact an authorised Volvo workshop to verify that the correct windscreen is ordered and fitted. Using the wrong windscreen may result in the City Safety function failing to operate or operating incorrectly.
- The same type or Volvo-approved windscreen wipers must be fitted during replacement.

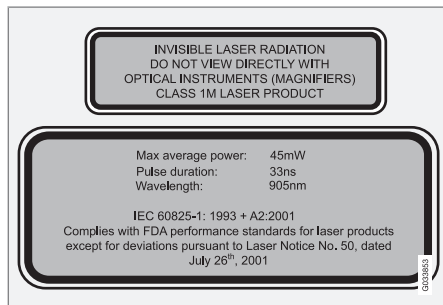


## City Safety™

### Laser sensor

The City Safety™ function includes a sensor which transmits laser light. Contact a qualified workshop in the event of a fault or if the laser sensor needs servicing - an authorised Volvo workshop is recommended. It is absolutely essential to follow the prescribed instructions when handling the laser sensor.

The following two labels are affixed directly on the laser sensor unit:



The upper label in the figure describes the laser beam's classification:

- Laser radiation - Do not look into the laser beam with optical instruments - Class 1M laser product.

The lower label in the figure describes the physical data of the laser beam:

- IEC 60825-1:1993 + A2:2001. Complies with FDA (U.S. Food Administration) standards for laser product design with the exception of deviations in accordance with "Laser Notice No. 50" from 26 July 2001.

### Radiation data for the laser sensor

The following table specifies the laser sensor's physical data.

Maximum pulse energy	2.64 $\mu$ J
Maximum average output	45 mW
Pulse duration	33 ns
Divergence (horizontal x vertical)	28° x 12°



### WARNING

If any of these instructions are not followed then there is a risk of eye injury!

- Never look into the laser sensor (which emits spreading invisible laser radiation) at a distance of 100 mm or closer with magnifying optics such as a magnifying glass, microscope, lens or similar optical instruments.
- Testing, repair, removal, adjustment and/or replacement of the laser sensor's spare parts must only be carried out by a qualified workshop - we recommend an authorised Volvo workshop.
- To avoid exposure to harmful radiation, do not carry out any readjustments or maintenance other than those specified here.
- The repairer must follow specially drawn up workshop information for the laser sensor.
- Do not remove the laser sensor (this includes removing the lenses). A removed laser sensor does not fulfil laser class 3B as per standard IEC 60825-1. Laser class 3B is not eye-safe and therefore entails a risk of injury.



- The laser sensor's connector must be unplugged before removal from the windscreen.
- The laser sensor must be fitted onto the windscreen before the sensor's connector is plugged in.
- The laser sensor transmits laser light when the remote control key is in position **II** and also with the engine switched off (see page 79 on key positions).







### Symbols and messages in the display

In conjunction with automatic braking by the City Safety™ system, one or more symbols may illuminate on the instrument panel and a message may appear on its display.

A text message can be acknowledged by briefly pressing the **OK** button on the direction indicator stalk.



### City Safety™

Symbol <sup>A</sup>	Message	Meaning/Action
 	Auto braking by City Safety	City Safety™ is braking or has automatically braked.
 	Windscreen Sensors blocked	The laser sensor is temporarily non-operational because something is blocking it. <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Remove the object blocking the sensor and/or clean the windscreen in front of the sensor. Read about the limitations of the laser sensor, see page 162.</li></ul>
 	City Safety Service required	City Safety™ is not operational. <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Visit a workshop if the message remains - an authorised Volvo workshop is recommended.</li></ul>

<sup>A</sup> The symbols are schematic.



## Collision Warning with Auto Brake & Pedestrian Detection\*

### General

"Collision Warning with Auto Brake & Pedestrian Detection" is an aid to assist the driver when there is a risk of colliding with a pedestrian or vehicle in front that is stationary or moving in the same direction.

Collision Warning with Auto Brake & Pedestrian Detection is activated in situations where the driver should have started braking earlier, which is why it cannot help the driver in every situation.

Collision Warning with Auto Brake & Pedestrian Detection is designed to be activated as late as possible in order to avoid unnecessary intervention.

Collision Warning with Auto Brake & Pedestrian Detection may prevent a collision or reduce the collision speed.

Collision Warning with Auto Brake & Pedestrian Detection must not be used as an excuse for the driver to change his/her driving style. If the driver solely relies on Collision Warning with Auto Brake to do the braking, there will be a collision sooner or later.

### Two system levels

Depending on how the car equipped, the Collision Warning with Auto Brake & Pedestrian Detection function may appear in two variants: **Level 1** and **Level 2**.

#### Level 1

The driver is merely warned of occurring obstacles by means of visual and acoustic signals - no automatic braking intervenes, the driver must himself brake.

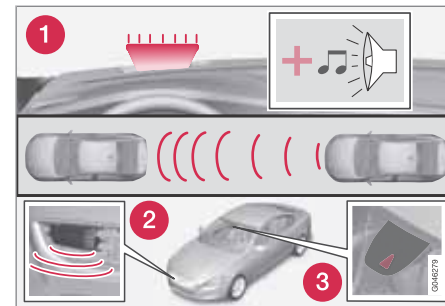
#### Level 2

The driver is warned of occurring obstacles by means of visual and acoustic signals - the car is braked automatically if the driver himself does not act within a reasonable time.

### ! IMPORTANT

Maintenance of components included in Collision Warning with Auto Brake & Pedestrian Detection must only be carried out in a workshop - an authorised Volvo workshop is recommended.

### Function



Function overview<sup>1</sup>.

- 1 Audio-visual warning signal in the event of a collision risk.
- 2 Radar sensor<sup>2</sup>
- 3 Camera sensor

Collision Warning with Auto Brake executes three steps in the following order:

1. **Collision warning**
2. **Brake support<sup>2</sup>**
3. **Auto Brake<sup>2</sup>**

<sup>1</sup> NOTE: The illustration is schematic - details may vary depending on car model.

<sup>2</sup> With system Level 2 only.



### Collision Warning with Auto Brake & Pedestrian Detection\*

The collision warning system and City Safety™ complement each other. For more information on City Safety™, see page 161.

#### 1 - Collision warning

The driver is first warned of a potentially imminent collision.

The collision warning system detects pedestrians, stationary vehicles as well as vehicles driving in the same direction in front of the car.

If there is a risk of collision with a pedestrian or a vehicle, the driver's attention is attracted with a flashing red warning signal (no. [1] in the figure on page 167) and an acoustic signal

#### 2 - Brake support<sup>2</sup>

If the risk of collision has increased further after the collision warning then the brake support is activated.

This means that the brake system is prepared for fast braking by applying the brakes gently, which may be experienced as a slight jerk.

If the brake pedal is depressed sufficiently quickly then full brake function is implemented.

Brake support also reinforces the driver's braking if the system considers that the braking is not sufficient to avoid a collision.

#### 3 - Auto Brake<sup>2</sup>

The automatic brake function is activated last.

If in this situation the driver has not yet started to take evasive action and the risk of collision is imminent then the automatic braking function is deployed - this takes place irrespective of whether or not the driver brakes. Braking then takes place with full brake force in order to reduce collision speed, or with limited brake force if it is sufficient to avoid a collision.



#### WARNING

The collision warning system does not engage in all driving situations or traffic, weather or road conditions. The collision warning system does not react to vehicles driving in another direction to the car or to animals.

Warning only activated in the event of a high risk for collision. This section "Function" and the section "Limitations" inform about limitations that the driver must be aware of before using the Collision Warning system with Auto Brake.

Warnings and brake interventions for pedestrians are switched off at vehicle speeds exceeding 80 km/h.

Warnings and brake interventions for pedestrians do not work in darkness and tunnels - not even when streetlights are lit.

The auto-brake function can prevent a collision or reduce collision speed. To ensure full brake performance, the driver should always depress the brake pedal - even when the car auto-brakes.

Never wait for a collision warning. The driver is always responsible that the correct distance and speed are maintained - even when the collision warning system with auto-brake is used.

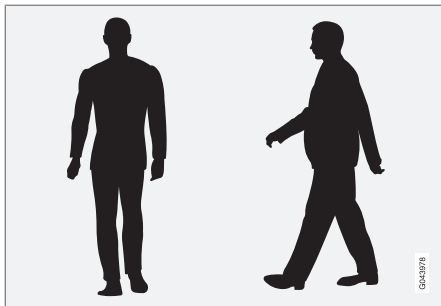
<sup>2</sup> With system Level 2 only.

\* Option/accessory, for more information, see Introduction.



## Collision Warning with Auto Brake & Pedestrian Detection\*

### Detection of pedestrians



Optimal examples of what the system regards as pedestrians with clear body contours.

Optimal performance of the system requires that the system function that detects pedestrians receives as unambiguous information as possible about the contours of the body - this implies the opportunity to identify the head, arms, shoulders, legs, upper and lower body combined with a normal human pattern of movement.

If large parts of the body are not visible to the camera then the system cannot detect a pedestrian.

- In order for a pedestrian to be detected he/she must appear full-length and have a height of at least 80 cm.
- The system cannot detect a pedestrian carrying larger items.
- The camera sensor's ability to see pedestrians at dusk and dawn is limited - just like the human eye.
- The camera sensor's capacity to detect pedestrians is deactivated when driving in darkness and tunnels - even when streetlights are lit.



### WARNING

Collision Warning with Auto Brake & Pedestrian Detection is an assistance tool.

This function cannot detect all pedestrians in all situations and it cannot see e.g. partially obscured pedestrians, people in clothing that hides the contours of the body or pedestrians shorter than 80 cm.

- The driver is always responsible that the vehicle is driven properly and with a safety distance adapted to the speed.

### Operation

Settings are made from **MY CAR** via the centre console display screen and menu system. For information on how the menu system is used, see page 203.

### Warning signals On and Off

It is possible to choose whether the collision warning system's acoustic and visual warning systems should be on or off.

When starting the engine, the setting that was selected when the engine was switched off is obtained automatically.



### NOTE

The Brake Support and Auto Brake functions are always activated - they cannot be deactivated.

### Light and acoustic signal

To switch off both the light and the acoustic signal:

- Go to **Settings** → **Car settings** → **Driver support systems** → **Collision Warning**.  
Once there, remove the mark from the box.

The warning lamp (no. [1] in the figure on page 167) is tested each time the engine is started by briefly illuminating the separate light points of the warning lamp if the light and acoustic



## Collision Warning with Auto Brake & Pedestrian Detection\*

warnings for the collision warning system are active.

### Acoustic signal

The warning sound can be activated/deactivated separately:

- Select **On** or **Off** in the menu system under **Settings → Car settings → Driver support systems → Collision Warning → Warning sound**.

### Set warning distance

The warning distance regulates the distance at which the visual and acoustic warnings are deployed.

- Select **Long**, **Normal** or **Short** in the menu system **MY CAR** under **Settings → Car settings → Driver support systems → Collision Warning → Warning distance**

The warning distance determines the system's sensitivity. Warning distance **Long** provides an earlier warning. First test with **Long** and if this setting produces too many warnings, which could be perceived as irritating in certain situations, then change to warning distance **Normal**.

Only use warning distance **Short** in exceptional cases, e.g. for dynamic driving.

### NOTE

When the adaptive cruise control is in use the warning lamp and warning sound will be used by the cruise control even if the collision warning system is switched off.

The collision warning system warns the driver in the event of a risk of a collision, but the function cannot shorten driver reaction time.

In order for the collision warning system to be effective, always drive with the Distance Alert set at time interval 4–5, see page 158.

### NOTE

Even if the warning distance has been set to **Long** warnings could be perceived as being late in certain situations, e.g. when there are large differences in speed or if vehicles in front brake heavily.

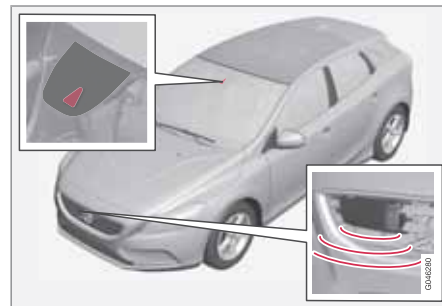
### WARNING

No automatic system can guarantee 100 % correct function in all situations. Therefore, never test Collision Warning with Auto Brake by driving at people or vehicles - this may cause severe damage and injury and risk lives.

### Checking settings

The settings required can be controlled on the centre console display screen. Search with the menu system **MY CAR** under **Settings → Car settings → Driver support systems → Collision Warning**, see page 203.

### Maintenance



Camera and radar sensor.

For the sensors to work correctly, they must be kept clear of dirt, ice and snow, and be cleaned regularly with water and car shampoo.

### NOTE

Dirt, ice and snow covering the sensors will reduce their function and may prevent measurement.





## Collision Warning with Auto Brake & Pedestrian Detection\*

### Limitations

Collision Warning with Auto Brake and Pedestrian Detection is active from approx. 4 km/h.

The visual warning signal (no. [1] in the illustration on page 167) may be difficult to notice in the event of strong sunlight, reflections, when sunglasses are being worn or if the driver is not looking straight ahead. The warning sound should therefore always be activated.

On slippery road surfaces the braking distance is extended, which may reduce the capacity to avoid a collision. In such situations the ABS and DSTC systems will provide best possible braking force with maintained stability.

### NOTE

The visual warning signal can be temporarily disengaged in the event of high passenger compartment temperature caused by strong sunlight for example. If this occurs then the warning sound is activated even if it is deactivated in the menu system.

- Warnings may not appear if the distance to the vehicle in front is small or if steering wheel and pedal movements are large, e.g. a very active driving style.

### WARNING

Warnings and brake interventions could be implemented late or not at all if the traffic situation or external influences mean that the radar or camera sensor cannot detect a pedestrian or a vehicle in front correctly.

The sensor system has a limited range for pedestrians and the system therefore provides effective warnings and brake interventions at vehicle speeds up to 50 km/h. For stationary or slow-moving vehicles, warnings and brake interventions are effective at vehicle speeds up to 70 km/h.

Warnings for stationary or slow-moving vehicles could be disengaged due to darkness or poor visibility.

Warnings and brake interventions for pedestrians are switched off at vehicle speeds exceeding 80 km/h.

The collision warning system uses the same radar sensors as adaptive cruise control. For more information on the radar sensor and its limitations, see page 154.

If warnings are perceived as being too frequent or disturbing then the warning distance can be reduced. This then leads to the system providing a warning at a later stage, which reduces the total number of warnings; see the section "Set warning distance" on page 170.

Collision Warning with Auto Brake is temporarily deactivated with reverse gear engaged.

Collision Warning with Auto Brake is not activated at low speeds - under 4 km/h, which is why the system does not intervene in situations where the car is approaching a vehicle in front very slowly, e.g. when parking.

In situations where the driver demonstrates active, aware driving behaviour, a collision warning may be postponed slightly in order to keep unnecessary warnings to a minimum.

When Auto Brake has prevented a collision with a stationary object the car remains stationary for a maximum of 1.5 seconds. If the car is braked for a vehicle in front that is moving, then speed is reduced to the same speed as that maintained by the vehicle in front.

On a car with manual gearbox the engine stops when Auto Brake has stopped the car, unless the driver manages to depress the clutch pedal beforehand.

### Camera sensor limitations

The car's camera sensor is also used - as well as by Collision Warning with Auto Brake - by the functions:

- Automatic main/dipped beam dimming - see page 89
- Road sign information - see page 141.



## Collision Warning with Auto Brake & Pedestrian Detection\*

- Driver Alert Control – see page 176
- Lane Keeping Aid - see page 180

### NOTE

Keep the windscreen surface in front of the camera sensor free from ice, snow, mist and dirt.

Do not stick or attach anything to the windscreen in front of the camera sensor as this may reduce effectiveness or cause one or more of the systems dependent on the camera to stop working.

The camera sensors have limitations similar to the human eye, i. e. they "see" worse in darkness, heavy snowfall or rain and in thick fog for example. Under such conditions the functions of camera-dependent systems could be significantly reduced or temporarily disengaged.

Strong oncoming light, reflections in the carriageway, snow or ice on the road surface, dirty road surfaces or unclear lane markings could also significantly reduce camera sensor function when it is used to scan the carriageway and detect pedestrians and other vehicles.

The field of vision of the camera sensor is limited, which is why pedestrians and vehicles cannot be detected in some situations, or they are detected later than anticipated.

During very high temperatures the camera is temporarily switched off for about 15 minutes after the engine is started in order to protect camera functionality.

### Fault tracing and action

If the display shows the message **Windscreen Sensors blocked** then this means that the camera sensor is blocked and cannot detect pedestrians, vehicles or road markings in front of the car.

At the same time, this means that - besides Collision Warning with Auto Brake - the Automatic main/dipped beam dimming, Road sign information, Driver Alert Control and Lane Keeping Aid functions will not have full functionality either.





The following table presents possible causes for a message being shown along with the appropriate action.

Cause	Action
The windscreen surface in front of the camera is dirty or covered with ice or snow.	Clean the windscreen surface in front of the camera from dirt, ice and snow.
Thick fog, heavy rain or snow means that the camera does not work sufficiently well.	No action. At times the camera does not work during heavy rain or snowfall.
The windscreen surface in front of the camera has been cleaned but the message remains.	Wait. It may take several minutes for the camera to measure the visibility.
Dirt has appeared between the inside of the windscreen and the camera.	Visit a workshop to have the windscreen inside the camera cover cleaned - an authorised Volvo workshop is recommended.





## Collision Warning with Auto Brake & Pedestrian Detection\*

### Symbols and messages in the display

Symbol <sup>A</sup>	Message	Specification
	<b>Collis'n warning OFF</b>	<p>Collision warning system switched off.</p> <p>Shown when the engine is started.</p> <p>The message clears after about 5 seconds or after one press of the <b>OK</b> button.</p>
	<b>Collision warn. Unavailable</b>	<p>The collision warning system cannot be activated.</p> <p>Shown when the driver attempts to activate the function.</p> <p>The message clears after about 5 seconds or after one press of the <b>OK</b> button.</p>
	<b>Auto braking was activated</b>	<p>Auto Brake has been active.</p> <p>The message clears after one press of the <b>OK</b> button.</p>
	<b>Windscreen Sensors blocked</b>	<p>The camera sensor is temporarily disengaged.</p> <p>Shown in the event of snow, ice or dirt on the windscreen for example.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Clean the windscreen surface in front of the camera sensor.</li> </ul> <p>Read about the limitations of the camera sensor, see page 171.</p>



### Collision Warning with Auto Brake & Pedestrian Detection\*

Symbol <sup>A</sup>	Message	Specification
	Radar blocked See manual	Collision Warning with Auto Brake is temporarily disengaged. The radar sensor is blocked and cannot detect other vehicles. For example, in the event of heavy rain or if slush has collected in front of the radar sensor. Read about the limitations of the radar sensor, see page 154.
	Collision warn. Service required	Collision Warning with Auto Brake is fully or partially disengaged. <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Visit a workshop if the message remains - an authorised Volvo workshop is recommended.</li></ul>

<sup>A</sup> The symbols are schematic.

**Driver Alert System\*****General information on Driver Alert System**

The Driver Alert System is intended to assist drivers whose driving ability is deteriorating or who are inadvertently leaving the lane they are driving on.

The Driver Alert System consists of different functions which can either be switched on at the same time or individually:

- Driver Alert Control – DAC, see page 176.
- Lane Keeping Aid - LKA, see page 180.

A switched-on function is set in standby mode and is not activated automatically until speed exceeds 65 km/h.

The function is deactivated again when speed decreases to below 60 km/h.

The functions use a camera which is dependent on the lane having side markings painted on each side.

**! WARNING**

Driver Alert System does not work in all situations but is designed merely as a supplementary aid.

The driver always bears ultimate responsibility for ensuring that the vehicle is driven safely.

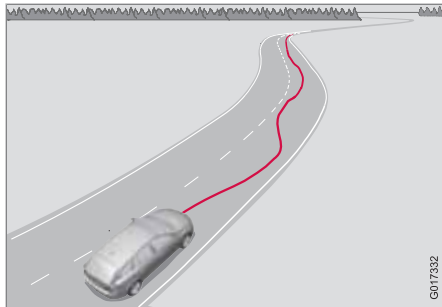
**Driver aid status**

The current status for all driver aids can be checked in **MY CAR**, see page 205.



## Driver Alert System - DAC\*

### General information on DAC



The DAC (Driver Alert Control) function is intended to attract the driver's attention when he/she starts to drive less consistently, e.g. if he/she becomes distracted or starts to fall asleep.

A camera detects the side markings painted on the carriageway and compares the section of the road with the driver's steering wheel movements. The driver is alerted if the vehicle does not follow the carriageway evenly.

#### **i** NOTE

The camera sensor has certain limitations - see page 171.

The objective for DAC is to detect slowly deteriorating driving ability and it is primarily intended for major roads. The function is not intended for city traffic.

In some cases driving ability is not affected despite driver fatigue. In which case there may not be any warning issued for the driver. For this reason it is always important to stop and take a break in the event of any signs of driver fatigue, irrespective of whether or not DAC issues a warning.

#### **i** NOTE

The function must not be used to extend a period of driving. Always plan breaks at regular intervals, and make sure you are well rested.

#### Limitation

In some cases the system may issue a warning despite driving ability not deteriorating, for example:

- in strong side winds.
- on rutted road surfaces.

### Operation



Settings are made from the centre console display screen and its menu system. For information on how the menu system is used, see page 203.

#### On/Off

To set Driver Alert in standby mode:

- In **MY CAR**, search for **Car settings** → **Driver support systems** → **Driver Alert** and check the box - No check in the box: Function disengaged.

#### Function

Driver Alert is activated when speed exceeds 65 km/h and remains active as long as the speed is over 60 km/h.

**Driver Alert System - DAC\***

If the vehicle is being driven erratically, the driver is notified with an audible signal plus the text message **Driver Alert Time for a break** - the linked symbol is lit on the instrument panel at the same time. The warning is repeated after a time if driving ability does not improve.

The warning symbol can go off:

- Press the left stalk switch **OK** button.

**WARNING**

An alarm should be taken very seriously, as a sleepy driver is often not aware of his/her own condition.

In the event of an alarm or a feeling of tiredness; stop the car in a safe manner as soon as possible and rest.





Studies have shown that it is equally as dangerous to drive while tired as it is under the influence of alcohol.



## Driver Alert System - DAC\*

### Symbols and messages

#### Instrument panel

Symbol <sup>A</sup>	Message	Specification
	Driver Alert Time for a break	The vehicle has been driven inconsistently - the driver is alerted by an acoustic warning signal + text.
	Windscreen Sensors blocked	The camera sensor is temporarily disengaged. Shown in the event of snow, ice or dirt on the windscreen for example. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Clean the windscreen surface in front of the camera sensor.</li> </ul> Read about the limitations of the camera sensor, see page 171.
 	Driver Alert Sys Service required	The system is disengaged. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Visit a workshop if the message remains - an authorised Volvo workshop is recommended.</li> </ul>

<sup>A</sup> The symbols are schematic.

#### Display

Symbol <sup>A</sup>	Message	Specification
	Driver Alert OFF	The function is disengaged.
	Driver Alert Available	The function is activated.

\* Option/accessory, for more information, see Introduction.



**Driver Alert System - DAC\***

Symbol <sup>A</sup>	Message	Specification
	<b>Driver Alert Standby &lt;65 km/h</b>	The function is set in standby mode due to speed being lower than 65 km/h.
	<b>Driver Alert Unavailable</b>	The carriageway does not have clear side markings or the camera sensor is temporarily disengaged. Read about the limitations of the camera sensor, see page 171.

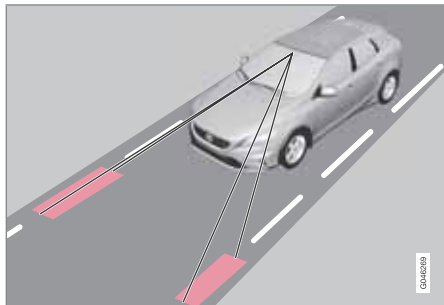
<sup>A</sup> The symbols are schematic.



## 04 Driver support

### Driver Alert System - Lane Keeping Aid\*

#### General information on the Lane Keeping Aid



The Lane Keeping Aid function (Lane Keeping Aid) is intended for use on motorways and similar major roads to reduce the risk of the vehicle accidentally leaving its own lane in certain situations.

A camera reads the painted side lines of the road/lane. If the car is about to cross a side line, the Lane Keeping Aid actively steers the car back into the lane with slight steering torque in the steering wheel.

If the car reaches or passes a side line, the Lane Keeping Aid warns the driver with pulsing vibrations in the steering wheel.

#### **WARNING**

LKA is merely a driver's aid and does not engage in all driving situations or traffic, weather or road conditions.

The driver always bears ultimate responsibility for ensuring that the vehicle is driven safely and that applicable laws and road traffic regulations are followed.

#### Function

The Lane Keeping Aid is active within the speed interval 65-200 km/h on roads with clearly visible side lines. The function is temporarily deactivated on narrow roads with less than 2.6 metres between the lane side lines.



#### Off & On

Press the button in the centre console to activate or deactivate the function. The function is switched on if one lamp is illuminated in the button.

Some combinations of the selected equipment leave no vacant space for an On/Off button in the centre console - in which case the function is handled instead by the car's menu system **MY CAR**. Here, proceed as follows:

- Select **On** or **Off** under **Settings** → **Car settings** → **Lane Keeping Aid**.

For a description of the menu system - see page 203.

In addition, the following selections can be made in **MY CAR**:

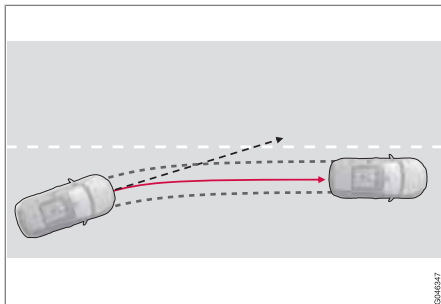
- Warning with vibration in the steering wheel: **Vibration only - On** or **Off**.
- Active steering: **Steering assist only - On** or **Off**.
- Both Warning with vibration in the steering wheel and Active steering: **Full function - On** or **Off**.

#### Active steering

The Lane Keeping Aid strives to keep the car within the side lines for the lane.



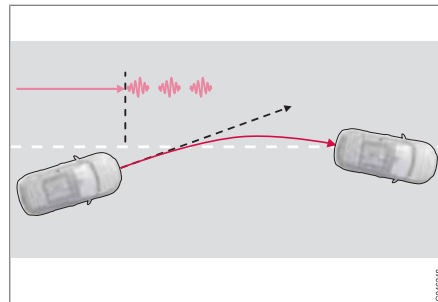
## Driver Alert System - Lane Keeping Aid\*



*LKA intervenes and steers away.*

If the vehicle approaches the left or right side line of the lane and the direction indicator is not activated, the car is steered back into the lane.

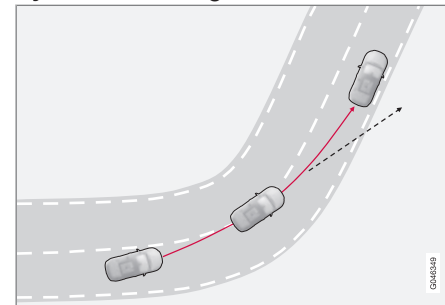
### Warning with vibration in the steering wheel



*LKA steers and warns with pulsing steering wheel vibrations<sup>1</sup>.*

If the vehicle passes a side line, the Lane Keeping Aid warns the driver with pulsing vibrations in the steering wheel. This occurs regardless of whether the car is actively steered back by applying a slight steering torque.

### Dynamic cornering



*LKA does not engage in sharp inside curves.*

In certain cases, the Lane Keeping Aid allows the car to cross side lines without engaging active steering or warning with pulsing vibrations in the steering wheel. Using an adjacent lane for dynamic cornering when there is a clear line of vision is an example of one such case.

<sup>1</sup> The figure shows 3 pulsing vibrations when the side line is passed.



## 04 Driver support

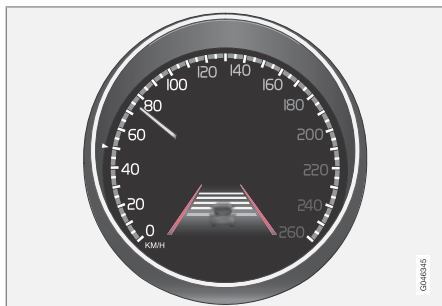
### Driver Alert System - Lane Keeping Aid\*

#### Operation

The function is supplemented with self-explanatory graphics in different situations. Here are some examples:

#### NOTE

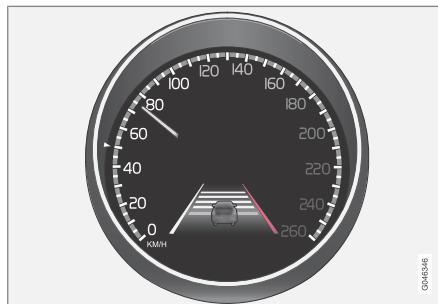
LKA is temporarily deactivated for as long as the direction indicator is switched on.



LKA "sees" the following side lines.

If the Lane Keeping Aid is active and detects/"sees" the side lines, the LKA symbol is shown with WHITE lines.

- GREY side line – the Lane Keeping Aid does not see a line on that side of the car.



LKA engages on the right side.

The Lane Keeping Aid intervenes and steers away from the side line - this is indicated with:

- RED line for the side in question.

#### Limitations

- The Lane Keeping Aid camera sensor is restricted in a similar way to the human eye. For more information, see page 171.

#### NOTE

In certain demanding situations LKA may find it difficult to assist the driver correctly - in which case it is recommended that LKA is switched off.

Examples of such a situation could be:

- roadworks
- winter road conditions
- poor road surface
- very sporty driving style
- poor weather with reduced visibility.

#### Hands on the steering wheel

In order for Lane Keeping Aid to operate, the driver must have his/her hands on the steering wheel. LKA continually monitors this. If hands are not detected on the steering wheel, a text message encouraging the driver to actively steer the car is shown.

If the driver does not follow the request to begin steering, the Lane Keeping Aid goes into standby mode and will remain in this mode until the driver begins to steer the car again.



\* Option/accessory, for more information, see Introduction.

**Driver Alert System - Lane Keeping Aid\*****Symbols and messages**

In situations where the LKA function is not working or is set to standby mode, a message

may be displayed in the instrument panel along with an explanatory message on the display or TV screen. If so, follow the given recommendation.

Message examples:

Symbol <sup>A</sup>	Message	Specification
	<b>Lane Keeping Aid Unavailable at this speed</b>	The Lane Keeping Aid is set to standby mode because the speed is lower than 65 km/h.
	<b>Lane Keeping Aid Unavailable for current markings</b>	The lane does not have clear side lines or the camera sensor is temporarily disengaged. Read about the limitations of the camera sensor, see page 171.
	<b>Lane Keeping Aid Available</b>	The function scans the lane's side lines.
	<b>Windscreen Sensors blocked</b>	The camera sensor is temporarily disengaged. Shown in the event of snow, ice or dirt on the windscreen for example. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Clean the windscreen surface in front of the camera sensor.</li> </ul> Read about the limitations of the camera sensor, see page 171.
	<b>Lane Keeping Aid Service required</b>	The system is disengaged. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Visit a workshop if the message remains - an authorised Volvo workshop is recommended.</li> </ul>
	<b>Lane Keeping Aid Interrupted</b>	LKA has been set to standby mode. The lines of the LKA symbol indicate when the function is active again.

<sup>A</sup> The table symbols are schematic. The symbols on the display may have a slightly different appearance.



## Park assist syst\*

### General

Parking assistance is used as an aid to parking. An acoustic signal as well as symbols on the centre console's display screen indicate the distance to the detected obstacle.

Parking assistance sound level can be adjusted during the ongoing acoustic signal using the centre console's **VOL** knob or in the car's menu system **MY CAR** - see page 203.

Parking assistance is available in two variants:

- Rear only
- Both front and rear.

### NOTE

When a towbar is configured with the car's electrical system, the protrusion of the towbar is included when the function measures the parking space.

### WARNING

- Parking assistance does not relinquish the driver's own responsibility during parking.
- The sensors have blind spots where obstacles cannot be detected.
- Be aware of e.g. people and animals near the car.

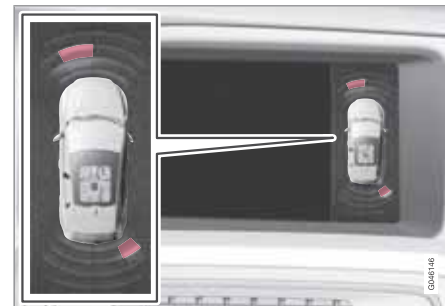
### Function



On/Off for the sensors for parking assistance and CTA<sup>1</sup>.

The system is automatically activated when the engine is started - the switch's On/Off lamp is

illuminated. If parking assistance is switched off with the button, the lamp goes out.



Display screen view - showing an obstacle left front and right rear.

The centre console's display screen shows an overview of the relationship between the car and detected obstacle.

Marked sectors show which of the four sensor(s) detected an obstacle. The closer to the car symbol a selected sector box is, the shorter the distance between the car and a detected obstacle.

The frequency of the signal increases the shorter the distance to an obstacle, in front of or behind the car. Other sound from the audio system is muted automatically.

<sup>1</sup> Side warning, see page 196



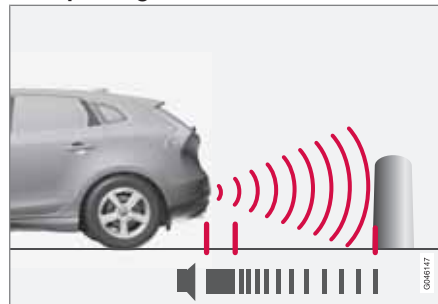
## Park assist syst\*

When the distance is within 30 cm the tone is constant and the active sensor's field nearest the car is filled in. If the detected obstacle is within the distance for the constant tone both behind and in front of the car, then the tone sounds alternately from the loudspeakers.

**! IMPORTANT**

Certain objects e.g. chains, thin glossy poles or low barriers may be in the "signal shadow" and are then temporarily not detected by the sensors - the pulsating tone may then unexpectedly stop instead of changing over to the expected constant tone.

- In which case, pay extra attention and manoeuvre/reposition the car particularly slowly or stop the current parking manoeuvre - there may be a high risk of damage to vehicles or other objects since the sensors are unable to function optimally.

**Rear parking assistance**

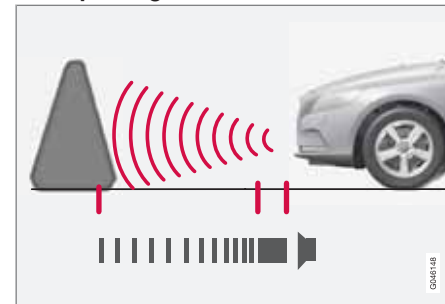
The distance covered to the rear of the car is about 1.5 metres. The acoustic signal for obstacles behind comes from one of the rear loudspeakers.

Rear parking assistance is activated when reverse gear is engaged.

The system is automatically deactivated when reversing with e.g. a trailer or bike carrier on the towbar in order to prevent the sensors from reacting to them.

**i NOTE**

When reversing with e.g. trailer or bike carrier on the towbar - without Volvo genuine trailer cable - Park Assist may need to be deactivated manually in order that the sensors do not react to the trailer or bike carrier.

**Front parking assistance**

The distance covered in front of the car is about 0.8 metres. The acoustic signal for obstacles in front comes from one of the front loudspeakers.

Front park assist is active up to approx. 10 km/h. The lamp in the button is illuminated in order to indicate that the system is activated. When the speed is below 10 km/h the system is reactivated.


**! IMPORTANT**

When auxiliary lamps are fitted: Remember that these must not obscure the sensors - the auxiliary lamps may then be perceived as an obstacle.



### Park assist syst\*

#### Fault indicator

 If the information symbol illuminates with constant glow and the information display shows **Park assist syst Service required** then parking assistance is disengaged.

#### IMPORTANT

Under some circumstances, the parking sensors can give false warning signals due to external sound sources which emit the same ultrasound frequencies as those with which the system works.

Examples of such sources include horns, wet tyres on asphalt, pneumatic brakes and exhaust noises from motorcycles etc.

#### Cleaning the sensors



Sensor location, front.



Sensor location, rear.

The sensors must be cleaned regularly to ensure that they work properly. Clean them with water and car shampoo.

#### NOTE

Dirt, ice and snow covering the sensors will reduce their function and may prevent measurement.



**Park assist camera\*****General**

The parking camera is an assist system and is activated when reverse gear is engaged (can be changed in the settings menu, see page 203).

The camera image is shown on the centre console's screen.

**WARNING**

- The parking camera is an aid and can never replace the responsibilities of the driver when reversing.
- The camera has blind spots where obstacles cannot be detected.
- Be aware of people and animals near the car.

**Function and operation**

**CAM** button location.

The camera shows what is behind the car and if something appears from the sides.

The camera shows a wide area behind the car and part of the bumper and any towbar.

Objects on the screen may appear to tilt slightly - this is normal.

**NOTE**

Objects on the display screen may be closer to the car than they appear to be on the screen.

If another view is active the parking camera system takes over automatically and the camera image is displayed on the screen.

When reverse gear is engaged two unbroken lines are shown graphically which illustrate where the car's rear wheels will roll with the current steering wheel angle, this facilitates tight parking, reversing into tight spaces and for hitching a trailer. The car's approximate external dimensions are illustrated by means of two dashed lines. These help lines can be switched off in the settings menu.

If the car is also equipped with parking assistance sensors\* then their information is displayed graphically as coloured fields in order to illustrate the distance to detected obstacles, see page 184.

The camera is active approx. 5 seconds after reverse gear has been disengaged or until the car's speed exceeds 10 km/h.



Camera location next to the opening handle.



## 04 Driver support

### Park assist camera\*

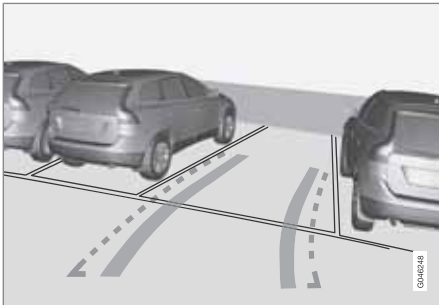
#### Light conditions

The camera image is adjusted automatically according to prevailing light conditions. Because of this, the image may vary slightly in brightness and quality. Poor light conditions can result in a slightly reduced image quality.

#### NOTE

Keep the camera lens clear of dirt, snow and ice to ensure optimum function. This is particularly important in poor light.

#### Park assist lines



Examples of how the park assist lines can be displayed for the driver.

The lines on the screen are projected as if they were at ground level behind the car and are directly related to steering wheel movement,

which shows the driver the path the car will take when it turns.

#### NOTE

- When reversing with a trailer which is not connected electrically to the car, the lines on the display show the route the **car** will take - not the trailer.
- The screen shows no lines when a trailer is connected electrically to the car's electrical system.
- The parking camera is deactivated automatically when towing a trailer if a Volvo genuine trailer cable is used.

#### IMPORTANT

Remember that the display only shows the area behind the car - so pay attention to the sides and front of the car when turning the steering while reversing.

#### Boundary lines

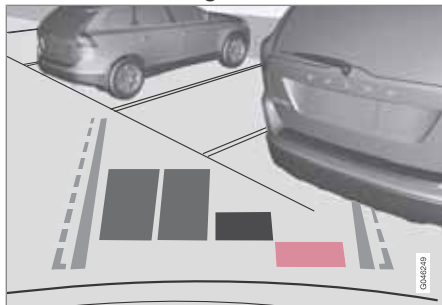


Different lines in the system.

- 1 Boundary line, free reversing zone
- 2 "Wheel tracks"

The dashed line (1) frames in a zone up to about 1.5 m back from the bumper. It is also the limit of the car's most protruding parts, such as door mirrors and corners - also during turning.

The wide "wheel tracks" (2) between the side lines indicate where the wheels will roll and can extend about 3.2 m back from the bumper if no obstacle is in the way.

**Park assist camera\*****Cars with reversing sensors\***

Coloured areas (x 4 - one per sensor) show distance.

If the car is also equipped with parking assistance sensors (see page 184) the distance indication will be more precise and the coloured areas show which of the 4 sensors is/are registering an obstacle.

The colour of the areas changes with decreasing distance to the obstacle - from light yellow to yellow to orange to red.

Colour / paint	Distance (metres)
Light yellow	0.7–1.5
Yellow	0,5–0,7

Colour / paint	Distance (metres)
Orange	0,3–0,5
Red	0–0.3

**Settings**

Press **OK/MENU** when a camera view is shown. Make the settings as desired.

**Miscellaneous**

- The default setting is that the camera is activated when reverse gear is engaged.
- One press on **CAM** activates the camera even if reverse gear is not engaged.
- Change between normal and zoomed image by turning **TUNE** or by pressing **CAM**.
- If the car has more cameras\* installed then the camera in use is changed by turning **TUNE**.

**Towbar**

The camera can be used to advantage when hitching a trailer. A help line for the towbar's intended "course" towards the trailer can be shown in the display - just as for the "wheel tracks".

- The towbar can be zoomed in for precision manoeuvring with one press on **CAM**. Pressing again gives normal view.

The towbar's park assist line is activated in the menu system **MY CAR** where a selection can be made between displaying the "wheel tracks" or towbar course - both options cannot be displayed simultaneously.

**Limitations****NOTE**

Bicycle racks or other accessories mounted on the back of the car may obscure the line of sight of the camera.

Pay attention to the possibility that, even if it only looks like a relatively small part of the image is obscured, it could be a relatively large sector that is hidden from view. Obstacles could thereby go undetected until they are very close to the car.

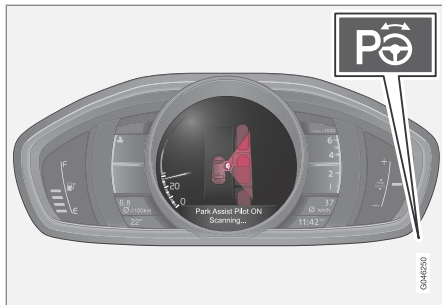
**To bear in mind**

- Keep the camera lens free from dirt, ice and snow.
- Clean the camera lens regularly with luke-warm water and car shampoo - take care not to scratch the lens.



## Park Assist Pilot - PAP\*

### General



The On/Off button is on the centre console.

The Park Assist Pilot (PAP – Park Assist Pilot) helps the driver to park by first checking whether a space is sufficiently large and then turning the steering wheel and steering the car into the space. Symbols, graphics and text in the combined instrument panel display show when various things are to be done.

### NOTE

When a towbar is configured with the car's electrical system, the protrusion of the towbar is included when the function measures the parking space.

### WARNING

PAP does not work in all situations but is designed merely as a supplementary aid.

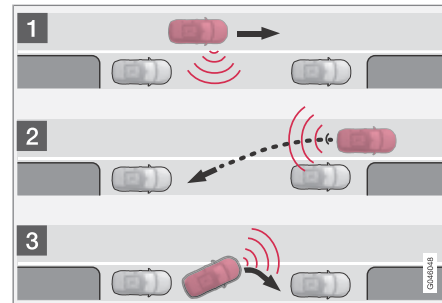
The driver always has the final responsibility for driving the vehicle in a safe manner and for paying attention to the surroundings and other road users approaching or passing during parking.

### Function

The PAP function turns the steering wheel - the driver's job is to select a gear, control the speed and brake.

PAP can be activated if the following criteria are met once the engine has been started:

- The functions DSTC or ABS must not interfere while the PAP function is enabled - these can be activated due to a steep or slippery surface, for example: see pages 129 and 138 for more information.
- Trailers must not be connected to the car.
- The speed must be below 50 km/h.



Principle for PAP.

The PAP function parks the car using the following steps:

1. The function searches for a parking space and measures it (A & B). During measurement, speed must not exceed 30 km/h.
2. The car is steered into the space while reversing (C & D).
3. The car is straightened up in the space by driving back and forth (E & F).



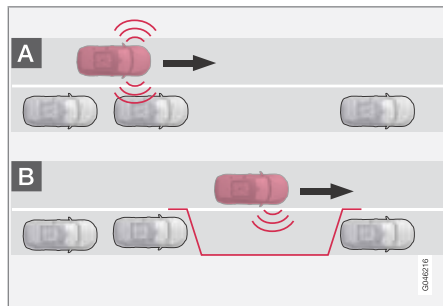
## Park Assist Pilot - PAP\*

**Operation**

The driver is instructed by means of simple, clear instructions on the instrument panel - using both graphics and text.

**i NOTE**

Remember that certain steering wheel positions may obstruct the instrument panel's instructions when you turn it during the parking manoeuvre.

**1 - Searching and checking measurements**

The PAP function searches for a parking space and checks whether it is big enough. Proceed as follows:



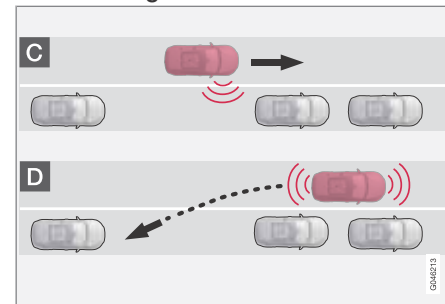
1. Activate PAP by pressing this button and do not drive faster than 30 km/h.

2. Keep an eye on the instrument panel display and be prepared to stop the car when the graphics and text so request.
3. Stop the car when the graphics and text so request.

**i NOTE**

PAP searches the area for a parking space, displays instructions and guides the car in on its passenger side. But if required the car can also be parked on the driver's side of the street:

- Activate the direction indicator for the driver's side - the car is then parked on that side of the street instead.

**2 - Reversing in**

During the Reversing step, PAP will steer the car into the parking space. Proceed as follows:

1. Check that the area behind the car is clear, then engage reverse gear.
2. Reverse slowly and carefully without touching the steering wheel - and no faster than approx. 10 km/h.
3. Keep an eye on the instrument panel display and be prepared to stop the car when the graphics and text so request.

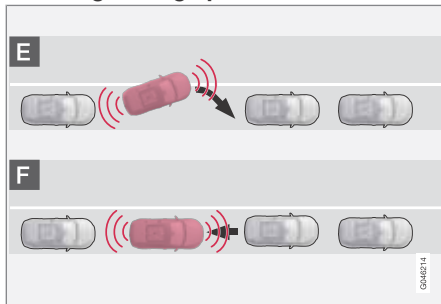


## Park Assist Pilot - PAP\*

### NOTE

- Keep your hands away from the steering wheel when the PAP function is activated.
- Make sure that the steering wheel is not hindered in any way and can rotate freely.
- For optimum results - Wait until the steering wheel has been turned before starting to drive backwards/forwards.

### 3 - Straightening up



When the car has reversed into the parking space, it must be straightened up and stopped.

1. Engage first gear or **D** position, wait until the steering wheel has been turned, then drive slowly forwards.
2. Stop the car when the graphics and text message so request.
3. Engage reverse gear and drive backwards slowly until the graphics and text message tell you to stop.

The function is disengaged automatically when parking is complete, and the graphics and text message show that parking is complete. It may be necessary for the driver to correct the positioning. Only the driver can determine whether the car is properly parked.

### IMPORTANT

The warning distance is shorter when the sensors are used by Active Park Assist compared with when Park Assist uses the sensors.

### Limitations

The PAP sequence is stopped:

- if the car is driven too quickly - more than 30 km/h
- if the driver touches the steering wheel
- if the ABS or DSTC function is enabled - e.g. if a wheel loses grip on a slippery road.

- if a passenger door is opened - but the driver's door may be opened.

A text message indicates where the PAP sequence was stopped.

### NOTE

Dirt, ice and snow covering the sensors will reduce their function and may prevent measurement.

### IMPORTANT

Under certain circumstances, PAP is unable to find parking spaces - one reason for this may be the fact that there is interference with the sensors from external sound sources which emit the same ultrasound frequencies as those with which the system works.

Examples of such sources include horns, wet tyres on asphalt, pneumatic brakes and exhaust noises from motorcycles etc.

### To bear in mind

The driver should bear in mind that the Park Assist Pilot is an aid – not an infallible, fully-automatic function. The driver must therefore be prepared to intervene. There are also details to bear in mind while parking, e.g.:

- PAP works based on the positioning of parked vehicles. If these are not properly



## Park Assist Pilot - PAP\*

parked, the car could end up on the sidewalk or improperly parked in some other way.

- PAP is designed for parking on straight streets, not sharp curves or bends.
- It is not always possible to find parking spaces on narrow streets since there is not enough space for manoeuvring. In such parking situations, it helps the system to drive as close to the side of the road as possible where you intend to park.
- Bear in mind that the front of the car may swing out towards oncoming traffic while being parked.
- Objects situated higher than the detection areas of the sensors are not included when calculations are made for the parking manoeuvre. This may cause PAP to swing into the parking space too early.
- The driver is responsible for determine whether the space selected by PAP is suitable for parking.
- Use approved tyres<sup>1</sup> with the correct tyre pressure as this affects PAP's ability to park the car.
- Heavy rain or snow may cause the system to measure the parking space incorrectly.
- Do not use PAP if snow chains or a spare wheel are fitted.

- Do not use PAP if loaded objects are protruding from the car.

### Maintenance



Besides the front and rear Park assist bumper sensors, PAP also uses a sensor on either side of the front screen.

For the PAP function to work correctly, its sensors must be cleaned regularly with water and car shampoo - these are the same sensors as are used by parking assistance (see page 186) plus one side sensor.

### Symbols and messages

The instrument panel display can show different combinations of symbols and text with varying content - sometimes with a self-explanatory piece of advice on appropriate action.

If a message says that PAP is disengaged, contact with an authorised Volvo workshop is recommended.

<sup>1</sup> "Approved tyres" refers to tyres of the same type and make as those mounted when the car was delivered from the factory.



## BLIS and CTA\*

### General information on BLIS and CTA

The BLIS function (Blind Spot Information System) is designed for driving in dense traffic on roads with several lanes in the same direction. BLIS is a driver's aid intended to provide a warning about:

- vehicles in the car's blind spot
- quickly approaching vehicles in the left and right lanes closest to the car.

The BLIS function CTA (Cross Traffic Alert) is a driver's aid intended to provide a warning about:

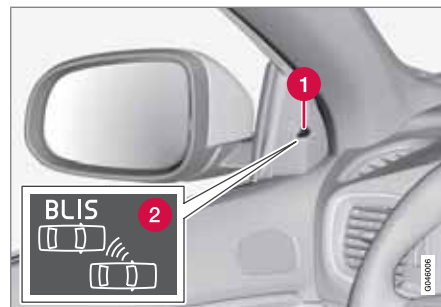
- crossing traffic when the car is reversed.

### WARNING

BLIS and CTA are a supplement - not a replacement for a safe driving style and the use of rearview and door mirrors. The BLIS and CTA functions can never replace driver responsibility and attention.

It is always the responsibility of the driver to change lanes and reverse in a safe way.

### Operation



Position of the BLIS lamp<sup>1</sup>.

- 1 Indicator lamp
- 2 BLIS symbol

### NOTE

The lamp illuminates on the side of the car where the system has detected the vehicle. If the car is overtaken on both sides at the same time then both lamps illuminate.

### Function

BLIS and CTA are activated when the engine is started. This is confirmed by the indicator lamps in the door panels flashing once.

### Activate/deactivate BLIS



Button for activating/deactivating.

The **BLIS** function can be deactivated/activated by pressing the **BLIS** button on the centre console.

Some combinations of the selected equipment leave no vacant space for a button in the centre console - in which case the function is handled by the car's menu system **MY CAR**<sup>2</sup>:

- Select **On** or **Off** at **Settings** → **Car settings** → **BLIS**.

<sup>1</sup> NOTE: The illustration is schematic - details may vary depending on car model.

<sup>2</sup> For information on the menu system - see page 203.





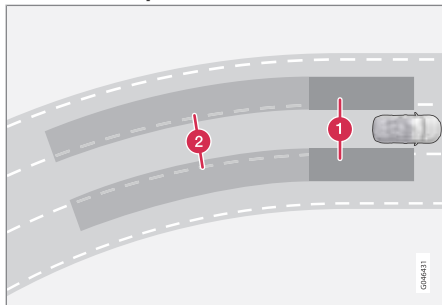
## BLIS and CTA\*

When BLIS is deactivated/activated the lamp in the button goes out/illuminates and the instrument panel display confirms the change with a text message. The door panel indicator lamps flash once upon activation.

To extinguish the message:

- Press the left stalk switch **OK** button.
- or
- Wait approx. 5 seconds – the message extinguishes.

## When BLIS operates



Principle for BLIS: 1. Zone in blind spot. 2. Zone for quickly approaching vehicle.

The BLIS function is active at speeds above approx. 10 km/h.

The system is designed to react when:

- the vehicle is overtaken by other vehicles
- another vehicle is quickly approaching the vehicle

When BLIS detects a vehicle in zone 1 or a quickly approaching vehicle in zone 2, the door panel BLIS lamp illuminates with a constant glow. If the driver activates the direction indicator on the same side as the warning, the BLIS lamp will change from a constant glow to flashing with a more intense light.

**WARNING**

BLIS does not work in sharp bends.

BLIS does not work when the car is being reversed.

**Activate/deactivate CTA**

In cars equipped with parking assistance (see page 184), the CTA function can be deactivated/activated with the PAS button:



On/Off for parking assistance and CTA sensors.

CTA itself can be deactivated in the **MY CAR**<sup>2</sup> menu system as follows:

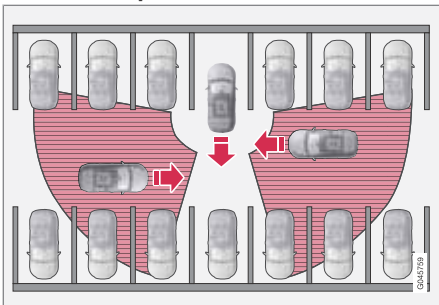
- Go to **Settings** → **Car settings** → **BLIS** → **Cross Traffic Alert** and deselect. The CTA function is then deactivated. BLIS remains activated.

<sup>2</sup> For information on the menu system - see page 203.



## BLIS and CTA\*

### When CTA operates



Principle for CTA - .

CTA supplements the BLIS function by being able to see crossing traffic from the side during reversing, such as when reversing out of a parking space.

CTA is primarily designed to detect vehicles. In favourable conditions, it may also be able to detect smaller objects, such as cyclists and pedestrians.

CTA is only active during reversing and is activated automatically when reverse is selected at the gearbox.

- If CTA detects something approaching from the side, an acoustic warning signal sounds. The signal comes from either the left or the right speaker depending on

which direction the approaching object is coming from.

- CTA also warns by illuminating the BLIS lamps.
- An additional warning is provided in the form of a lit icon in the TV screen's PAS graphics.

### WARNING

CTA does not work in all situations but is designed merely as a supplementary aid.

The driver always bears ultimate responsibility for ensuring that the vehicle is driven safely.

### Maintenance



Location of BLIS and CTA sensors.

The BLIS and CTA sensors are located inside the rear wing/bumper on each side of the car.

- To ensure optimal functionality, the areas in front of the sensors must be kept clean.

### Limitations

- BLIS and CTA are deactivated when a trailer is connected to the car's electrical system.
- Dirt, ice and snow covering sensors can reduce functionality and make it impossible to provide warnings. BLIS and CTA are unable to detect hazards if covered.
- Do not affix any objects, tape or labels in the area of the sensors.

### IMPORTANT

Repair of the BLIS and CTA functions' components must only be performed by a workshop - an authorised Volvo workshop is recommended.

**BLIS and CTA\*****Messages on the display**

In situations where the BLIS and CTA functions fail or are interrupted, a symbol may be shown on the instrument panel, supplemented by an explanatory message. Follow any recommendation given.

Message examples:

Message	Specification
<b>BLIS ON</b>	The BLIS system is activated.
<b>BLIS and CTA Service required</b>	BLIS and CTA are not working. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Visit a workshop if the message remains - an authorised Volvo workshop is recommended.</li> </ul>
<b>BLIS and CTA OFF Trailer attached</b>	BLIS and CTA are temporarily disabled because a trailer is connected to the car's electrical system.

Message	Specification
<b>BLIS OFF</b>	BLIS and CTA have been deactivated manually.
<b>CTA OFF</b>	CTA has been deactivated manually. BLIS is active.

A text message can be acknowledged by briefly pressing the **OK** button on the direction indicator stalk.

Menus and messages.....	200
Menu source MY CAR.....	203
Climate control.....	212
Fuel-driven engine block heater and passenger compartment heater*	223
Additional heater*.....	227
Trip computer.....	229
Adapting driving characteristics.....	233
Comfort inside the passenger compartment.....	234



# 05

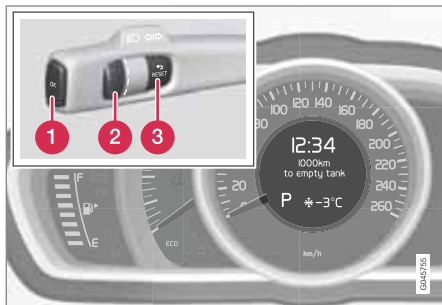
## COMFORT AND DRIVING PLEASURE





## Menus and messages

### Combined instrument panel<sup>1</sup>



Information display (analogue combined instrument panel) and menu navigation controls.

- 1 **OK** - access the menu, acknowledge messages and confirm menu selections.
- 2 Thumbwheel – browse between menu options.
- 3 **RESET** - reset data in the selected trip computer step and go back in the menu structure.

The menus shown on the information display in the combined instrument panel are controlled with the left-hand stalk switch. The menus shown depend on key position, see

page 79. If a message appears then this must be acknowledged with **OK** for the menus to be shown.

### Menu overview

Some of the following menu options require the function and hardware to be installed in the car.

### Analogue combined instrument panel

#### Digital speed

#### Parking heater\*

#### Additional heater\*

#### TC options

#### Service status

#### Oil level<sup>2</sup>

#### Messages (##)<sup>3</sup>

### Digital combined instrument panel

#### Settings\*

#### Themes

#### Contrast mode/Colour mode

#### Service status

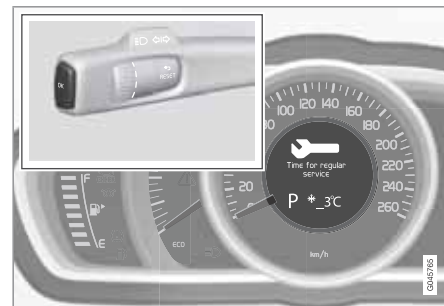
#### Messages

### Oil level<sup>2</sup>

### Preconditioning\*

### Trip computer reset

### Message



Text message in the information display (analogue combined instrument panel).

When a warning, information or indicator symbol illuminates, a corresponding message appears on the information display. An error message is stored in a memory list until the fault has been rectified.

<sup>1</sup> See also page 69 for different variants of the combined instrument panel.

<sup>2</sup> Certain engines.

<sup>3</sup> The number of messages is indicated in brackets.



## Menus and messages

Press **OK** to acknowledge<sup>4</sup> and browse among the messages.

 **NOTE**

If a warning message appears while you are using the trip computer, the message must be read (press **OK**) before the previous activity can be resumed.

Message	Specification
<b>Stop safely<sup>A</sup></b>	Stop and switch off the engine. Serious risk of damage - consult a workshop <sup>B</sup> .
<b>Stop engine<sup>A</sup></b>	Stop and switch off the engine. Serious risk of damage - consult a workshop <sup>B</sup> .
<b>Service urgent<sup>A</sup></b>	Contact a workshop <sup>B</sup> to check the car immediately.
<b>Service required<sup>A</sup></b>	Contact a workshop <sup>B</sup> to check the car as soon as possible.

Message	Specification
<b>See manual<sup>A</sup></b>	Read the owner's manual.
<b>Book time for maintenance</b>	Time to book regular service - contact a workshop <sup>B</sup> .
<b>Time for regular maintenance</b>	Time for regular service - contact a workshop <sup>B</sup> . The timing is determined by the number of kilometres driven, number of months since the last service, engine running time and oil grade.
<b>Maintenance overdue</b>	If the service intervals are not followed then the warranty does not cover any damaged parts - contact a workshop <sup>B</sup> .
<b>Transmission Oil change needed</b>	Contact a workshop <sup>B</sup> to check the car as soon as possible.

Message	Specification
<b>Transmission Reduced performance</b>	The gearbox cannot handle full capacity. Drive carefully until the message clears <sup>C</sup> . If shown repeatedly - contact a workshop <sup>B</sup> .
<b>Transmission hot Reduce speed</b>	Drive more smoothly or stop the car in a safe manner. Disengage the gear and run the engine at idling speed until the message clears <sup>C</sup> .
<b>Transmission hot Stop safely Wait for cooling</b>	Critical fault. Stop the car immediately in a safe manner and contact a workshop <sup>B</sup> .

<sup>4</sup> A message can also be acknowledged via the thumbwheel or **RESET** button.



## Menus and messages

Message	Specification
Temporarily off <sup>A</sup>	A function has been temporarily switched off and is reset automatically while driving or after starting again.
Low battery charge Power save mode	The audio system is switched off to save energy. Charge the battery.

<sup>A</sup> Part of message, shown together with information on where the problem has arisen.

<sup>B</sup> An authorised Volvo workshop is recommended.

<sup>C</sup> For more messages concerning automatic transmission, see page 119.





## Menu source MY CAR

### General information on MY CAR



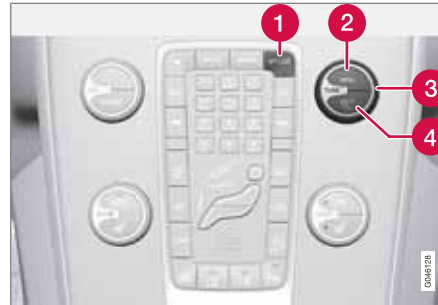
Many of the car's functions are handled in this menu source, such as setting the clock, door mirrors and locks.

Navigation in the menus is carried out using buttons on the centre console or with the steering wheel's right-hand keypad.

Certain functions are standard, others are optional - the range also varies depending on the market.

### Operation

#### Centre console controls



Centre console controls for menu navigation.

- 1 Press **MY CAR** to open the menus under **MY CAR**.
- 2 Press **OK MENU** to select/tick in the highlighted menu option or to store the selected function in the memory.
- 3 Turn the **TUNE** knob to scroll up/down among the menu options.
- 4 **EXIT**

#### EXIT functions

Depending on the function the cursor is on when **EXIT** is pressed, and on the menu level, one of the following occurs:

- phone call is rejected
- current function is interrupted
- input characters are deleted
- most recent selections are undone
- leads up in the menu system.

Short and long presses can also produce varying results.

A long press leads to the highest menu level (Parent view), from which all of the car's functions/menu sources can be accessed; see page 243.



## Menu source MY CAR

### Steering wheel keypad\*



The keypad may vary depending on the audio level; see page 240.

- 1 Turn the thumbwheel knob to scroll up/down among the menu options.
- 1 Press the thumbwheel to select/tick in the highlighted menu option or to store the selected function in the memory.
- 2 EXIT (see heading "EXIT functions" page 203).

### Search paths

Current menu level is shown at the top right of the centre console display screen. Search paths to the menu system functions are described in this manual in the following form:

Settings → Car settings → Lock settings →  
Doors unlock → Driver door, then all.

The following is an example of how a function can be accessed and adjusted using the steering wheel keypad:

1. Press the centre console button **MY CAR**.
2. Scroll to the desired menu, e.g. **Settings**, with the thumbwheel (1) and then **press** the thumbwheel - a submenu opens.
3. Scroll to the desired menu, e.g. **Car settings** and press the thumbwheel - a submenu opens.
4. Scroll to **Lock settings** and press the thumbwheel - a new submenu opens.
5. Scroll to **Doors unlock** and press the thumbwheel - a submenu of selectable functions opens.
6. Choose between the options **All doors** and **Driver door, then all** and press the thumbwheel - a cross is marked in the option's empty box.
7. Exit the programming by backing out of the menus incrementally with short presses on **EXIT** (2) or with one long press.

The procedure is the same as with the centre console's buttons - see page 203: **OK MENU** (2), **EXIT** (4) and the **TUNE** knob (3).

### MY CAR

The following options are available in menu source **MY CAR**:



- My V40
- Trip statistics
- DRiVe\*
- Support systems
- Settings



## Menu source MY CAR

### My V40



### MY CAR → My V40

The display screen shows a grouping of all of the car's driver support systems - these can be activated or deactivated here.

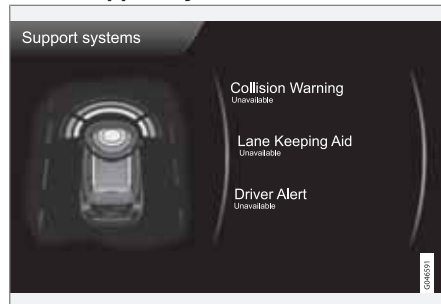
### My DRIVE\*

Parts of Volvo's DRIVE concept are described here, amongst other things.

- **Start/Stop**
- **Eco driving guide**

For more information - see page 123.

### Driver support system



### MY CAR → Support systems

The display screen shows a summary of the current status of the car's driver support systems.

### Setup - menus

The menus are structured as follows:

Menu level 1	
Menu level 2	p. ....
Menu level 3	
Menu level 4	

Shown here are the 4 first menu levels under **MY CAR → Settings**. Some menus have further submenus - these are then described in detail in their respective sections.

When selecting whether a function should be activated/**On** or deactivated/**Off** a square is displayed:

**On:** Selected square.

**Off:** Empty square.

- Select **On/Off** with **OK** - then back out of the menu with **EXIT**.

<b>Car settings</b>	
<b>Car key memory</b>	p. 82 and 104
On	
Off	



## Menu source MY CAR

05

<b>Lock settings</b>	p. 44, 52 and 55
Automatic door locking	
On	
Off	
Doors unlock	
All doors	
Driver door, then all	
Keyless entry	
All doors	
Any door	
Doors on same side	
Both front doors	
Audible confirmation	
On	
Off	
<b>Reduced Guard</b>	p. 58 and 62
Activate once	
Ask when exiting	

<b>Side mirror settings</b>	p. 104
Fold mirrors	
Tilt left mirror	
Tilt right mirror	
<b>Light settings</b>	p. 94
Interior light	
Floor lights	
Ambient light	
Ambient light colours	
Door lock confirmation light	p. 42
On	
Off	
Unlock confirmation light	
On	
Off	

Approach light duration	p. 44 and 95
Off	
30 sec	
60 sec	
90 sec	
Home safe light duration	p. 95
30 sec	
60 sec	
90 sec	
Triple indicator	p. 93
On	
Off	
Temporary LH traffic	p. 95
On	
Off	
or	
Temporary RH traffic	
On	
Off	



## Menu source MY CAR

Active bending lights On Off	p. 91
Auxiliary lights On Off	p. 87
<b>Steering wheel force</b> Low Medium High	p. 233
<b>Speed in infotainment display</b> On Off	
<b>Reset car settings</b> All menus in <b>Car settings</b> are given original factory settings.	
<b>Driver support systems</b>	

<b>Collision Warning</b> On Off Warning distance Long Normal Short Warning sound On Off	p. 167
--	--------

<b>Lane Keeping Aid</b> On Off On at start-up On Off Increased sensitivity* On Off Assistance alternatives Vibration only Steering assist only Full function	p. 180
<b>Road Sign Information</b> On Off	p. 141
<b>Speed alert</b> On Off	

05





# 05 Comfort and driving pleasure

## Menu source MY CAR

<b>DSTC</b> On Off	p. 138
<b>City Safety</b> On Off	p. 161
<b>BLIS</b> On Off	p. 194
<b>Cross Traffic Alert</b> On Off	
<b>Distance Alert</b> On Off	p. 158
<b>Driver Alert</b> On Off	p. 176
<b>System options</b>	

<b>Time</b> The instrument panel clock is set here.	p. 75
<b>Time format</b> 12 h 24 h	p. 75
<b>Screen saver</b> On Off The TV screen's current content fades out after a period of inactivity and is replaced by a blank screen if this option is selected. The current screen content returns if any of the TV screen's buttons or controls are actuated.	p. 203
<b>Language</b> Selects language for menu texts.	

<b>Show help text</b> On Off Explanatory text for the display screen's current content is shown with this option selected.	
<b>Distance and fuel units</b> MPG (UK) MPG (US) km/l l/100km	p. 229
<b>Temperature unit</b> Celsius Fahrenheit Selects the unit for the display of outside temperature and setting of the climate control system.	
<b>Volume levels</b> Voice output volume Front park assist volume Rear park assist volume Phone ringing volume	



## Menu source MY CAR

### Reset system options

All menus in **System options** are given original factory settings.

### Voice settings

Only in cars with Volvo GPS navigator RTI\* - see separate manual.

### Voice tutorial

This menu option + **OK** provides spoken information about how the system works.

### Voice command list

#### Phone commands

Phone

Phone call contact

Phone dial number

#### Navigation commands

Navigation

Navigation repeat instruction

Navigation go to address

#### General commands

Help

Cancel

Voice tutorial

The menu options under **Phone commands** show several examples of available voice commands - only with a Bluetooth®-enabled mobile phone installed. For more

and detailed information - see page 267.

The menu options under **Navigation commands** show several examples of available voice commands in the Navigation system.

### Voice user setting

Default setting

User 1

User 2

Here there is the option to create a second user profile - an advantage if more than one person shall use the car/system regularly.

**Default setting** restores factory settings.



## Menu source MY CAR

05

### Voice training

- User 1
- User 2

With **Voice training** the voice recognition system is taught to recognise the driver's voice and pronunciation. A number of phrases are presented on the screen for the driver to read aloud. When the system has learnt how the driver talks, the presentation of the phrases stops. Following which e.g. **User 1** can be selected in **Voice user setting** in order that the system shall listen to the right user.

### Voice output volume

A volume control appears on the screen - at which point, proceed as follows:

1. Adjust the volume with the thumbwheel.
2. Test-listen using **OK**.
3. Use **EXIT** to store the setting and the menu is switched off.

### Voice POI list

Edit list

The number of facilities is extensive and varies depending on market. Maximum 30 favourite facilities can be stored in this list.

For more information on Facilities and Voice recognition - see the Navigation system's owner's manual.

### Audio settings

p. 240

### Climate settings

### Automatic blower adjustment

p. 217

- Normal
- High
- Low

### Recirculation timer

- On
- Off

### Automatic rear defroster

- On
- Off

### Interior air quality system

- On
- Off

### Reset climate settings

All menus in **Climate settings** are given original factory settings.

### Favourites (FAV)

p. 244

### Volvo On Call

Described in a separate manual.

### Information





## Menu source MY CAR

<b>Number of keys</b>	p. 42
<b>VIN number</b>	p. 366
<b>DivX® VOD code</b>	p. 260
<b>Bluetooth software version in car</b>	p. 266
<b>Map and software version*</b> Only in cars with Volvo GPS navigator - see separate manual.	



## Climate control

### General

#### Climate control

The car is equipped with electronic climate control. The climate control system cools or heats as well as dehumidifies the air in the passenger compartment.

#### NOTE

The air conditioning system (AC) can be switched off, but to ensure the best possible climate comfort in the passenger compartment and to prevent the windows from misting, it should always be on.

#### Actual temperature

The temperature you select corresponds to the physical experience with reference to factors such as air speed, humidity and solar radiation etc. in and around the car.

The system includes a sun sensor which detects on which side the sun is shining into the passenger compartment. This means<sup>1</sup> that the temperature can differ between the right and left-hand air vents despite the controls being set for the same temperature on both sides.

<sup>1</sup> Only applies to ECC.

#### Sensor location

- The sun sensor is located on the top side of the dashboard.
- The temperature sensor for the passenger compartment is located below the climate control panel.
- The outside temperature sensor is located in the door mirror.

#### NOTE

Do not cover or block the sensors with clothing or other objects.

#### Side windows

To ensure that the air conditioning works optimally, the side windows must be closed.

#### Misting windows

Remove misting on the insides of the windows by primarily using the defroster function.

To reduce the risk of misting, keep the windows clean and use window cleaner.

#### Temporary shut-off of the air conditioning

When the engine requires full power, e.g. for full acceleration or driving uphill with a trailer, the air conditioning can be temporarily switched

off. There may then be a temporary increase in temperature in the passenger compartment.

#### Condensation

In warm weather, condensation from the air conditioning may drip under the car. This is normal.

#### Ice and snow

Remove ice and snow from the climate control system air intake (the grille between the bonnet and the windscreen).

#### Total airing function

The function opens/closes all side windows simultaneously and can be used for example to quickly air the car during hot weather, see page 55.

#### Passenger compartment filter

All air entering the car's passenger compartment is cleaned with a filter. This must be replaced at regular intervals. Follow the Volvo Service Programme for the recommended replacement intervals. If the car is used in a severely contaminated environment, it may be necessary to replace the filter more often.



## Climate control

### NOTE

There are different types of passenger compartment filter. Make sure that the correct filter is fitted.

### Clean Zone Interior Package (CZIP)\*

This option keeps the passenger compartment clear of allergy and asthma inducing substances. For more information on CZIP, see the brochure included with the purchase of the car.

The following is included:

- An enhanced fan function that means that the fan starts when the car is opened with the remote control key. The fan fills the passenger compartment with fresh air. The function starts when required and is disengaged automatically after a time or when one of the passenger compartment doors is opened. The amount of time the fan runs is reduced gradually due to reduced need up until the car is 4 years old.
- The air quality system IAQS is a fully automatic system that cleans the air in the passenger compartment from contaminants such as particles, hydrocarbons, nitrous oxides and ground-level ozone.

### NOTE

To maintain the CZIP standard in cars with CZIP the IAQS filter should be changed after 15 000 km or once per year depending on whichever occurs first. However, up to 75 000 km over 5 years. In cars without CZIP and where the customer does not want to retain the CZIP standard, the IAQS filter must be replaced during a regular service.

### Use of tested materials in the interior equipment.

The materials have been developed in order to minimise the quantity of dust in the passenger compartment and they contribute to making the passenger compartment easier to keep clean. The carpets in both the passenger compartment and the cargo area are removable and easy to remove and clean. Use cleaning agents and car care products recommended by Volvo, see page 359.

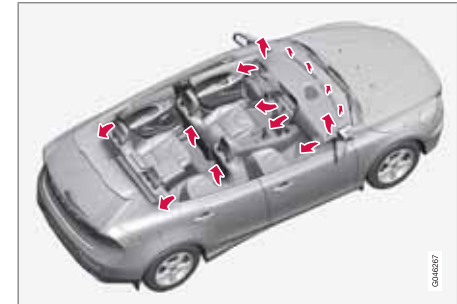
### Menu settings

It is possible to activate/deactivate or change the default settings for four of the climate control system's functions via the centre console. For general information about menu navigation, see page 204:

- Fan speed in automatic mode\*, see page 218.
- Recirculation timer for passenger compartment air, see page 220.
- Automatic rear window defrosting, see page 105.
- Air quality system IAQS\*, see page 220

The climate control system's functions can be reset to the default settings via the menu system in **MY CAR** and this is carried out under: **Settings** → **Climate settings** → **Reset climate settings**.

### Air distribution



The incoming air is divided between a number of different vents in the passenger compartment.

\* Option/accessory, for more information, see Introduction.

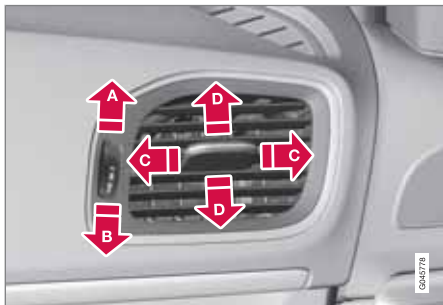


## Climate control

Air distribution is fully automatic in **AUTO** mode\*.

If necessary it can be controlled manually, see page 221.

### Air vents in the dashboard



- A** Open
- B** Closed
- C** Lateral airflow
- D** Vertical airflow

Aim the vents at the side windows to remove misting.

### **i** NOTE

Remember that small children may be sensitive to air flows and draughts.



## Climate control

## Electronic climate control, ECC\*



- 1 Fan
- 2 **AUTO**
- 3 Electrically heated front seat, left-hand side
- 4 Heated windscreen\* and max. defroster
- 5 Air distribution - ventilation floor
- 6 Air distribution - air vent instrument panel
- 7 Air distribution - defroster windscreen
- 8 Rear window and door mirror defrosters, see page 105
- 9 Setting, left/right side for temperature regulation
- 10 Electrically heated front seat, right-hand side
- 11 Temperature control
- 12 Recirculation
- 13 **AC** -- Air conditioning on/off

\* Option/accessory, for more information, see Introduction.



## Climate control

### Electronic Temperature Control, ETC



- 1 Fan
- 2 Electrically heated front seat, left-hand side
- 3 AC -- Air conditioning on/off
- 4 Heated windscreen\* and max. defroster
- 5 Air distribution - ventilation floor
- 6 Air distribution - air vent instrument panel
- 7 Air distribution - defroster windscreen
- 8 Rear window and door mirror defrosters, see page 105
- 9 Recirculation
- 10 Electrically heated front seat, right-hand side
- 11 Temperature control

0460329



## Climate control

## Operating the controls

## Heated seats\*

## Front seats



Current heat level is shown in the centre console TV screen.



Press the button once for the highest heat level - three orange fields are lit in the centre console TV screen (see figure above).

Press the button twice for a lower heat level – two orange fields are lit in the TV screen.

Press the button three times for the lowest heat level – one orange field is lit in the TV screen.

Press the button four times to switch off the heat – no fields are lit.

**WARNING**

Heated seats must not be used by people who find it difficult to perceive an increase in temperature due to a lack of sensation or who otherwise have problems operating the controls for the heated seats. Otherwise they may suffer burn injuries.

## Rear seat



Press the button once for the highest heat level – three lamps illuminate.

Press the button twice for a lower heat level – two lamps illuminate.

Press the button three times for the lowest heat level – one lamp illuminates.

Press the button four times to switch off the heat – no lamps illuminate.

## Fan

**NOTE**

If the fan is fully switched off then the air conditioning is not engaged - which can cause a risk of misting on the windows.

## Fan knob for ECC\*



Turn the knob to increase or decrease fan speed, **AUTO** is disengaged. If **AUTO** is selected, the fan speed is regulated automatically - the fan speed previously set is disengaged.

## Fan knob for ETC



Turn the knob to increase or decrease fan speed.

## Climate control

### Air distribution



- 1 Air distribution - defroster windscreen
- 2 Air distribution - air vent instrument panel
- 3 Air distribution - ventilation floor

The figure consists of three buttons. When pressing the buttons the corresponding figure is illuminated in the TV screen (see figure below) and an arrow in front of each part of the figure shows the air distribution that is selected. For more information on air distribution, see page 221.



The selected air distribution is shown in the centre console TV screen.

### AUTO<sup>1</sup>



The Auto function automatically regulates temperature, air conditioning, fan speed, recirculation, and air distribution.

If you select one or more manual functions, the other functions continue to be controlled automatically. All manual settings are disengaged when **AUTO** is pressed. The TV screen shows **AUTO CLIMATE**.

Fan speed in automatic mode can be set in the menu system **MY CAR** under: **Settings** →

**Climate settings** → **Automatic blower adjustment**. Choose between **Low**, **Normal** or **High**:

- **Low** - Automatic fan control. Low airflow is prioritised.
- **Normal** - Automatic fan control.
- **High** - Automatic fan control. A more intense airflow is prioritised.

For a description of the menu system, see page 204.

### Temperature control



When the car is started, the most recent setting is resumed.

<sup>1</sup> Only applies to ECC.





## Climate control

**NOTE**

Heating or cooling cannot be hastened by selecting a higher or lower temperature than the actual desired temperature.

**Temperature regulation ECC\***

The temperatures on the driver and passenger sides can be set independently. Repeatedly press **L/R** in the button to select the setting for left, right or both sides. Set the temperature using the

knob - the selected temperature for either side is displayed in the centre console display.

**Temperature regulation ETC**

The temperature in the passenger compartment can be adjusted with the knob.

**AC – Air conditioning on/off**

When the lamp in the **AC** button illuminates, the air conditioning is controlled by the system's automatic function. This way, incoming air is cooled and dehumidified as required.

When the lamp in the **AC** button is switched off the air conditioning is disconnected. Other functions are still controlled automatically. When the max. defroster function is activated the air conditioning is switched on automatically, so that the air is dehumidified at the maximum setting.

**Heated windscreen\* and max. defroster**

The selected setting is shown in the centre console TV screen.

- 1 Electric heating\*
- 2 Max. defroster



Used to quickly remove misting and ice from the windscreen and side windows. The light in the defroster button illuminates when the function is active.



## Climate control

For cars without heated windscreens:

- One press on the button makes air flow to the windows - symbol (2) shines in the display.
- Two presses switches off the function - no symbol shines.

For cars with heated windscreens, the function operates as follows:

- One press on the button starts heating the windscreen<sup>2</sup> - symbol (1) shines in the display.
- Two presses on the button start heating the windscreen<sup>2</sup> and air flows to the windows - the symbols (1) and (2) shine in the display.
- Three presses switches off the function - no symbol shines.

The following also takes place when the function is active in order to provide maximum dehumidification in the passenger compartment:

- the air conditioning is automatically engaged
- recirculation and the air quality system are automatically disengaged.

<sup>2</sup> The compass goes off when the heated windscreen is active.

### NOTE

The noise level increases as the fan is operating at max.

When the defroster is switched off the climate control returns to the previous settings.

### Recirculation

#### Recirculation



When recirculation is engaged the orange lamp in the button illuminates. The function is selected to shut out bad air, exhaust gases etc. from the passenger compartment. The air in the passenger compartment is recirculated, i.e. no outside air is taken into the car when this function is activated.

### IMPORTANT

If the air in the car recirculates for too long, there is a risk of misting on the insides of the windows.

### Timer

With the timer function activated the system will exit manually activated recirculation mode

according to a time that depends on the outside temperature. This reduces the risk of ice, misting and bad air. Activate/deactivate the function in the menu system **MY CAR** under **Settings → Climate settings → Recirculation timer**. For a description of the menu system, see page 204.

### NOTE

When max. defroster is selected, recirculation is always deactivated.

### Air quality system IAQS\*

The air quality system separates gases and particles to reduce the levels of odours and pollution in the passenger compartment. If the outside air is contaminated then the air intake is closed and the air is recirculated.

Activate/deactivate the function in the menu system **MY CAR** under **Settings → Climate settings → Interior air quality system**. For a description of the menu system, see page 204.

\* Option/accessory, for more information, see Introduction.



## Climate control

**i** NOTE





The air quality sensor must always be enabled to ensure the best air in the passenger compartment.

In a cold climate, automatic recirculation is limited so as to prevent misting.

**Cars with Eco Start/Stop DRIVE\***

With an auto-stopped engine certain equipment has its function temporarily reduced, e.g. climate control air conditioning and fan speed. For more information, see page 123.

**Air distribution table**

	Air distribution	Use		Air distribution	Use
	A large amount of hot air flows to the windows.	to remove ice and misting quickly.		Air to the floor and windows. Some air flows from the dashboard air vents.	to ensure comfortable conditions and good demisting in cold or humid weather.
	Air to windscreen, via defroster vent, and side windows. Some air flows from the air vents.	to prevent misting and icing in a cold and humid climate, (not at too low fan speed to enable this).		Air to floor and from dashboard air vents.	in sunny weather with cool outside temperatures.



## 05 Comfort and driving pleasure

### Climate control

	Air distribution	Use		Air distribution	Use
	Airflow to windows and from dashboard air vents.	to ensure good comfort in warm, dry weather.		Air to floor. Some air flows to the dashboard air vents and windows.	to direct heat or cold to the floor.
	Airflow to the head and chest from the dashboard air vents.	to ensure efficient cooling in warm weather.		Airflow to windows, from dashboard air vents and to the floor.	to provide cooler air along the floor or warmer air higher up in cold weather or hot, dry weather.

05



## Fuel-driven engine block heater and passenger compartment heater\*

### Fuel-driven heater

#### General information about the parking heater

The parking heater heats the engine and passenger compartment and can be started directly or with the timer.

Two different times can be selected using the timer. Here, time refers to the time when the car is heated and ready. The car's electronic system calculates when heating should be started based on the outside temperature.

The heater cannot start if the outside temperature exceeds 15 °C. At -5 °C or lower the maximum running time of the parking heater is 50 minutes.

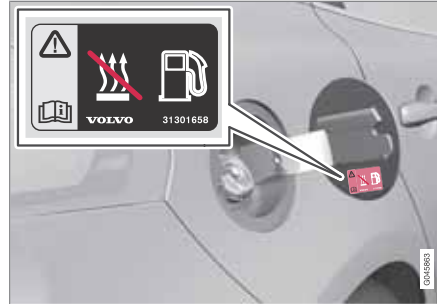
#### **WARNING**

The car must be outdoors when the parking heater is used.

#### **NOTE**

When the parking heater is active there may be smoke from underneath the car, which is perfectly normal.

#### Refuelling



Warning label on fuel filler flap.

#### **WARNING**

Fuel which spills out could be ignited. Switch off the fuel-driven heater before starting to refuel.

Check on the information display that the parking heater is switched off. When it is running, the information display shows **Auto heater ON**<sup>1</sup>.

#### Parking on a hill

If the car is parked on a steep hill, the front of the car should point downhill to ensure that there is a supply of fuel to the parking heater.

#### Battery and fuel

If the battery has insufficient charge or the fuel level is too low, the parking heater will be switched off automatically and a message appears on the information display. Acknowledge the message by pressing the indicator stalk **OK** button once, see page 224.

#### **IMPORTANT**

Repeated use of the parking heater combined with short journeys may discharge the battery and impair starting.

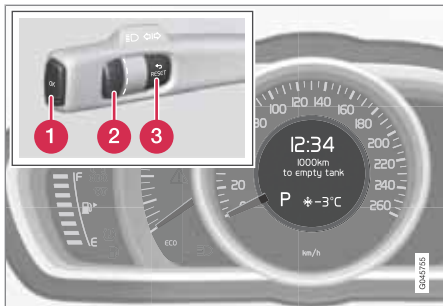
The car should be driven for the same time as the heater is used to ensure that the car's battery is recharged adequately to replace the energy consumed by the heater when it is used on a regular basis.

<sup>1</sup> Analogue combined instrument panel.



## Fuel-driven engine block heater and passenger compartment heater\*

### Operation





Information display (analogue combined instrument panel) and menu navigation controls.


- 1 **OK** button
- 2 Thumbwheel
- 3 **RESET**




For more information on the information display and **OK**, see pages 69 and 200.

### Symbols and display messages<sup>2</sup>

 When one of the timer's settings or **Direct start** is activated, the information symbol in the combined instrument panel illuminates while the information display shows an explanatory text and a further illuminated symbol. The table shows symbols and display texts that appear.

 **NOTE**

 - Figure 2 in the symbol means the second climate control system in the car, where the normal climate control system is the first. The figure 2 has nothing to do with the timer.

Symbol	Display	Specification
	<b>Auto heater ON</b>	The heater is switched on and running.  The heater's timer is activated after the remote control key has been removed from the ignition switch and leaving the car - the engine and passenger compartment are heated at the set time.
 	<b>Fuel operated heater stopped Battery saving mode</b>	The heater has been stopped by the car's electronics in order to facilitate starting the engine.

<sup>2</sup> Analogue combined instrument panel.

\* Option/accessory, for more information, see Introduction.



## Fuel-driven engine block heater and passenger compartment heater\*

Symbol	Display	Specification
	Fuel operated heater stopped Low fuel level	Setting the heater is not possible due to fuel level being too low - this is in order to facilitate starting the engine as well as approx. 50 km driving.
	Fuel operated heater Service required	Heater not working. Contact a workshop for repair. Volvo recommends that you contact an authorised Volvo workshop.

A display text clears automatically after a time or after one press on the indicator stalk **OK** button.

### Direct start and immediate stop

Following the direct start of the heater it will be activated for 50 minutes.

Heating of the passenger compartment will begin as soon as the engine coolant has reached the correct temperature.

#### NOTE

The car can be started and driven while the parking heater is running.

1. Scroll with the thumbwheel to **Parking heater**<sup>3</sup> and select with **OK**.
2. In the next menu, scroll to **Direct start** and select with **OK** to activate/deactivate.
3. Exit the menu with **RESET**.

### Heater timer

The time when the car shall be used and heated is specified with the timer.

#### Setting the timer

1. Scroll with the thumbwheel to **Parking heater**<sup>3</sup> and select with **OK**.

2. Select one of the two timers using the thumbwheel and confirm with **OK**.
3. Briefly press **OK** to move to the lit hours setting.
4. Select the required hour using the thumbwheel.
5. Briefly press **OK** to move to the lit minutes setting.
6. Select the required minute using the thumbwheel.
7. Press **OK**<sup>4</sup> to confirm the setting.
8. Go back in the menu structure using **RESET**.
9. Select the other time (continue from step 2) or exit the menu with **RESET**.

#### Start the timer

1. Scroll with the thumbwheel to **Parking heater**<sup>3</sup> and select with **OK**.
2. Select one of the two timers using the thumbwheel and confirm with **OK**.
3. Activate the marked timer with **OK**.

<sup>3</sup> Analogue combined instrument panel.

<sup>4</sup> Press **OK** again to activate the timer.



### Fuel-driven engine block heater and passenger compartment heater\*

#### Deactivating the timer

A timer-started heater can be switched off manually before the set time has elapsed. Proceed as follows:

1. Press **OK**.
2. Scroll with the thumbwheel to **Parking heater**<sup>3</sup> and select with **OK**.
  - > If a timer is set but not activated, a clock icon is shown next to the set time.
3. Select one of the two timers using the thumbwheel and confirm with **OK**.
4. Deactivate the timer as follows:
  - long press on **OK** or
  - short press on **OK** to continue in the menu. Then select to stop the timer and confirm with **OK**.

A timer-started heater can be switched off as described in the instructions in the section "Direct start and immediate stop"; see page 225.

#### Clock/timer

The heater's time is connected to the car's clock.



#### NOTE

All timer programming will be cleared if the car's clock is reset.

<sup>3</sup> Analogue combined instrument panel.

\* Option/accessory, for more information, see Introduction.





## Additional heater\*

### General information about the additional heater

For cars with diesel engines sold in cold climate zones<sup>1</sup> an additional heater may be required to obtain the correct operating temperature in the engine and to obtain sufficient heating in the passenger compartment.

In such instances, the car is equipped with either:

- an additional electric heater or
- a fuel-driven additional heater<sup>2</sup>.

### Electric additional heater

The heater cannot be controlled manually but is instead activated automatically after the engine has been started in outside temperatures below 9 °C and is switched off after the set passenger compartment temperature has been reached.

### Fuel-driven additional heater

The heater starts automatically when extra heat is required when the engine is running.

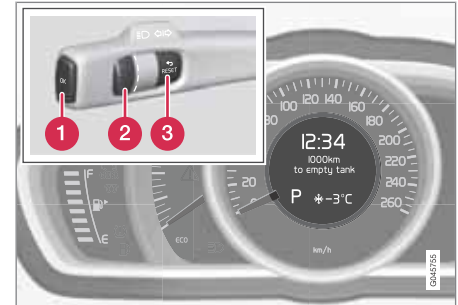
The heater is switched off automatically when the correct temperature is reached or when the engine is switched off.

#### NOTE

When the auxiliary heater is active there may be smoke from underneath the car, which is perfectly normal.

### Auto mode or shutdown

The additional heater's automatic start sequence can be switched off if required.



Information display (analogue combined instrument panel) and menu navigation controls.

- 1** OK button
- 2** Thumbwheel
- 3** RESET button

1. Before starting the engine: Select key position **I**, see page 80.
2. Scroll with the thumbwheel to **Additional heat auto**.
3. Press **RESET** to select between **ON** and **OFF**.

<sup>1</sup> An authorised Volvo dealer has information regarding the geographical areas concerned.

<sup>2</sup> For cars fitted with parking heaters, see page 223.



## 05 Comfort and driving pleasure

### Additional heater\*



#### NOTE

The menu options are only visible in key position I - any adjustments must therefore be made before starting the engine.



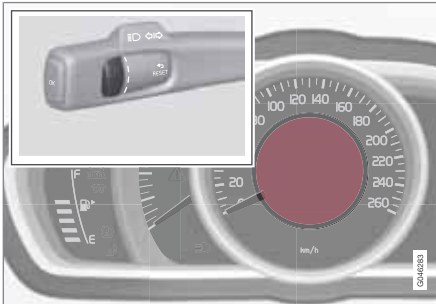
## Trip computer

### General

The trip computer comes in two variants, with differing content and appearance – "Analog" or "Digital".

The trip computer's menu is in a variable loop. One of the "Analog" menu options is a blank display - it also marks the beginning/end of the loop. With this option in the "Digital" instrument panel, the two trip computer displays go blank.

### "Analog" instrument panel



"Analog" information display with controls.

**OK** – Opens the trip computer menus and activates the relevant option.

**Thumbwheel** – Scroll among trip control options.

**RESET** – Cancel or go back one step.

### NOTE

If a warning message appears when the trip computer is used then the message must first be acknowledged before the trip computer can be reactivated. Acknowledge the warning message by briefly pressing the indicator lever's **OK** button.

Menu options	Information
<b>Digital speed</b>	Select "km/h" or "mph".
<b>Parking heater*</b>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Select the box for Hours or Minutes using the <b>thumbwheel</b> and activate the box with <b>OK</b>.</li> <li>2. Select a number using the <b>thumbwheel</b> and program it with <b>OK</b>.</li> <li>3. Select the next box or back out with <b>RESET</b>.</li> </ol>

For more information, see page 223.

Menu options	Information
<b>Additional heater*</b>	For more information, see page 227.
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– Auto On</li> <li>– Off</li> </ul>	
<b>TC options</b>	<p>Select the option to be shown in the display.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Scroll among the options using the <b>thumbwheel</b> and select with <b>OK</b>.</li> </ul>
<b>Distance to empty, km to empty tank</b>	
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– Fuel consumption</li> <li>– Average speed</li> <li>– Trip meter T1 and total dist.</li> <li>– Trip meter T2 and total dist.</li> <li>– Driver Support</li> <li>– No text - Loop start/stop</li> </ul>	
<b>Service status</b>	Shows the number of months and the distance until the next service.

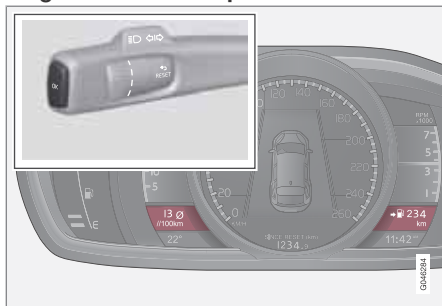


## Trip computer

Menu options	Information
<b>Engine oil level Wait...<sup>A</sup></b>	For more information, see page 331.
<b>Messages</b>	For more information, see page 200.

<sup>A</sup> Certain engines.

### "Digital" instrument panel



"Digital" information display with controls.

**OK** – Opens the trip computer menus and activates the relevant option.

**Thumbwheel** – Scroll among trip control options.

**RESET** – Cancel or go back one step.

In the "Digital" display version, two trip computer functions can be displayed simultane-

ously – one function in the left and one in the right display.

The following combinations can be accessed with the **thumbwheel**:

- "Average consumption" and "**Average speed**"
- "Current consumption" and "**Distance to empty fuel tank**:"
- "Current consumption" and "Digital speed display"
- No text - Loop start/stop

Menu options	Information
<b>Trip computer reset</b> - l/100 km - km/h - Reset both	Select the desired option using the <b>thumbwheel</b> and activate with <b>OK</b> .
<b>Messages</b>	For more information, see page 200.
<b>Themes</b>	Instrument panel appearance is selected here, see page 70.

Menu options	Information
<b>Settings*</b> – <b>Additional heater</b>	Select <b>Auto On</b> or <b>Off</b> .  For more information, see page 227.
<b>Contrast mode/ Colour mode</b>	Adjust instrument panel appearance.
<b>Parking heater*</b> – <b>Direct start</b>  - Timer 1 - leads to the menu for selecting time.  - Timer 2 - leads to the menu for selecting time.	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Select the box for Hours or Minutes using the <b>thumbwheel</b> and activate the box with <b>OK</b>.</li> <li>2. Select a number using the <b>thumbwheel</b> and program it with <b>OK</b>.</li> <li>3. Select the next box or back out with <b>RESET</b>.</li> </ol> For more information, see page 223.



## Trip computer

Menu options	Information
<b>Service status</b>	Shows the number of months and the distance until the next service.
<b>Engine oil level Wait...<sup>A</sup></b>	For more information, see page 331.

<sup>A</sup> Certain engines.

## Functions

A description of a few trip computer functions is found below:

### Average

Average fuel consumption is calculated from the last resetting.

#### NOTE

There may be a slight error in the reading if a fuel-driven heater\* has been used.

### Average speed

Average speed is calculated from the last resetting.

### Instantaneous

Current fuel consumption is calculated every second. The information on the display is updated every couple of seconds. When the car is stationary, "----" appears on the display.

Cars with the Start/Stop function show "0,0 L/100km" when the engine is in auto-stop mode.

### Km to empty tank

The calculation is based on the average fuel consumption over the last 30 km and the remaining driveable fuel quantity. The display shows the approximate distance that can be driven with the fuel quantity remaining in the tank.

An economic driving style generally results in a longer driving distance. For more information on how fuel consumption can be influenced, see page 10.

No guaranteed range remains when the display shows "---- km to empty tank". Refuel as soon as possible.

#### NOTE

There may be a slight error in the reading if the driving style has been changed.

### Digital speed display<sup>1</sup>

The speed is shown in the opposite unit (kmh/mph) of the main instrument panel. If the speedometer indicates speed in mph, the display is changed to km/h.

### Resetting with "Analog"

1. Select --- km/h average speed or --.- l/100km average.
2. A brief press (approx. 1 second) on **RESET** resets the selected function.

### Resetting with "Digital"

Find "Reset" in the menu system and select that option.

"Reset" is also activated via a long press (4 seconds) on **RESET**. The displayed trip meter (T1 or T2) is also reset.

### Changing unit

To change unit (metric/imperial) for distance and speed - go to **MY CAR** → **Settings** → **System options** → **Distance and fuel units**, see page 203.

#### NOTE

In addition to the trip computer, these units are also changed at the same time in Volvo's GPS navigator RTI.

<sup>1</sup> For "Digital" instrument panel only.



## Trip computer

### Trip statistics\*

The car stores information on completed trips, including average fuel consumption and average speed. These can be viewed on the TV screen as a block diagram.

### Function



Trip statistics.

Each block symbolises 1 km or 10 km, depending on which scale is selected. The diagram displays 10 blocks: Blocks 1-9 show the last 9 or 90 km driven - the block at the far right shows the value of the kilometre or 10 km current being driven.

With the **TUNE** wheel, the scale of each block can be switched between 1 km and 10 km - the cursor at the far right shifts position between up and down depending on the scale selected.

### Operation

A setting can be made in the **MY CAR** menu system:

**MY CAR** → **My V40** → **Trip statistics**:

- **Start new trip** - **ENTER** is used to clear all previous statistics. Back out of the menu with **EXIT**.
- **Reset for every driving cycle** - mark the box with **ENTER** and back out of the menu with **EXIT**.

With the "**Reset for every driving cycle**" option marked, all statistics are automatically cleared after the car is parked and stationary for 4 hours. The next time the engine is started, trip statistics start again from zero.

If a new driving cycle is started before the 4 hours have elapsed, the current period must first be deleted manually using the "**Start new trip**" option.

See also the information on Eco Guide on page 121.

**Adapting driving characteristics****Speed related power steering\***

Steering force increases with the speed of the car to give the driver enhanced sensitivity. The steering is firmer and more immediate on motorways. Steering is light and requires no extra effort when parking and at low speed.

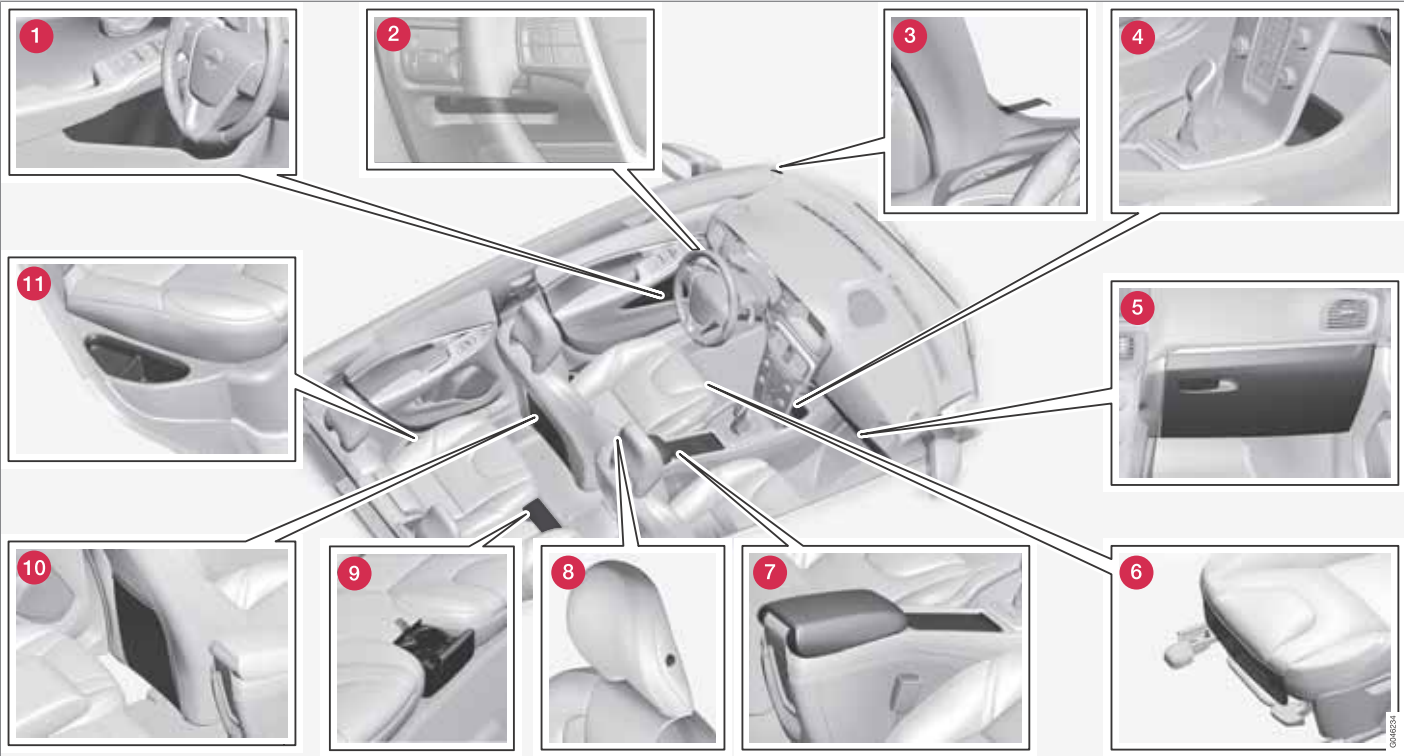
The driver can choose between three different levels of steering force for road responsiveness or steering sensitivity. Go to the menu system **MY CAR** and locate **Settings → Car settings → Steering wheel force** and select **Low**, **Medium** or **High**.

For a description of the menu system, see page 203. This menu cannot be accessed while the car is in motion.



## Comfort inside the passenger compartment

### Storage spaces



05





## Comfort inside the passenger compartment

- 1 Storage compartment<sup>1</sup> in door panel
- 2 Storage compartment, driver's side
- 3 Ticket clip
- 4 Storage compartment
- 5 Glovebox
- 6 Storage pocket\* <sup>2</sup>on front edge of front seat cushions
- 7 Storage compartment, cup holder
- 8 Jacket holder
- 9 Cup holder\* in rear seat
- 10 Storage pocket<sup>2</sup>
- 11 Storage compartment, rear seat

### WARNING

Keep loose objects such as mobile phones, cameras, remote controls for accessories, etc. in the glove compartment or other compartments. Otherwise they may injure people in the car in the event of sudden braking or a collision.

### Storage compartment, driver's side

#### WARNING

Do not keep any sharp objects in the compartment, or objects which protrude.

### Jacket holder

The jacket holder is only designed for light clothing.

### Tunnel console



- 1 Storage compartment (e.g. for CDs) and USB\*/AUX input under the armrest.
- 2 Includes cup holder for driver and passenger. (If ashtray and cigarette lighter are

specified then there is a cigarette lighter in the 12 V socket for the front seat, see page 236, and a detachable ashtray in the cup holder.)

### Armrest

When closed, the armrest can be adjusted\* longitudinally.

### Cigarette lighter and ashtray\*

The ashtray in the tunnel console is detached by lifting the tray straight up.

Activate the lighter by pushing in the button. The button pops out when the lighter is hot. Pull out the lighter and light a cigarette on the heated coils.

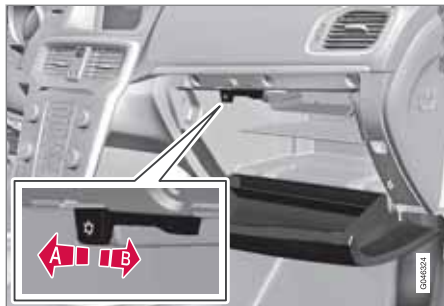
<sup>1</sup> With ice scraper holder on the driver's side.

<sup>2</sup> Not applicable to textile upholstery.



## Comfort inside the passenger compartment

### Glovebox



The owner's manual and maps can be kept here for example. There are also holders for pens on the inside of the lid. The glovebox can be locked\* using the key blade, see pages 46 and 56.

### Cooling<sup>3</sup>

The glovebox can also be used as a cooled area.

- A** Start cooling by moving the control in towards the passenger compartment to the end position.
- B** Switch off the cooling by moving the control forwards to the end position.

<sup>3</sup> Applicable only to cars with ECC.

Cooling is active when the climate control system is active, i.e. when the key is in position II or the engine is running.

### Inlay mats\*

Volvo supplies specially manufactured inlay mats.

#### **WARNING**

Before setting off check that the inlaid mat in the driver area is firmly affixed and secured in the pins in order to avoid getting caught adjacent to and under the pedals.

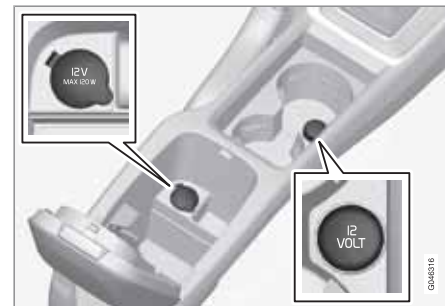
### Vanity mirror



*Vanity mirror with lighting.*

The light illuminates automatically when the cover is lifted.

### 12 V socket



*12 V socket in tunnel console, front seat.*

The electrical sockets can be used for various accessories designed for 12 V, e.g. TV screens, music players and mobile phones. For the sockets to supply current, the remote control key must be in at least key position I, see page 79.

#### **WARNING**

Always leave the plug in the socket when the socket is not in use.

**Comfort inside the passenger compartment**** NOTE**

Optional equipment and accessories - e.g. TV screens, music players and mobile phones - which are connected to one of the passenger compartment's 12V electrical sockets, could be activated by the climate control system, even when the remote control key has been removed or when the car is locked, for example, when the parking heater is activated at a preset time.

For this reason remove the plugs from the electrical sockets for optional equipment or accessories when not in use because the battery could be drained in the event of such an occurrence!

** IMPORTANT**

Max. power takeoff is 10 A (120 W) in either socket.

** NOTE**

The compressor for temporary emergency puncture repair has been tested and approved by Volvo. For information on the use of Volvo's recommended temporary emergency puncture repair (TMK), see page 320.

**Electrical socket in cargo area\***

For more information, see page 296.

General information on infotainment.....	240
Radio.....	250
Media player.....	257
External audio source via AUX/USB* input.....	261
Media Bluetooth®* .....	264
Bluetooth® handsfree*.....	267
Voice recognition* mobile phone.....	275
TV*.....	279
Remote control* .....	282



# 06

INFOTAINMENT SYSTEM





# 06 Infotainment system

## General information on infotainment

### General

The Infotainment system consists of a radio, media player, TV\* and the option to communicate with a mobile phone\*. Information is presented on a 5 or 7-inch\* colour screen in the upper section of the centre console. Functions can be controlled via buttons in the steering wheel, under the colour display in the centre console or via a remote control\*. The mobile phone can also be voice-controlled in certain cases.

If the Infotainment System is active when the engine is switched off then it is automatically activated the next time the key is inserted into key position I or higher, and it continues with the same source (e.g. radio) as before the engine was switched off (the driver's door must be closed on cars with Keyless systems\*).

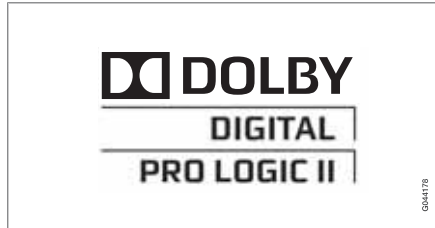
The infotainment system can be used for 15 minutes at a time without the remote control key being in the ignition switch by pressing the On/Off button.

When the car is being started the infotainment system is switched off temporarily and continues when the engine has started.

**i NOTE**

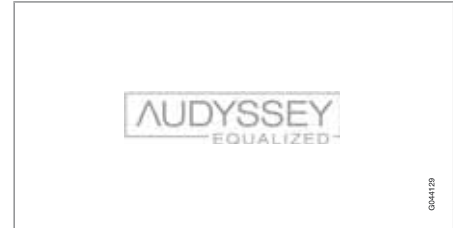
Remove the remote control key from the ignition switch if the infotainment system is used when the engine is switched off. This is to avoid discharging the battery unnecessarily.

### Dolby, Pro Logic<sup>1</sup>



Made under license from Dolby Laboratories. Dolby, Pro Logic and the double-D symbol are trademarks of Dolby Laboratories.

### Audyssey MultEQ<sup>1</sup>



The Audyssey MultEQ system has been used in the development and tuning of the sound to ensure a world-class sound experience.

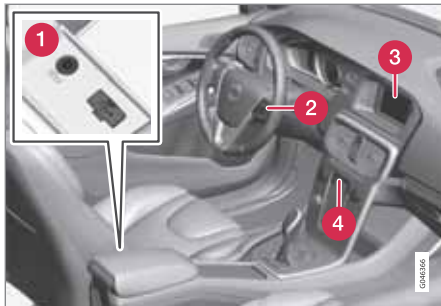
<sup>1</sup> Only applies to Premium Sound Multimedia.

\* Option/accessory, for more information, see Introduction.



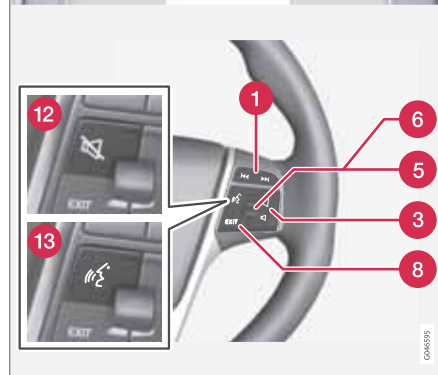
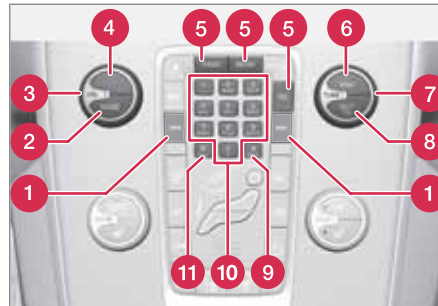
## General information on infotainment

## Overview



- 1 AUX<sup>2</sup> and USB<sup>3</sup> inputs for external audio sources (e.g. iPod<sup>®</sup>)
- 2 Steering wheel keypad (with\*/without thumbwheel).
- 3 TV screen. The TV screen is available in two sizes: 5 and 7-inch. The manual shows a 7-inch TV screen.
- 4 Centre console control panel

## Operating the system



1 **Scroll/fast forward/search** - A **short press** scrolls among tracks or preset radio stations<sup>4</sup>. A **long press** fast forwards through disc tracks or searches for the next available radio station.

2 **SOUND** - press for access to audio settings (bass, treble, etc.). For more information, see page 245.

3 **VOL** - raise or lower volume.

4 **ON/OFF/MUTE** - **short press** starts the system and **long press** (until the screen is off) switches off. Note that the whole of the Sensus system (including navigation \* and phone functions\*) starts/switches off at the same time. Briefly press to mute the sound (MUTE) or restore the sound if it had been switched off.

5 **Main sources** - press to select the main source (e.g. **RADIO**, **MEDIA**). Last active source is shown (e.g. **FM1**). A new source view is selected if the main source button is pressed while in **RADIO** or **MEDIA**. If you are in **TEL\*** or **NAV\*** and press the main source button then a shortcut menu is shown with commonly used menu options.

<sup>2</sup> Applicable to Performance only

<sup>3</sup> Not applicable to Performance

<sup>4</sup> Does not apply to DAB.



### General information on infotainment

**6 OK/MENU** - press the thumbwheel in the steering wheel or the button in the centre console to accept a menu selection. If **OK/MENU** is pressed while in the normal view, a menu for the selected source opens (e.g. **RADIO** or **MEDIA**). Arrow to the right of the screen is shown when there are underlying menus.

**7 TUNE** - turn the thumbwheel in the steering wheel or the knob in the centre console to scroll among tracks/folders, radio and TV\* stations, phone contacts\* or to navigate among choices on the TV screen.

**8 EXIT - short press** leads upwards in the menu system, interrupts current function, interrupts/rejects phone calls or erases entered characters. A **long press** leads to the normal view or, if already in the normal view, to the highest menu level (main source view). From there you can reach the same main source buttons as those on the centre console (4).

**9 INFO** - If more information than can be shown on the screen is available, press the **INFO** button to see the remaining information.

**10** Preset buttons, input of numbers and letters.

**11 FAV** – shortcut to a favourite setting. The button can be programmed for a commonly used function in AM, FM, etc. For more information, see page 244.

**12 MUTE**<sup>5</sup> - press to switch off the radio/media audio or restore the audio if it has been switched off.

**13 Voice recognition**<sup>6</sup> - press to activate voice recognition (for mobile phone and navigation system connected via Bluetooth®\*).

<sup>5</sup> Cars without navigation.

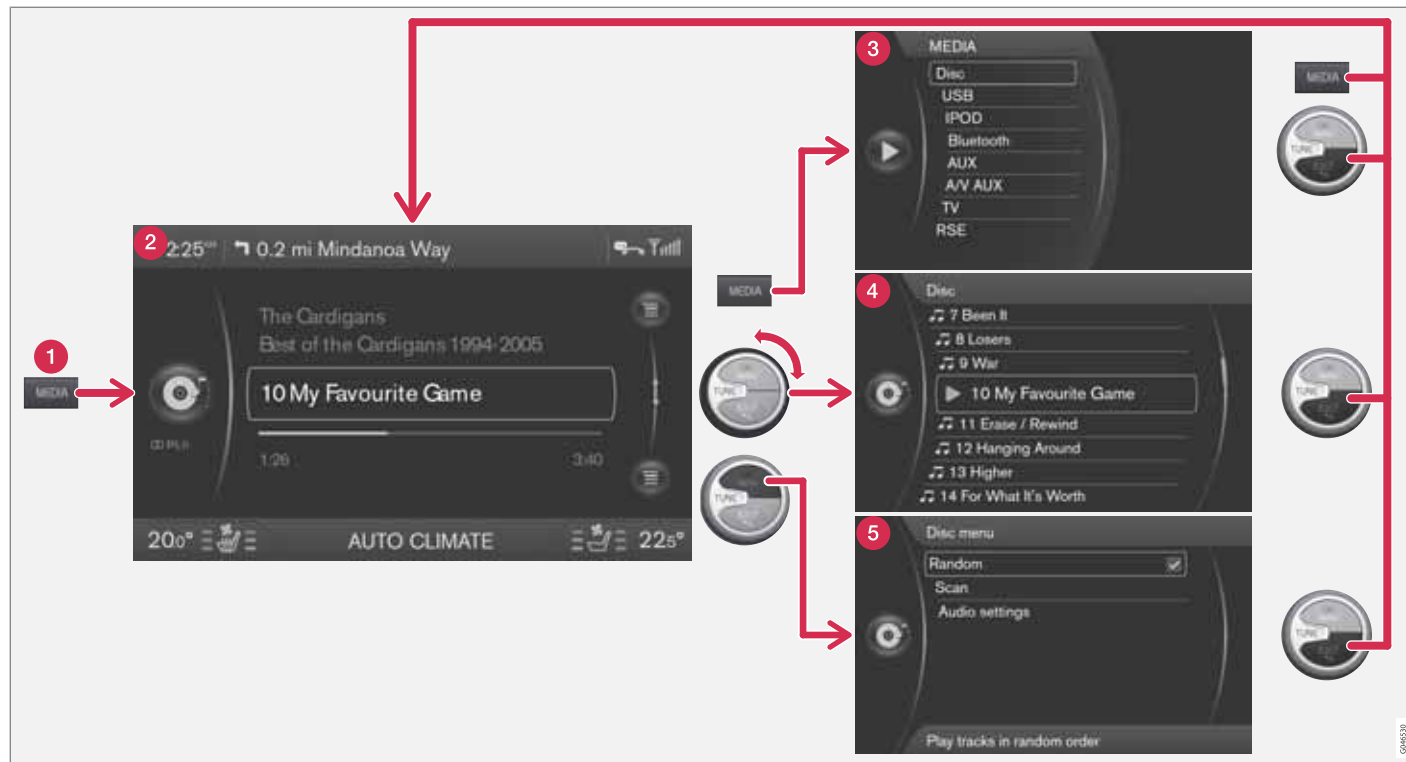
<sup>6</sup> Cars with navigation\*.





## General information on infotainment

## Menus



The example shows navigation to different functions when a disc is played back. (1) Main source button, (2) Normal view, (3) Shortcut/source menu, (4) Quick menu, (5) Source menu



## General information on infotainment

Select main source by pressing a main source button (1) (**RADIO, MEDIA, TEL**). To navigate through the source menus, use the controls **TUNE, OK/MENU, EXIT** or the main source button (1).

For Menu overview, see page 246.

### NOTE

If the car is equipped with a steering wheel keypad with a thumbwheel\*, these can be used instead of the controls in the centre console (**TUNE, OK/MENU, EXIT**), see page 241.

### Menus and views in the TV screen

The appearance depends on the source, equipment in the car, settings, etc.

- 1 **Main source button** - press to switch the main source or to show the Shortcut/Source menu in the active source.
- 2 **Normal view** - normal mode for the source.
- 3 **Shortcut/Source menu** - shows commonly used menu options in the main sources, e.g. **TEL** and **MEDIA** (accessed by pressing the active source's main source button (1)).
- 4 **Quick menu** - fast mode when **TUNE** is turned, e.g. for changing disc tracks, radio station, etc.

5 **Source menu** - for menu navigation (accessed by pressing **OK/MENU**).

### FAV - store a preset



The **FAV** button can be used to store functions that are used frequently so that the function can be started simply by pressing **FAV**. You can select a favourite (e.g. **Equalizer**) for each function as follows:

In **RADIO** mode:

- AM
- FM1/FM2
- DAB1\*/DAB2\*

In **MEDIA** mode:

- DISC
- USB\*

- iPod\*
- Bluetooth\*
- AUX
- TV\*

It is also possible to select and store a favourite for **MY CAR, CAM\*** and **NAV\***. Favourites can also be selected and stored under **MY CAR**. For more information on the menu system **MY CAR**, see page 203.

To store a function in the **FAV** button:



1. Select a main source (e.g. **RADIO, MEDIA**).
2. Select a wavelength or source (**AM, Disc, etc.**).
3. Press and hold the **FAV** button until the "favourites menu" is shown.
4. Turn **TUNE** to select an option from the list and press **OK/MENU** to save.
  - > When the main source (e.g. **RADIO, MEDIA**) is active the stored function is available via a short press on **FAV**.

**General information on infotainment****General audio settings**

Press **SOUND** to access the audio settings menu (**Bass**, **Treble**, etc.). Scroll forward with **SOUND** or **OK/MENU** to your selection (e.g. **Treble**).

Adjust the setting by turning **TUNE** and save the setting with **OK/MENU**.

Continue pressing **SOUND** or **OK/MENU** to access other options:

- **Surround**<sup>7</sup> - Can be set to the On/Off position. When On is selected, the system selects the setting for optimal sound reproduction. Normally DPLII and  then appear in the TV screen. If the recording is made with Dolby Digital technology then playback will take place with this setting,  then appears in the TV screen. When Off is selected, 3-channel stereo is available.
- **Bass** - Bass level.
- **Treble** - Treble level.
- **Fader** – Balance between the front and rear speakers.
- **Balance** – Balance between the left and right-hand speakers.

- **Subwoofer**<sup>\*7</sup> - Bass speaker level.
- **DPL II centre level**<sup>3</sup> **channel centre level**<sup>7</sup> - Volume for centre speaker.
- **DPL II surround level**<sup>7,8</sup> – Level for surround.

**Advanced audio settings****Equalizer**<sup>9</sup>

The volume level can be adjusted separately for different wavelengths.

1. Press **OK/MENU** to access **Audio settings** and select **Equalizer**.
2. Select wavelength by turning **TUNE** and confirm with **OK/MENU**.
3. Adjust the audio settings by turning **TUNE** and confirm with **OK/MENU**. Continue in the same way with other wavelengths you want to change.
4. When you have finished with audio settings, press **EXIT** to confirm and return to normal view.

For general information on menu navigation, see page 243 and menu overview, see page 246.

**Sound stage**<sup>7</sup>

The sound experience can be optimised for the driver's seat, both front seats or the rear seat. If there are passengers in both the front and rear seats then the option recommended is; both front seats. The options can be selected under **Audio settings** → **Sound stage**.

For general information on menu navigation, see page 243 and menu overview, see page 246.

**Audio volume and automatic volume control**

The audio system compensates for disrupting noises in the passenger compartment by increasing the volume in relation to the speed of the car. The compensation level can be set to low, medium, high or off. Select the level under **Audio settings** → **Volume compensation**.

For general information on menu navigation, see page 243 and menu overview, see page 246.

**External audio source audio volume**

If an external audio source (e.g. an MP3 player or iPod<sup>®</sup>) is connected to the AUX input then

<sup>7</sup> Only Premium Sound Multimedia.

<sup>8</sup> Only when Surround is activated.

<sup>9</sup> Not Performance.



## General information on infotainment

the audio source that is connected can have a different volume than the audio system's internal volume (e.g. radio). Correct this by adjusting the volume of the input:

1. Press the **MEDIA** button and turn **TUNE** to **AUX** and wait a few seconds or press **OK/MENU**.
2. Press **OK/MENU** and then turn **TUNE** to **AUX input volume**. Confirm with **OK/MENU**.
3. Turn **TUNE** to adjust the volume for the AUX input.



### NOTE

If the external audio source's volume is too high or too low, the quality of the sound may deteriorate. The audio quality may also be impaired if the player is charged while the infotainment system is in AUX mode. In which case, avoid charging the player via the 12 V socket.

### Optimum sound reproduction

The audio system is pre-calibrated for optimum sound reproduction by means of digital signal processing.

This calibration takes into account loudspeakers, amplifiers, passenger compartment acoustics, listener position etc. for each combination of car model and audio system.

There is also a dynamic calibration that takes into account the position of the volume control, radio reception and vehicle speed.

The controls explained in these operating instructions, e.g. **Bass**, **Treble** and **Equalizer**, are only intended for the user to be able to adapt the sound reproduction according to personal taste.

### Menu overview

#### Menus RADIO

##### Main menu AM AM menu

Show presets<sup>10</sup>

Scan

Audio settings<sup>11</sup>

Sound stage<sup>12</sup>

Equalizer<sup>13</sup>

Volume compensation

Reset all audio settings

#### Main menu FM1/FM2

##### FM menu

TP

Show radio text

Show presets<sup>10</sup>

Scan

News settings

<sup>10</sup>Only applies to High Performance Multimedia and Premium Sound Multimedia.

<sup>11</sup>The menu options for audio settings are the same for all audio sources.

<sup>12</sup>Only applies to Premium Sound Multimedia.

<sup>13</sup>Does not apply to Performance.



## General information on infotainment

Advanced settings

REG

Alternative frequency

EON

Set TP favourite

PTY settings

Reset all FM settings

Audio settings<sup>14</sup>

### Main menu DAB1\*/DAB2\*

#### DAB menu

Ensemble learn

PTY filtering

Turn off PTY filtering

Show radio text

Show presets<sup>10</sup>

Scan

Advanced settings

DAB linking

DAB band

Sub channels

Show PTY text

Reset all DAB settings

Audio settings<sup>14</sup>

### Menus MEDIA

#### Main menu CD Audio

##### Disc menu

Random

Scan

Audio settings<sup>14</sup>

#### Main menu CD/DVD<sup>10</sup> Data

##### Disc menu

Play/Pause

Stop

Random

Repeat folder

Change subtitles

Change audio track

Scan

Audio settings<sup>14</sup>

#### Main menu DVD<sup>10</sup> Video

##### DVD Video Menu

DVD disc menu

Play/Pause/Continue

Stop

Subtitles

Audio tracks

Advanced settings

Angle

DivX® VOD code

Audio settings<sup>14</sup>

#### Main menu iPod<sup>13</sup>

##### iPod menu

Random

Scan

Audio settings<sup>14</sup>

#### Main menu USB<sup>13</sup>

##### USB menu

Play/Pause

<sup>14</sup>For submenus, see "Main menu AM".

<sup>10</sup>Only applies to High Performance Multimedia and Premium Sound Multimedia.

<sup>13</sup>Does not apply to Performance.



## General information on infotainment

- Stop
- Random
- Repeat folder
- Select USB device
- Change subtitles
- Change audio track
- Scan
- Audio settings<sup>14</sup>

### Main menu Media Bluetooth<sup>13</sup> Bluetooth menu

- Random
- Change device
- Remove Bluetooth device
- Scan
- Bluetooth software version in car
- Audio settings<sup>14</sup>

### Main menu AUX AUX menu

- AUX input volume
- Audio settings<sup>14</sup>

### Main menu TV\* TV menu

- Select country
- Reorganise presets
- Autostore
- Scan
- Audio settings<sup>14</sup>

### Pop-up menu<sup>15</sup> video and TV\*

Press **OK/MENU** when a video file is being played back or TV\* is being shown in order to access the pop-up menu.

- Image settings
- Source menu<sup>16</sup>
- DVD disc menu<sup>17</sup>
- DVD disc TOP menu<sup>17</sup>

### Menus TEL

#### Main menu Bluetooth® handsfree<sup>13</sup> Phone menu

- All calls
- All calls
- Missed calls
- Answered calls
- Dialled calls
- Call duration
- Phone book
- Search
- New contact
- Speed dials
- Receive vCard
- Memory status
- Clear phone book
- Change phone
- Remove Bluetooth device

<sup>14</sup>For submenus, see "Main menu AM".

<sup>13</sup>Does not apply to Performance.

<sup>15</sup>Only applies when playing back videos or displaying TV\*.

<sup>16</sup>What is shown in the pop-up menu for the source menu depends on what is being played back or displayed, it can be e.g. CD/DVD data menu or USB menu.

<sup>17</sup>Only applies to DVD video discs.



## General information on infotainment

### Phone settings

Discoverable

Sounds and volume

Download phone book

Bluetooth software version in  
car

### Call options

Auto answer

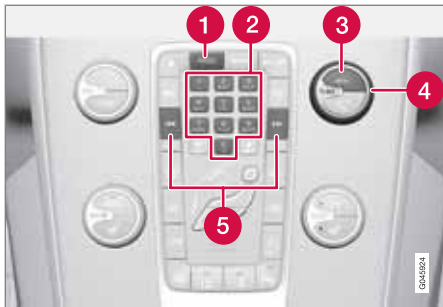
Voicemail number

Disconnect phone



## Radio

### General



Centre console, controls for radio functions.

- 1 **RADIO** button for selecting the wavelength (AM, FM1, FM2, DAB1\*, DAB2\*).
- 2 Station presets (0-9)
- 3 Confirm your selection or go to the radio menu by pressing **OK/MENU**.
- 4 Select the desired frequency/station or navigate in the radio menu by turning **TUNE**.
- 5 Hold in the button for next/previous available station. Short press for preset.

### NOTE

If the car is equipped with a steering wheel keypad\* and/or remote control\* then in many cases these can be used instead of the buttons in the centre console. For a description of the buttons in the steering wheel, see page 241. For a description of the remote control, see page 282.

### Menus

The menus in **RADIO** are controlled from the centre console and the steering wheel keypad\*. For general information on menu navigation, see page 243 and menu overview, see page 246.

### Radio AM/FM

#### Tuning

### NOTE

The reception is dependent both on how good the signal strength and signal quality are. The transmission may be disturbed by various factors such as tall buildings or the transmitter being far away. Coverage level can also vary depending on where in the country you are located.

### Automatic tuning

1. Press **RADIO**, turn **TUNE** until the desired wavelength (**AM**, **FM1** etc.) is shown, press **OK/MENU**.
2. Hold in **◀◀** / **▶▶** in the centre console (or in the steering wheel keypad\*). The radio searches for the next/previous available station.

### Station list<sup>1</sup>

The radio automatically compiles a list of the strongest FM stations whose signals it is currently receiving. This enables you to find a station when you drive into an area where you do not know the radio stations and their frequencies.

To go to the list and select a station:

1. Select the desired wavelength (**FM1** or **FM2**).
2. Turn **TUNE** one step in either direction. This displays the list of all stations in the area. The currently tuned station is indicated with enlarged text in the list.
3. Turn **TUNE** again in either direction to select a station from the list.
4. Confirm your choice by pressing **OK/MENU**.

<sup>1</sup> Does not apply to Performance.

\* Option/accessory, for more information, see Introduction.





## Radio

**i** NOTE

- The list only shows the frequencies of stations that are currently being received, **not** a complete list of all radio frequencies on the selected wavelength.
- If the signal from the currently received station is weak, this may prevent the radio from updating the station list. If this occurs, press the **#INFO** button (while the station list is shown in the display screen) in order to change to manual tuning and set a frequency. If the station list is no longer shown, turn **TUNE** one step in either direction to show the list again, and press **#INFO** to switch.

The list disappears from the TV screen after a few seconds.

If the station list is no longer shown, turn **TUNE** one step in either direction and press the **#INFO** button in the centre console to change to manual tuning (or to return from manual tuning to the function for "Station list").

**Manual tuning**

The preset from the factory is that the radio shows the station list of the strongest stations

in the area when you turn **TUNE** (see the section "Station list", page 250). When the station list is shown, press the **#INFO** button in the centre console to change to manual tuning. This allows you to select a frequency from the list of all available radio frequencies in the selected wavelength. In other words, if turn **TUNE** one step in a manual search the frequency is changed from e.g. 93.3 to 93.4 MHz, etc.

To manually select a station:

1. Press the **RADIO** button, turn **TUNE** until the required frequency band (**AM**, **FM1** etc.) is displayed, press **OK/MENU**.
2. Turn **TUNE** to select a frequency.

**i** NOTE

The preset from the factory is that the radio automatically searches for the stations in the area where you are driving (see previous section "Station list" above).

But if you have changed over to manual tuning (by pressing the **#INFO** button in the centre console when the station list was shown), then the radio remains set in the function for manual tuning the next time you switch on the radio. To change back to the function for "Station list", turn **TUNE** one step (to show the complete list of stations) and press the button **#INFO**.

Note that if you press **#INFO** when the station list is not shown then **INFO** is activated. For more information on this function, see page 241.

**Preset**

10 presets can be stored per wavelength (**AM**, **FM1** etc.).

The stored presets are selected using the preset buttons.

1. Tune into a station (see "Tuning", page 250).
2. Hold in one of the preset buttons for a few seconds, the sound disappears during this



## 06 Infotainment system

### Radio

time and returns when the station is stored. The preset button can now be used.

A list of pre-selected channels can be shown<sup>2</sup> in the TV screen. The function is activated/deactivated in FM/AM mode under **FM menu** → **Show presets** or **AM menu** → **Show presets**.

#### RDS functions

RDS (Radio Data System) links FM transmitters into a network. An FM transmitter in such a network sends information that gives an RDS radio the following functions:

- Automatically switches to a stronger transmitter if reception in the area is poor.
- Searches for programme type, such as traffic information or news.
- Receives text information on current radio programme.



#### NOTE

Some radio stations do not use RDS or only selected parts of its functionality.

If a required programme type is located the radio can switch stations interrupting the audio source currently in use. For example, if the CD

player is in use, it is paused. The interrupting transmission is played at a preset volume, see page 254. The radio returns to the previous audio source and volume when the set programme type is no longer broadcast.

The programme functions alarm (**ALARM!**), traffic information (**TP**), news (**NEWS**), and programme types (**PTY**) interrupt one another in order of priority, where alarm has the highest priority and programme types has the lowest. For additional settings of programming interruptions (**EON Distant** and **EON Local**), see the section "Enhanced Other Networks – EON" below. Press **EXIT** to return to the interrupted audio source, press the **OK/MENU** to clear the message.

#### Alarm

This function is used to warn of serious accidents and catastrophes. The alarm cannot be temporarily interrupted or deactivated. The message **ALARM!** appears on the TV screen when an alarm message is transmitted.

#### Traffic information – TP

This function allows traffic information sent within a set station's RDS network to break through. The **TP** symbol indicates that the function is activated. If the preset station can

send traffic information then this is shown by **TP** glowing brightly in the TV screen, otherwise **TP** will be grey.

- Activate/deactivate in FM mode under **FM menu** → **TP**.

#### Enhanced Other Networks – EON

This function is useful in urban areas with many regional radio stations. It allows the distance between the car and the radio station transmitter to determine when programme functions should interrupt the current audio source.

- Activate/deactivate in FM mode by selecting one of the options under **FM menu** → **Advanced settings** → **EON**:
- **Local** – interrupts only if the radio station transmitter is close.
- **Distant**<sup>3</sup> – interrupts if the station transmitter is far away, even if there is a lot of static.

#### TP from selected station/all stations

The radio can only interrupt for traffic information from the selected station or all stations within the RDS network.

- Go in FM mode to **FM menu** → **Advanced settings** → **Set TP favourite** to change.

<sup>2</sup> Only applies to High Performance Multimedia and Premium Sound Multimedia.

<sup>3</sup> Factory settings.



## News

This function allows news broadcasts sent within a set station's RDS network to break through. The **NEWS** symbol indicates that the function is active.

- Activate/deactivate in FM mode under **FM menu** → **News settings** → **News**.

## News from selected station/all stations

The radio can only interrupt for news from the selected station or all stations in the RDS network.

- Go in FM mode to **FM menu** → **News settings** → **Set news favourite** to change.

## Programme types – PTY

The PTY function can be used to select one or more programme types, such as pop music and serious classic. The PTY symbol indicates that the function is active. This function allows programme types broadcast within a set station's RDS network to break through.

1. Activate in FM mode by first selecting the programme types under **FM menu** → **Advanced settings** → **PTY settings** → **Select PTY**.

2. Then the PTY function must be activated under **FM menu** → **Advanced settings** → **PTY settings** → **Receive traffic bulletins from other networks**.

An indicator is shown in the TV screen when PTY is activated.

Deactivation of the PTY function is performed in FM mode under **FM menu** → **Advanced settings** → **PTY settings** → **Receive traffic bulletins from other networks**. Selected programme types (PTY) are not reset.

Resetting and removing PTY are performed under **FM menu** → **Advanced settings** → **PTY settings** → **Select PTY** → **Clear all**.

## PTY search

This function searches the entire wavelength for the selected programme type.

1. In FM mode select one or more PTY under **FM menu** → **Advanced settings** → **PTY settings** → **Select PTY**.
2. Go to **FM menu** → **Advanced settings** → **PTY settings** → **Seek PTY**.

To finish searching, press **EXIT**.

- To continue searching for another broadcast of the selected programme types, press on **⏮** or **⏭**.

## Display of programme type

The programme type of the current station can be shown on the TV screen.

- Activate/deactivate in FM mode under **FM menu** → **Advanced settings** → **PTY settings** → **Show PTY text**.

## Radio text<sup>4</sup>

Some RDS stations transmit information on programme content, artists, etc. This information can be shown on the TV screen.

- Activate/deactivate in FM mode under **FM menu** → **Show radio text**.

## Automatic frequency update – AF

The function selects the strongest transmitter for the set station. In order to find a strong transmitter the function may, in exceptional cases, need to search the entire FM wavelength.

- Activate/deactivate in FM mode under **FM menu** → **Advanced settings** → **Alternative frequency**.

<sup>4</sup> Only cars with 7-inch screen



## Radio

### Regional radio programmes – REG

This function causes the radio to continue with a regional transmitter even if its signal strength is low. The symbol **REG** shows that the function is active.

- Activate/deactivate in FM mode under **FM menu** → **Advanced settings** → **REG**.

### Resetting RDS functions

All radio settings can be reset to the original factory settings.

- The reset is carried out in FM mode under **FM menu** → **Advanced settings** → **Reset all FM settings**.

### Volume control, programme types

The interrupting programme types, e.g. **NEWS** or **TP**, are heard at the volume selected for each respective programme type. If the volume level is adjusted during the programme interruption, the new level is saved until the next programme interruption.

### Scan wavelength

The function automatically searches for available channels and takes into account any programme type filtering. When a station is found, it is played for approx. 10 seconds before scanning is resumed. When a station is playing back it can be saved as a preset in the usual way, see the section Preset, page 251.

- To start scanning go in FM/AM mode to **FM menu** → **Scan** or **AM menu** → **Scan**.

#### NOTE

Scanning stops if a station is saved.

### Radio system - DAB\*

#### General

DAB (Digital Audio Broadcasting) is a digital broadcasting system for radio. This system supports DAB, DAB+ and DMB.

#### NOTE

Coverage for DAB is not available in all locations. If there is no coverage then the message **No reception** is shown in the display screen.

#### Service and Ensemble

- **Service** - Channel, radio channel (only audio services are supported by the system).
- **Ensemble** - A collection of radio channels on the same frequency.

#### Storing channel groups (Ensemble learn)

When the vehicle is moved to a new broadcasting area, programming of existing channel groups in the area may be necessary.

Programming of channel groups creates an updated list of all available channel groups. The list is not updated automatically.

Programming is carried out in the menu system in DAB mode under **DAB menu** → **Ensemble learn**. Programming can also take place as follows:

1. Turn **TUNE** one step in either direction.
  - > **Ensemble learn** is shown in the list of available channel groups.
2. Press **OK/MENU**.
  - > New programming is started.

Programming can be cancelled with **EXIT**.

#### Navigation in channel group list (Ensemble)

To navigate in and access the channel group list turn **TUNE**. The name of the Ensemble is shown in the upper part of the TV screen. When switching to the new Ensemble the name changes to the new one.

- **Service** - Shows channels irrespective of the channel group to which they are allocated. The list can also be filtered using the selection of programme type (**PTY filtering**), see below.



## Radio

**Scanning**

The function automatically searches the current wavelength for strong stations. When a station is found, it is played for approx. 10 seconds before scanning is resumed. When a station is playing back it is saved as a preset in the usual way. For more information on presets, see "Preset" below.

- Go in DAB mode to **DAB menu** → **Scan** to start scanning.

**NOTE**

Scanning stops if a station is saved.

Scanning can also be selected in DAB-PTY mode. In which case only channels of the pre-selected programme type are played.

**Programme type (PTY)**

Various types of radio programmes can be selected using the programme type function. There are a number of different programme types which also include different programme categories. After selecting a programme type, navigation only takes place within the channels that are broadcasting that type.

Programme type is selected in DAB mode under **DAB menu** → **PTY filtering**. Exit this mode as follows:

- Press **EXIT**.
  - > An indicator is shown in the TV screen when PTY is activated.

In certain cases DAB radio will exit PTY mode when DAB to DAB linking (see below) is implemented.

**Preset**

10 station presets can be stored per wavelength. DAB has 2 memories for presets: **DAB1** and **DAB2**. Storage of presets is made by means of a long press on the desired preset button, for more information see page 251. The stored presets are selected using the preset buttons.

A preset contains one channel but no sub-channels. If a subchannel is being played and a preset is saved then only the main channel is registered. This is because subchannels are temporary. At the next attempt to retrieve the preset, the channel which contained the sub-channel will be played. The preset is not dependent on the channel list.

A list of pre-selected channels can be shown<sup>5</sup> in the TV screen. The function is activated/deactivated in DAB mode under **DAB menu** → **Show presets**.

**NOTE**

The audio system's DAB system does not support all functions in the DAB standard.

**Radio text**

Some radio stations transmit information on programme content, artists, etc. This information is shown on the TV screen.

The function is deactivated/activated in DAB mode under **DAB menu** → **Show radio text**.

**NOTE**

Only one of the functions "**Show radio text**" and "**Show presets**" can be activated at a time. If one of them is activated when the other is already activated, then the previously activated function is deactivated automatically. Both functions can be deactivated.

<sup>5</sup> Only applies to High Performance Multimedia and Premium Sound Multimedia



### Radio

#### Advanced settings

##### DAB to DAB link

DAB to DAB linking means that the DAB radio can go from one channel with poor or no reception to the same channel in another channel group with better reception. There may be a certain delay when changing channel group. There may be a period of silence between the current channel no longer being available to the new channel becoming available.

The function can be activated/deactivated in DAB mode under **DAB menu → Advanced settings → DAB linking**.

##### Wavelength

DAB can be transmitted on two<sup>6</sup> wavelengths:

- **Band III** - covers most areas.
- **LBand** - available only in a few areas.

By selecting for example **Band III** on its own, channel programming takes place more quickly than if both **Band III** and **LBand** have been selected. It is not certain that all channel groups will be found. Wavelength selection does not affect the stored memories.

Wavelengths can be deactivated/activated in DAB mode under **DAB menu → Advanced settings → DAB band**.

#### Subchannel

Secondary components are usually named subchannels. These are temporary and can contain e.g. translations of the main programme into other languages.

If one or more subchannels are broadcast then the **√** symbol is shown to the left of the channel name in the TV screen. A subchannel is indicated by the **-** symbol appearing to the left of the channel name in the TV screen.

Press **▶▶** to access the subchannels.

Subchannels can only be accessed on the selected main channel and not on any other channel without selecting it.

Display of subchannels can be deactivated/activated in DAB mode under **DAB menu → Advanced settings → Sub channels**

#### Programme type text

Some radio stations broadcast information about programme type and programme category, for information on Programme types – PTY, see page 253. This information is shown on the TV screen.

The function is activated/deactivated in DAB mode under **DAB menu → Advanced settings → Show PTY text**.

#### Resetting the DAB settings

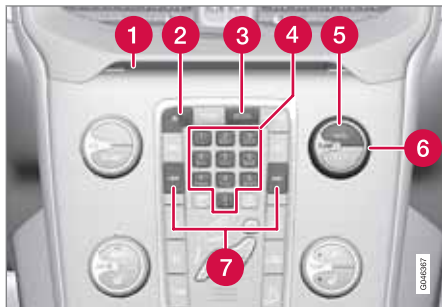
All DAB settings can be reset to the original factory settings.

- The reset is carried out in DAB mode under **DAB menu → Advanced settings → Reset all DAB settings**.

<sup>6</sup> Not all areas/countries use both wavelengths.



## Media player

CD/DVD<sup>1</sup> functions

Centre console control panel.

- 1 Disc insert and eject slot
- 2 Disc eject
- 3 **MEDIA** button, activates last active media source. If you are already in a media source and press the **MEDIA** button then a short-cut menu is shown for commonly used menu options.
- 4 Input of numbers and letters.
- 5 Confirm your selection or go to the menu for the selected media source by pressing **OK/MENU**.

- 6 Select the disc tracks/folders, or navigate through menu options by turning **TUNE**.
- 7 Fast forward/reverse and change disc track or chapter<sup>2</sup>.

The media player supports and can play the following main types of discs and files:

- Pre-recorded CD discs (CD Audio).
- Burned CD discs with audio and/or video files<sup>1</sup>.
- Pre-recorded DVD video discs<sup>1</sup>.
- Burned DVD discs<sup>1</sup> with audio and/or video files.

For more information about the supported formats, see page 260.

### **i** NOTE

If the car is equipped with a steering wheel keypad\* and/or remote control\* then in many cases these can be used instead of the buttons in the centre console. For a description of the buttons in the steering wheel, see page 241. For a description of the remote control, see page 282.

### Menus

The menus in **MEDIA** are controlled from the centre console and the steering wheel key-

pad\*. For general information on menu navigation, see page 243 and menu overview, see page 246.

### Starting playback of a disc

Press the **MEDIA** button, turn **TUNE** until **Disc** is displayed, press **OK/MENU**. If there is a disc in the media player then the disc starts playing back automatically, otherwise **Insert disc** is shown in the TV screen. Then insert a disc, with text side up. The disc starts to play back automatically.

If a disc with audio/video files is inserted into the player then the disc's folder structure needs to be loaded. Depending on the quality of the disc and the quantity of information there may be a certain delay before playback starts.

### Disc eject

A disc remains in the ejected position for about 12 seconds, after which it is inserted back into the player for safety reasons.

### Pause

When the volume is reduced entirely or **MUTE** is pressed, the media player is paused. When the volume is increased or **MUTE** is pressed again, the media player starts. It is also possi-

<sup>1</sup> Only applies to High Performance Multimedia and Premium Sound Multimedia.

<sup>2</sup> Only applies to DVD discs.



## Media player

ble to pause via the menu system<sup>3</sup>, press **OK/MENU**, select **Play/Pause**.

### Playback and navigation

#### CD audio discs




Turn **TUNE** to access the disc's playlist and navigate in the list. Use **OK/MENU** to confirm the selection of the disc track and start playback. Press **EXIT** to cancel and exit the playlist. A long press on **EXIT** leads to the playlist's root level.

Disc tracks can also be changed by pressing on **◀◀ / ▶▶** on the centre console or the steering wheel keypad\*.

#### Burned discs audio/video files<sup>1</sup>

Turn **TUNE** to access the disc's playlist/folder structure and navigate in the list/structure. Use **OK/MENU** to confirm either selection of sub-folder or start of playback of the selected audio/video file. Press **EXIT** to either stop and exit the playlist or go up (back) in the folder structure. A long press on **EXIT** leads to the playlist's root level.

Audio/video files can also be changed by pressing **◀◀ / ▶▶** on the centre console or the steering wheel keypad\*.

Audio files have the symbol , video files<sup>1</sup> have the symbol  and folders have the symbol .

When playback of a file is complete the playback of the other files (of the same type) in that particular folder continues. Change<sup>4</sup> of folder takes place automatically when all the files in the current folder have been played back. The system automatically detects and changes setting when a disc containing only audio files or only video files is loaded into the media player and then plays back these files. However, the system does not change setting if a disc containing a mixture of audio and video files is loaded into the media player, but instead the player continues to play back the previous file type.



### NOTE

A video film is only shown when the car is stationary. When the car is moving at a speed of over about 8 km/h no picture is shown and **No visual media available while driving** appears on the display screen, although the audio is heard during this time. The picture is shown again as soon as the car's speed falls below about 6 km/h.



### NOTE

Some audio files that are copy-protected by record companies or privately copied audio files cannot be loaded by the player.

### DVD video discs<sup>1</sup>

For playback of DVD video discs, see page 259.

### Fast forward/reverse

Hold in the buttons **◀◀ / ▶▶** to fast forward/rewind. Audio files are fast forwarded/rewound at one speed, while video files are fast forwarded/rewound at several speeds. Repeatedly press the buttons **◀◀ / ▶▶** to increase the fast

<sup>3</sup> Does not apply to CD Audio

<sup>1</sup> Only applies to High Performance Multimedia and Premium Sound Multimedia.

<sup>4</sup> If Repeat folder is activated then this does not take place.





## Media player

forward/rewind speed for video files. Release the button to return to viewing at normal speed.

**Scan<sup>5</sup>**

This function plays the first ten seconds of each disc track/audio file. To scan:

1. Press **OK/MENU**
2. Turn **TUNE** to **Scan**
  - > The first 10 seconds of each disc track or audio file are played.
3. Cancel the scan with **EXIT**, the disc track or audio file being played back will continue playing.

**Random<sup>5</sup>**

This function plays the tracks in random order. To listen to the tracks in random order:

1. Press **OK/MENU**
2. Turn **TUNE** to **Random**
3. Press **OK/MENU** to activate/deactivate the function.

Disc tracks/audio files can be changed by pressing **⏮** / **⏭** on the centre console or the steering wheel keypad\*.

**Repeat folder<sup>6</sup>**

This function makes it possible to play files in a folder over and over again. When the last file has been played out, playback of the first file starts again.

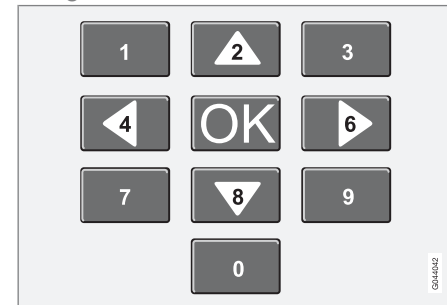
1. Press **OK/MENU**
2. Turn **TUNE** to **Repeat folder**
3. Press **OK/MENU** to activate/deactivate the function.

**Playback of DVD video discs<sup>1</sup>****Playback**

When playing back a DVD video disc a disc menu may appear on the display screen. The disc menu gives access to additional functions and settings, such as selecting subtitles, language and scene selection.

**NOTE**

A video film is only shown when the car is stationary. When the car is moving at a speed of over about 8 km/h no picture is shown and **No visual media available while driving** appears on the display screen, although the audio is heard during this time. The picture is shown again as soon as the car's speed falls below about 6 km/h.

**Navigation in the DVD video disc's menu**

Navigation in the DVD video disc's menu is performed using the number keys in the centre console as illustrated above.

<sup>5</sup> Does not apply to DVD video discs.

<sup>6</sup> Only applies to audio/video files on burned discs or USB.

<sup>1</sup> Only applies to High Performance Multimedia and Premium Sound Multimedia.



## Media player

### Changing chapter or title

Turn **TUNE** to access the list of chapters and navigate through them (if the film is being played back then it is paused). Press **OK/MENU** to select the chapter, this also leads back to the original position (if the film was being played back then it is restarted). Press **EXIT** to access the title list.

Titles are selected in the title list by turning **TUNE** and the selection is confirmed with **OK/MENU**, this also leads back to the chapter list. Press **OK/MENU** to activate the selection and return to the start position. Use **EXIT** to cancel the selection and this leads back to the original position (without any selection being made).

The chapter can also be changed by pressing on **◀◀** / **▶▶** on the centre console or the steering wheel keypad\*.

### Advanced settings<sup>7</sup>

#### Angle

If the DVD video disc supports it, the function can be used to choose from which camera position a particular scene should be shown. Go in disc mode to **Disc menu** → **Advanced settings** → **Angle**.

### DivX® Video On Demand

The media player can be registered in order to play DivX VOD type files from burned discs or USB. The code for registration can be found in the menu system **MY CAR Settings** →

**Information** → **DivX® VOD code**. For general information on menus, see under **MY CAR**, see page 203.

For more information visit [www.divx.com/vod](http://www.divx.com/vod).

### Picture settings<sup>7</sup>

You can adjust the settings (when the car is stationary) for brightness and contrast.

1. Press **OK/MENU** and select **Image settings**, confirm with **OK/MENU**.
2. Turn **TUNE** to the adjustment option and confirm with **OK/MENU**.
3. Adjust the setting by turning **TUNE** and confirm with **OK/MENU**.

To return to the settings list, press the **OK/MENU** or **EXIT**.

The picture settings can be reset to factory settings with the **Reset** option.

### Compatible file formats

The media player can play back a variety of file types and is compatible with the formats in the following table.

#### **i** NOTE

Dual format, double-sided discs (DVD Plus, CD-DVD format) are thicker than regular CD discs and therefore playback cannot be guaranteed and malfunction may arise.

If a CD contains a mixture of MP3 and CDDA tracks, all MP3s will be ignored.

Audio format <sup>A</sup>	CD audio, mp3, wma
Audio format <sup>B</sup>	CD audio, mp3, wma, aac, m4a
Video format <sup>C</sup>	CD video, DVD video, divx, avi, asf

<sup>A</sup> Applies to Performance.

<sup>B</sup> Does not apply to Performance.

<sup>C</sup> Only applies to High Performance Multimedia and Premium Sound Multimedia.

<sup>7</sup> Applies to High Performance Multimedia and Premium Sound Multimedia.



## External audio source via AUX/USB\* input

### General



Connection points for external audio sources.

An external audio source, e.g. an iPod® or MP3 player, can be connected to the audio system via any of the connections in the centre console. An audio source connected to the USB input can then be handled<sup>1</sup> with the car's audio controls. A device connected via the AUX input cannot be controlled via the car.

There is a recess in the right-hand rear edge of the tunnel console where cables can be routed so that the hatch can be closed without cables being pinched.

### **i** NOTE

If the car is equipped with a steering wheel keypad\* and/or remote control\* then in many cases these can be used instead of the buttons in the centre console. For a description of the buttons in the steering wheel, see page 241. For a description of the remote control, see page 282.

An iPod® or MP3 player with rechargeable batteries is recharged (when the ignition is on or the engine is running) if the device is plugged into the USB connection.

To connect the audio source:

1. Press **MEDIA**, turn **TUNE** to the required sound source **USB**, **iPod** or **AUX**, press **OK/MENU**.
  - > If USB is selected then **Connect USB** is shown in the TV screen.
2. Connect your audio source to one of the connections in the centre console's storage compartment (see previous illustration).

The text **Reading USB** is shown in the TV screen when the system is loading the storage media's file structure. Depending on the file

structure and number of files there may be some delay before loading is finished.

### **i** NOTE

The system supports most iPod® models produced in 2005 or later.

### **i** NOTE

To prevent damage to the USB connection, this is shut off if the USB connection is short-circuited or if a connected USB unit is taking too much power (this may happen if the unit connected does not meet the USB standard). The USB connection is reactivated automatically the next time the ignition is turned on, unless the fault persists.

### Menus

The menus in **MEDIA** are controlled from the centre console and the steering wheel keypad\*. For general information on menu navigation, see page 243 and menu overview, see page 246.



<sup>1</sup> Only applies to the media source connected via the USB connection.






### External audio source via AUX/USB\* input

#### Playback and navigation<sup>2</sup>

Turn **TUNE** to access the playlist/folder structure and navigate in the list/structure. Use **OK/MENU** to either confirm selection of subfolder or start of playback of the selected audio/video file. Press **EXIT** to either stop and exit the playlist or go up (back) in the folder structure. A long press on **EXIT** leads to the playlist's root level.

Audio/video files can also be changed by pressing  /  on the centre console or the steering wheel keypad\*.

Audio files have the symbol  , video files<sup>3</sup> have the symbol  and folders have the symbol .

When playback of a file is complete the playback of the other files (of the same type) in that particular folder continues. Change<sup>4</sup> of folder takes place automatically when all the files in the current folder have been played back. The system automatically detects and changes setting when a device containing only audio files or only video files is connected to the USB port and then it plays back these files. However, the system does not change setting if a

device containing a mixture of audio and video files is connected to the USB port, but instead the player continues to play back the previous file type.

#### Fast forward/reverse<sup>2</sup>

See page 258.

#### Scan<sup>2</sup>

See page 259.

#### Random<sup>2</sup>

See page 259.

#### Search function<sup>2</sup>

The keypad on the control panel in the centre console can be used to find a filename in the current folder.

The search function is accessed either by turning **TUNE** (to access the folder structure) or by pressing one of the letter keys. As a letter or character in a search string is entered you get closer to your search target.

Start playback of a file by pressing **OK/MENU**.

#### Repeat folder<sup>5</sup>

See page 259.

#### Pause

When the volume is reduced entirely or MUTE is pressed, the media player is paused. When the volume is increased or MUTE is pressed again, the media player starts. It is also possible to pause via the menu system<sup>6</sup>, press **OK/MENU**, select **Play/Pause**.

#### Audio sources

##### USB memory

To facilitate the use of a USB memory stick, only store music files on it. It takes a lot longer for the system to load storage media that contains anything other than compatible music files.

<sup>2</sup> Only applies to USB and iPod®.

<sup>3</sup> Applies to High Performance Multimedia and Premium Sound Multimedia.

<sup>4</sup> If Repeat folder is activated then this does not take place.

<sup>5</sup> Only applies to USB.

<sup>6</sup> Does not apply to iPod®



## External audio source via AUX/USB\* input

**i** NOTE

The system supports mobile media compliant with USB 2.0 and the FAT32 file system and can handle 1000 folders with a maximum of 254 subfolders/files in every folder. The top level, which can handle up to 1000 subfolders/files, is an exception to this.

**i** NOTE

When using a longer model USB memory stick the use of a USB adapter cable is recommended. This is to avoid mechanical wear to the USB input and the connected USB memory stick.

**USB hub**

It is possible to connect a USB hub to the USB connection and thereby connect multiple USB devices simultaneously. Selection of USB device is made in **USB** mode under **USB menu**  
→ **Select USB device**.

**MP3 player**

Many MP3 players have their own file systems that are not supported by the audio system. For use in the system, an MP3 player must be set in **USB Removable device/Mass Storage Device** mode.

**iPod®**

An iPod® is charged and supplied with power by the USB connection\* via the player's connection cable.

**i** NOTE

The system only supports the playback of audio files from iPod®.

**i** NOTE

When an iPod® is used as audio source, the car's infotainment system has a menu structure that is similar to the iPod® player's own menu structure.

**Compatible file formats via the USB connection**

Audio and video files in the following table are supported by the system for playback via the USB connection.

Audio format	mp3, wma, aac, m4a
Video format <sup>A</sup>	divx, avi, asf

<sup>A</sup> Only applies to High Performance Multimedia and Premium Sound Multimedia.



## Media Bluetooth®\*

### General

The car's media player is equipped with Bluetooth®<sup>1</sup> and can wirelessly play streaming audio files from external devices with Bluetooth®, such as mobile phones and PDAs. Navigation and control of the sound can be carried out via the centre console buttons or via the steering wheel keypad\*. In some external devices it is also possible to change tracks from the device.

To play back the audio the car's media player must first be set in **Bluetooth** mode.

### NOTE

The Bluetooth® media player must support the Audio/Video Remote Control Profile (AVRCP) and Advanced Audio Distribution Profile (A2DP). The player should use AVRCP version 1.3, A2DP 1.2. Otherwise some functions may not work.

Not all mobile phones and external media players available in the market are fully compatible with the Bluetooth® function in the car's media player. Volvo recommends that you contact an authorised Volvo dealer or visit [www.volvocars.com](http://www.volvocars.com) for information on compatible phones and external media players.

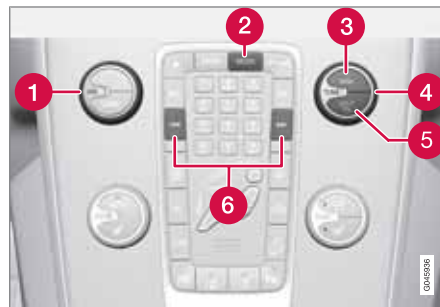
### NOTE

The car's media player can only play the audio files via the Bluetooth® function.

### Menus

The menus in **MEDIA** are controlled from the centre console and the steering wheel keypad\*. For general information on menu navigation, see page 243 and menu overview, see page 246.

### Overview



Centre console control panel.

- 1 **VOL** – volume.
- 2 **MEDIA** button. Last active source (e.g. iPod®) is activated automatically. If a

source is activated and you press **MEDIA** then a shortcut menu is shown with commonly used menu options.

- 3 Confirm your selection or go to the menu by pressing **OK/MENU**.
- 4 Navigate in the menu by turning **TUNE**.
- 5 **EXIT** - leads up in the menu system, stops the function in progress.
- 6 **Short presses** are used to scroll between audio files. **Long presses** are used to fast forward and rewind audio files.

### NOTE

If the car is equipped with a steering wheel keypad\* and/or remote control\* then in many cases these can be used instead of the buttons in the centre console. For a description of the buttons in the steering wheel, see page 241. For a description of the remote control, see page 282.

<sup>1</sup> Applies to High Performance, High Performance Multimedia and Premium Sound Multimedia.

\* Option/accessory, for more information, see Introduction.

**Media Bluetooth®\*****Getting started****Connect an external Bluetooth® device**

A maximum of ten external devices can be registered. The connection is made in the same way as for the phone, see Connect an external Bluetooth® device, page 268.

**Automatic connection**

When the Bluetooth® function is active and the last external device connected is in range it is connected automatically. When the infotainment system searches for the last device connected its name is shown in the TV screen. To connect to another device, press **EXIT**. Connect a new external device, see "Change to another external device" below.

**Change to another external device**

It is possible to change a connected device with another device if there are several devices in the car. However, the device must first have been paired, see "Connect an external Bluetooth® device" above. To change to another device:

1. Press **MEDIA**, turn **TUNE** until **Bluetooth** is displayed, press **OK/MENU**.

2. Check that the external device is searchable/visible via Bluetooth®, see the manual for the external device.
3. Press **OK/MENU**.
4. Turn **TUNE** to **Change device**, and confirm with **OK/MENU**.
  - > After a while, the external device's name is shown in the TV screen. If several external devices have been paired then these are also shown.
5. Select the device to be connected by turning **TUNE** and confirm with **OK/MENU**.
  - > Connection of the external device takes place.

Change audio file by pressing **◀◀** / **▶▶** on the centre console or the steering wheel keypad\*.

**Disconnecting the device**

Automatic disconnection takes place if the external device moves out of the infotainment system's range. For more information on connection, see page 265.

**Remove the connected device**

1. Press Bluetooth mode on **OK/MENU**.
2. Turn **TUNE** to **Remove Bluetooth device** and confirm with **OK/MENU**.

3. Select the device to be removed by turning **TUNE**, and confirm with **OK/MENU**.
  - > A prompt asking whether or not you want to remove the connection is shown in the TV screen.
4. Press **OK/MENU** to confirm.

**EXIT** cancels.

**Random<sup>2</sup>**

This function plays back the audio files on the external device in random order. Activate/deactivate the random function in Bluetooth mode under **Bluetooth menu** → **Random**.

Change audio file by pressing **◀◀** / **▶▶** on the centre console or the steering wheel keypad\*.

**Scanning of audio files in external device<sup>2</sup>**

This function play backs the first ten seconds of each audio file. Activate/deactivate the function in Bluetooth mode under **Bluetooth menu** → **Scan**.

Cancel scanning with **EXIT**.

<sup>2</sup> Not supported by all mobile phones.



### Media Bluetooth®\*

#### Version information Bluetooth®

The car's current Bluetooth® version can be seen in Bluetooth mode under **Bluetooth** menu → **Bluetooth software version in car**.





## Bluetooth® handsfree\*

### General

A mobile phone equipped with Bluetooth® can be connected wirelessly to the Infotainment system<sup>1</sup>. The infotainment system then works handsfree, with the option to control a range of the mobile phone's functions remotely. The microphone used is located by the driver's sun visor (2). The mobile phone can be operated by its own keys irrespective of whether or not it is connected.

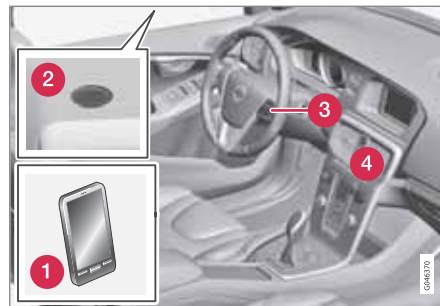
#### NOTE

Only a selection of mobile phones are fully compatible with the handsfree function. Volvo recommends that you seek assistance from an authorised Volvo dealer or visit [www.volvocars.com](http://www.volvocars.com) for information on compatible phones.

### Menus

The menus in **TEL** are controlled from the centre console and the steering wheel keypad\*. For general information on menu navigation, see page 243 and menu overview, see page 246.

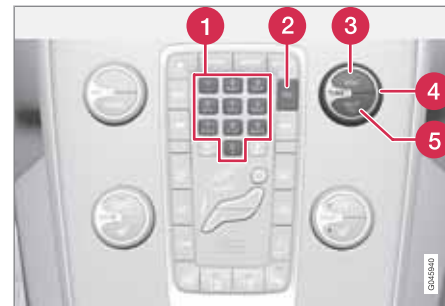
### Overview



#### System overview

- 1 Mobile phone.
- 2 Microphone.
- 3 Steering wheel keypad.
- 4 Centre console control panel.

### Phone functions, controls overview



#### Centre console control panel.

- 1 Number and letter buttons
- 2 **TEL** button activates/searches last connected phone. If a phone is already connected, and **TEL** is pressed, a shortcut menu is shown with commonly used menu options for the phone.
- 3 Accept incoming calls, confirm your selection or go to the Phone menu by pressing **OK/MENU**.
- 4 **TUNE** - Turn in normal view to the right to access the phone book, and to the left for the call register for all calls; also used for

<sup>1</sup> Applies to High Performance, High Performance Multimedia and Premium Sound Multimedia.



## Bluetooth® handsfree\*

navigation among the options on the TV screen.


- 5 EXIT** - Cancels/rejects phone calls, deletes input characters, leads up in the menu system and cancels the current function.

### **i** NOTE

If the car is equipped with a steering wheel keypad\* and/or remote control\* then in many cases these can be used instead of the buttons in the centre console. For a description of the buttons in the steering wheel, see page 241. For a description of the remote control, see page 282.

### Remember

#### Activate

A short press on **TEL** activates/searches last connected phone. If a phone is already connected, and **TEL** is pressed, a shortcut menu is shown with commonly used menu options for the phone. The  symbol indicates that a phone is connected.

#### Connect an external Bluetooth® device

A maximum of ten external devices can be registered. Registration is performed once per device. After registration the device no longer needs to be activated as visible/searchable.

It is possible to have two Bluetooth® devices connected simultaneously. One phone and one media device, which it is possible to switch between, see page 269 or see page 265. It is also possible to use the phone while streaming audio files from a connected device.

Connecting an external device takes place in different ways depending on whether or not the device has been connected previously. The connection options below presume that this is the first time the device is being connected and that no other device is connected.

There are two possible ways of connecting devices, either search for the external device from the car, or search for the car from the external device. If one option does not work then try with the other.



Example of normal view for phone.

If you are not already in the normal view, press **TEL** in the centre console.

**Alternative 1** - search for the external device via the car's menu system

1. Make the external device searchable/visible via Bluetooth®, see the external device's manual or [www.volvocars.com](http://www.volvocars.com).
2. Press **OK/MENU** and follow the instructions on the TV screen.
  - > The external device is now connected to the car and can be controlled from the car.

If connection failed, press **EXIT** twice and connect the device as described under Alternative 2.

**Alternative 2** - Search for the car with the Bluetooth® function of the external device.

1. Make the car searchable/visible via Bluetooth®. Turn **TUNE** to **Phone settings**, confirm with **OK/MENU**, select **Discoverable** and confirm with **OK/MENU**.
2. Select **My Volvo Car** on the screen of the external device and follow the instructions.
3. Enter a PIN code in the external device and then select to connect.

**Bluetooth® handsfree\***

4. Press **OK/MENU** and enter the same PIN code via the car keypad in the centre console.

Once the external device is connected, its Bluetooth® name appears on the car's TV screen and the unit can be controlled from the car.

**Automatic connection**

When the handsfree function is active and the last mobile phone connected is in range it is connected automatically. If the last connected mobile phone is not available then the system will try to connect a mobile phone that was paired earlier. When the audio system searches for the last phone connected its name is shown in the TV screen.

**Manual connection**


If you want to change the connected mobile phone, go in phone mode to **Phone menu** → **Change phone**.

**Change to another external device**

It is possible to change a connected device with another device if there are several devices in the car. However, the device must first have been registered to the car, see Connect an external Bluetooth® device. To change to another device:

1. Check that the external device is searchable/visible via Bluetooth®, see the manual for the external device.
2. Press **TEL** and then select **Change phone**.
  - > The car searches for previously connected devices. The external devices detected are specified with their respective Bluetooth® name in the TV screen.
3. Select the device to be connected by turning **TUNE** and confirm with **OK/MENU**.
  - > Connection of the external device takes place.

**To call**

1. Make sure that the  symbol appears at the top of the TV screen and that the handsfree function is in phone mode.
2. Dial either the desired number or speed dial number, see page 274. Or in normal view turn **TUNE** to the right to access the phone book, and to the left for the call register for all calls. For information on the phone book, see page 271.
3. Press **OK/MENU**.

The call is interrupted with **EXIT**.

**Disconnecting the mobile phone**

Automatic disconnection takes place if the mobile phone moves out of the audio system's range. The connection to the mobile phone can be manually broken in phone mode under **Phone menu** → **Disconnect phone**. For more information on connection, see page 268.

The handsfree function is deactivated when the engine is switched off and the door is opened<sup>2</sup>.

When the mobile phone has been disconnected an ongoing call can be continued by using the mobile phone's built-in microphone and speaker.

**NOTE**

Even when your mobile phone has been manually disconnected, some mobile phones may automatically couple up to the last handsfree unit connected, e.g. when a new call begins.

**Remove the device**

A connected mobile phone can be deregistered and removed. This is performed in phone mode under **Phone menu** → **Remove Bluetooth device**.

<sup>2</sup> Only Keyless Drive.



## Bluetooth® handsfree\*

### Making and receiving calls

#### Incoming call

- Press **OK/MENU** to answer the call, even if the audio system is in e.g. **RADIO** or **MEDIA** mode.

Refuse or end with **EXIT**.

#### Automatic answer

The automatic answer function means that calls are accepted automatically.

- Activate/deactivate in phone mode under **Phone menu → Call options → Auto answer**.

#### In call menu

Press **OK/MENU** during an ongoing call to access the following functions:

- **Mute** - audio system microphone is muted.
- **Mobile phone** - the call is transferred from handsfree to the mobile phone. For some mobile phones the connection is interrupted. This is normal. The handsfree function asks if you want to reconnect.
- **Dial number** - option to call a third party using the number keys (current call set in standby).

#### Call lists

The call lists are copied to the handsfree function at each new connection and are then updated during the connection. In normal view, turn to the left with **TUNE** to see the call register for **All calls**.

In phone mode it is possible to see all the call lists under **Phone menu → All calls**:

- **All calls**
- **Missed calls**
- **Answered calls**
- **Dialled calls**
- **Call duration**

#### NOTE

Certain mobile phones show a list of the last dialled numbers in reverse order.

#### Voice mailbox

In normal view a speed dial number for the voice mailbox can be programmed in and then accessed later via a long press on **1**.

Voice mailbox number is changed in phone mode under **Phone menu → Call options → Voicemail number → Change number**. If there is no number stored then this menu can be reached with one long press on **1**.

### Audio settings

#### Phone call volume

The phone call volume can only be changed during a call. Use the steering wheel keypad\* or turn the **VOL** control.

#### Audio system volume

Providing there is no ongoing call taking place, the audio system volume is controlled as usual by turning **VOL**.

If an audio source is active during an incoming call then it can be muted automatically. Activate/deactivate in phone mode under **Phone menu → Phone settings → Sounds and volume → Mute radio/media**.

#### Ring volume

In phone mode go to **Phone menu → Phone settings → Sounds and volume → Ring volume** and adjust by turning **VOL**. Press **OK/MENU** to hear the audio volume. Press **EXIT** to save.

#### Ring signals

The handsfree function has integrated ring signals that can be selected in phone mode under **Phone menu → Phone settings → Sounds and volume → Ring signals → Ring signal 1** etc.

**Bluetooth® handsfree\*****i NOTE**


For some mobile phones, the ringtone on the phone connected will not be switched off when one of the inbuilt signals for the handsfree system is used.

In order to select the connected phone's ring signal<sup>3</sup>, go in phone mode to **Phone menu** → **Phone settings** → **Sounds and volume** → **Ring signals** → **Mobile phone ring signal**.

**Phone book**


There are two phone books. These are merged into one in the car and are displayed as a single phone book in the car.

- The car downloads the mobile phone's phone book and only displays this phone book when the mobile phone from which this phone book was downloaded is connected.
- The car also has a built-in phone book. This contains all the contacts stored in the car irrespective of which phone was connected when saving them. These contacts are visible for all users, regardless of the mobile phone that is connected to the car. If a contact is saved in the car then the

symbol  is shown in front of the contact in the phone book.

**i NOTE**

Changes made from the car to a record in the mobile phone's telephone book will result in a new record in the car's telephone book, i.e. changes will not be saved to the phone. From the car, this will now look like you have double records, with different icons. Note also that when a shortcut number is saved or a change to a contact is made, this will result in a new record in the car's phone book.

All use of the phone book requires that the  symbol appears at the top of the TV screen and that the handsfree function is in phone mode.

The audio system stores a copy of the phone book from each paired mobile phone. The phone book can be copied automatically to the audio system during each connection.

- Activate/deactivate the function in phone mode under **Phone menu** → **Phone settings** → **Download phone book**.

If the phone book contains a ringing caller's contact information then this is shown in the TV screen.

**Quick search for contacts**

In normal view turn **TUNE** to the right to obtain a list of contacts. Turn **TUNE** to select and press **OK/MENU** to call.

Under the name of the contact is the phone number that is selected by default. If the symbol > appears to the right of the contact then there are several phone numbers stored for the contact. Press **OK/MENU** to show the numbers. Change and dial a number other than that selected by default by turning **TUNE**. Press **OK/MENU** to dial.

Search in the list of contacts by using the centre console's keypad to key in the start of the contact's name (see "Character table keypad in centre console" for button functions).

The list of contacts can also be accessed from normal view by pressing and holding the button on the centre console's keypad with the letter that the contact searched for starts with. For example, a long press on the button for **6** gives instant access to that part of the list where the contacts with the letter **M** are located.

<sup>3</sup> Not supported by all mobile phones.



# 06 Infotainment system

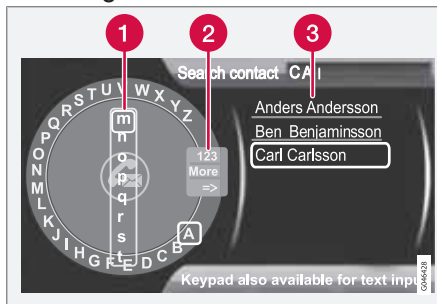
## Bluetooth® handsfree\*

### Character table keypad in centre console

Key	Function
1 [ ]	Space . , - ? @ : ; / ( ) 1
2 ABC	A B C Å Ä Æ À Ç 2
3 DEF	D E F È É 3
4 GHI	G H I Ì 4
5 JKL	J K L 5
6 MNO	M N O Ö Ø Ñ Ò 6
7 PQRS	P Q R S ß 7
8 TUV	T U V Ü Û 8
9 WXYZ	W X Y Z 9
* FAV	Shift between upper and lower case letter.

Key	Function
0 +	+ 0 p w
#INFO	# *

### Searching for contacts



Search contacts using the text wheel.

- 1 Character list
- 2 Changing the input mode (see table below)
- 3 Phone book

To search for or edit a contact, go in phone mode to **Phone menu** → **Phone book** → **Search**.

**NOTE**

There is no text wheel for High Performance, so **TUNE** cannot be used there to input characters: only the digit and letter buttons on the control panel in the centre console can be used for this.

1. Turn **TUNE** to the desired letter, press **OK/MENU** to confirm. The number and letter buttons on the control panel in the centre console can also be used.
2. Continue with the next letter and so on. The result of the search is shown in the phone book (3).
3. To change the input mode to numbers or special characters, or to go to the phone book, turn **TUNE** to one of the options (see explanation in the table below) in the list for changing the input mode (2), press **OK/MENU**.

\* Only applies to High Performance Multimedia and Premium Sound Multimedia.



### Bluetooth® handsfree\*

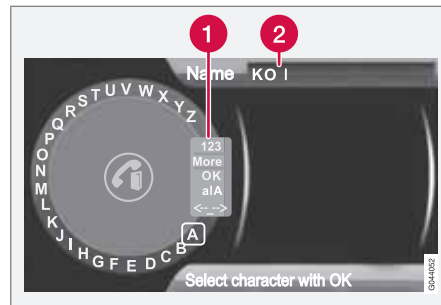
<b>123/ ABC</b>	Change between letters and numbers with <b>OK/MENU</b> .
<b>More</b>	Change to special characters with <b>OK/MENU</b> .
<b>=&gt;</b>	Leads to the phone book (3). Turn <b>TUNE</b> to select a contact, press <b>OK/MENU</b> to see the saved numbers and other information.

A short press on **EXIT** deletes an input character. A long press on **EXIT** will clear all entered characters.

By pressing a number key in the centre console when the text wheel is shown (see illustration above), a new character list (1) appears in the TV screen. Continue repeatedly pressing the number key to the desired letter and then release. Continue with the next letter and so on. When a button is depressed the entry is confirmed when another button is depressed.

To enter a number, hold in the corresponding number key.

#### New contact



Entering letters for New contact.

- 1 Changing the input mode (see table below)
- 2 Input field

New contacts can be added in phone mode under **Phone menu** → **Phone book** → **New contact**.

#### **i** NOTE

There is no text wheel for High Performance, so **TUNE** cannot be used there to input characters: only the digit and letter buttons on the control panel in the centre console can be used for this.

1. When the **Name** row is selected, press **OK/MENU** to reach the input mode (illustration above).
2. Turn<sup>4</sup> **TUNE** to the desired letter, press **OK/MENU** to confirm. The number and letter buttons on the control panel in the centre console can also be used.
3. Continue with the next letter and so on. The name entered is shown in the input field (2) in the TV screen.
4. To change the input mode to numbers, special characters, change between uppercase/lowercase letters, etc., turn **TUNE** to one of the options (see explanation in the table below) in the list (1) and then press **OK/MENU**.

When the name has been fully entered, select **OK** in the list on the TV screen (1) and press **OK/MENU**. Now continue with the telephone number in the same way as above.

When the telephone number has been entered, press **OK/MENU** and select a telephone number type (**Mobile phone**, **Home**, **Work** or **General**). Press **OK/MENU** to confirm.

When all details have been filled in, select **Save contact** in the menu to save the contact.

<sup>4</sup> Only applies to High Performance Multimedia and Premium Sound Multimedia.



## 06 Infotainment system

### Bluetooth® handsfree\*

<b>123/ ABC</b>	Change between letters and numbers with <b>OK/MENU</b> .
<b>More</b>	Change to special characters with <b>OK/MENU</b> .
<b>OK</b>	Save and go back to <b>Add contact</b> with <b>OK/MENU</b> .
<b>a A</b>	Change between uppercase and lowercase letters with <b>OK/MENU</b> .
<b>&lt;-- --&gt;</b>	Press <b>OK/MENU</b> , the cursor moves to the input field (2) at the top of the TV screen. The cursor can now be moved, with <b>TUNE</b> , to the appropriate place to e.g. insert new letters or delete with <b>EXIT</b> . To be able to insert new letters first go back to the input mode, by pressing <b>OK/MENU</b> .

#### Speed dial numbers

Use phone mode to add speed dial numbers under **Phone menu** → **Phone book** → **Speed dial**.

Dialling with speed dial numbers can be performed in phone mode using the number keys on the keypad in the centre console, by pressing a number key and then pressing **OK/MENU**. If there is no contact stored on the

speed dial number then an option is shown to save a contact to the selected speed dial number.

#### Receiving a vCard

It is possible to receive a vCard to the car's phone book from other mobile phones (other than the one currently connected to the car). In order to allow this the car is set to visible mode for Bluetooth®. The function is activated in phone mode under **Phone menu** → **Phone book** → **Receive vCard**.

#### Memory status

Memory status of the car's phone book and the connected mobile phone's phone book can be seen in phone mode under **Phone menu** → **Phone book** → **Memory status**.

#### Delete phone book

The car's phone book can be deleted, this is carried out in phone mode under **Phone menu** → **Phone book** → **Clear phone book**.

#### NOTE

Deleting the car's telephone book only deletes contacts in the car's telephone book. Contacts in the mobile phone's phone book are not deleted.

#### Version information Bluetooth®

The car's current Bluetooth® version can be seen in phone mode under **Phone menu** → **Phone settings** → **Bluetooth software version in car**.





## Voice recognition\* mobile phone

### General

The infotainment system's voice recognition<sup>1</sup> allows the driver to voice-activate certain functions in a Bluetooth®-connected mobile phone or in Volvo's navigation system - RTI (Road and Traffic Information System).

### NOTE

- The information in this section describes the use of voice commands to control a **mobile phone connected using Bluetooth®**. For detailed information on using a mobile phone connected using Bluetooth® with the car's Infotainment system see page 267.
- The Volvo navigation system RTI (Road and Traffic Information System) has a separate user manual which contains more information on voice control and voice commands to control that system.

Voice commands offer convenience and help the driver to avoid being distracted, and instead concentrate on driving and focus attention on the road and traffic conditions.

### WARNING


The driver always holds overall responsibility for driving the vehicle in a safe manner and complying with all applicable rules of the road.

The voice recognition system allows the driver to voice-activate certain functions of a Bluetooth®-connected mobile phone and in Volvo's navigation system - RTI (Road and Traffic Information System), while the driver can keep his/her hands on the wheel at the same time. The input data are in dialogue form with spoken commands from the user and verbal replies from the system. The voice recognition system uses the same microphone as the Bluetooth® handsfree system (see illustration on page 267) and the voice recognition system's replies come via the car's speakers.

### Language



Language list.

Voice recognition is not possible for all languages. Languages available for voice recognition are marked with an icon in the language list - . Changing the language is performed in the menu system **MY CAR**, see page 205.

<sup>1</sup> Only applies to vehicles equipped with Volvo's navigation system - RTI (Road and Traffic Information System).



## Voice recognition\* mobile phone

### Remember



Steering wheel keypad.

- 1 Button for voice recognition

### To activate the system

Before voice commands to a mobile phone can be used the mobile phone must be paired and connected via Bluetooth® handsfree. If a telephone command is given and no mobile phone is paired, then the system will provide information about this. For information on pairing and connecting a mobile phone, see page 268.

- Press the button for voice recognition (1) in order to activate the system and initiate a dialogue with voice commands. The system will then display commonly used commands in the TV screen in the centre console.

Keep the following things in mind when you use the voice recognition system:

- For a command - speak after the tone, with normal voice at normal speed.
- Do not speak while the system is replying (the system cannot understand commands during this time).
- The car's doors and windows must be closed.
- Avoid background noise in the passenger compartment.

### NOTE

If the driver is unsure of which command to use, he (she) can say "Help" - the system then responds with a few different commands which can be used in the current situation.

Voice commands can be disabled by:

- saying "Cancel"
- not speaking
- a long press on the steering wheel button for Voice recognition
- Press **EXIT** or another main source button (e.g. **MEDIA**).

### Help functions for voice recognition

- **Instructions:** A function that helps you get familiar with the system and the procedure for giving commands.
- **Voice training:** A function that enables the voice recognition system to learn to know your voice and your accent. The function provides an opportunity to voice train two user profiles.

The help functions can be accessed by pressing the **MY CAR** button on the control panel in the centre console and then turning **TUNE** to the desired menu option.

### Instructions

The instructions can be started in two ways:

### NOTE

This instruction and voice training can only be started when the car is parked.

- Press the button for Voice recognition and say "Voice instructions".
- Activate the instructions in the menu system **MY CAR** under **Settings** → **Voice settings** → **Voice tutorial**. For a description of the menu system, see page 203.

The instructions are divided into 3 lessons, which take around 5 minutes in total to complete. The system starts with the first lesson.

\* Option/accessory, for more information, see Introduction.



## Voice recognition\* mobile phone

To skip a lesson and go to the next one, press the button for voice recognition and say "Next". Go back to the previous lesson by saying "Previous".

Exit the instructions by means of a long press on the button for voice recognition.

### Voice training

The system displays up to fifteen phrases for you to say. Voice training can be started in the menu system **MY CAR** under **Settings** →

**Voice settings** → **Voice training**. Choose between **User 1** or **User 2**. For a description of the menu system, see page 203.

After voice training has been completed, remember to set your user profile under **Voice user setting**.

### Additional settings in MY CAR

- **User setting** - Two user profiles can be set, the function is activated in the menu system **MY CAR** under **Settings** → **Voice settings** → **Voice user setting**. Choose between **User 1** or **User 2**. For a description of the menu system, see page 203.
- **Voice volume** - Can be changed in the menu system **MY CAR** under **Settings** → **Voice settings** → **Voice output volume**. For a description of the menu system, see page 203.

### Using voice commands

The driver initiates a dialogue with the voice commands by pressing the button for voice recognition (see illustration on page 276).

Once a dialogue has been started, commonly used commands will be shown in the TV screen. Greyed-out text or text within brackets is not included in the spoken command.

When the driver becomes accustomed to the system, he/she can speed up the command dialogue and skip the prompts from the system, by briefly pressing the button for voice recognition.

### Commands can be given in several ways

The command "Phone call contact" can be pronounced as e.g.:

- "Phone > Call contact" - Say "Phone", wait for the system's reply, and then continue by saying "Call contact."
- or
- "Phone call contact" - Say the whole command in one sequence.

### Quick commands

Quick commands for the phone can be found in the menu system **MY CAR** under **Settings** → **Voice settings** → **Voice command list** → **Phone commands** and **General commands**.

For a description of the menu system, see page 203.

### Dial a number

The system understands the numbers **0** (zero) to **9** (nine). These numbers can be pronounced individually, in groups of several numbers at a time, or the whole number all at once. Numbers greater than **9** (nine) cannot be handled by the system, e.g. **10** (ten) or **11** (eleven) are not possible.

The following is an example of a dialogue with voice commands. The system's reply will vary depending on the situation.

### The user starts the dialogue by saying:

Phone > call number

or

Phone call number

**System reply**  
Number?

### User action

Start saying the numbers (as individual units, i.e. six-eight-seven, etc.) in the phone number. If you say several numbers and pause, the system will repeat them, and then say "Continue".

Continue to say the numbers. When finished, finish the command by saying "Call".

- You can also change the number by saying the commands "Correct" (which deletes



### Voice recognition\* mobile phone

the last spoken group of numbers) or "Delete" (which deletes the whole spoken phone number).

#### Dialling from the call register

The following dialogue allows you to make a phone call from one of your mobile phone's call registers.

#### The user starts the dialogue by saying:

Phone > call from the call register

or

Phone call from the call register

Continue by responding to the system's prompts.

#### Call a contact

The following dialogue allows you to call your pre-defined contacts in the mobile phone.

#### The user starts the dialogue by saying:

Phone > call contact

or

Phone call contact

Continue by responding to the system's prompts.

Consider the following when you call a contact:

- If there are several contacts with similar names, they will be presented in the dis-

play in the numbered rows and the system prompts you to select a row number.

- If there are more rows in the list than can be displayed simultaneously, saying "Down" allows you to scroll down in the list (and saying "Up" allows you to scroll up in the list).

#### Calling voice mailbox

The following dialogue allows you to call your voice mailbox to check if you have received any messages. The phone number for your voice mailbox must be registered in the Bluetooth® function, see page 270.

#### The user starts the dialogue by saying:

Phone > call voice mailbox

or

Phone call voice mailbox

Continue by responding to the system's prompts.



TV\*

## General

### NOTE

This system only supports TV transmissions in countries which transmit signals in mpeg-2 format and follow the DVB-T standard. The system does not support TV transmissions in mpeg-4 format or analogue transmissions.

### NOTE

The TV picture is only shown when the car is stationary. When the car is moving at a speed over about 6 km/h the picture disappears. **No visual media available while driving** appears on the display screen, although the audio is heard during this time. The picture reappears when the car has stopped.

### NOTE

The reception is dependent both on how good the signal strength and signal quality are. The transmission may be disturbed by various factors such as tall buildings or the TV transmitter being far away. Coverage level can also vary depending on where in the country you are located.

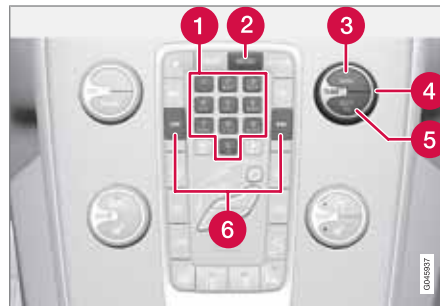
### IMPORTANT

A TV licence is required for this product in some countries.

## Menus

The menus in **MEDIA** are controlled from the centre console and the steering wheel keypad\*. For general information on menu navigation, see page 243 and menu overview, see page 246.

## Overview



Centre console control panel.

- 1 Station presets, numeric input.
- 2 **MEDIA** button. Last active source (e.g. iPod® or TV) is activated. If a source is activated and you press **MEDIA** then a short-

cut menu is shown with commonly used menu options.

- 3 Confirm your selection or go to the menu by pressing **OK/MENU**.
- 4 Navigate in channel lists or menus by turning **TUNE**.
- 5 **EXIT** - leads up in the menu system, stops the function in progress.
- 6 The next available channel is shown by pressing **◀◀** / **▶▶**.

### NOTE

If the car is equipped with a steering wheel keypad\* and/or remote control\* then in many cases these can be used instead of the buttons in the centre console. For a description of the buttons in the steering wheel, see page 241. For a description of the remote control, see page 282.

## Watch TV

- Press **MEDIA**, turn **TUNE** until **TV** is shown in the display, press **OK/MENU**.
  - > A search starts and after a short while the most recently used channel is shown.

## Changing channel

It is possible to change channel as follows:

\* Option/accessory, for more information, see Introduction.



## TV\*

- Turn **TUNE**, a list of all available channels in the area is shown. If any of these channels is already saved as a preset then its preset number is shown to the right of the channel name. Continue turning **TUNE** to reach the desired channel and press **OK/MENU**.
- By pressing the preset buttons (0-9).
- Via a short press on the **◀◀ / ▶▶** buttons the next available channel in the area is shown.

### NOTE

If the car has been moved within the country, for example, from one city to another, it is not certain that the presets are available at the new location as the frequency range may have changed. In which case, carry out a new search and save a new preset list, see the function "Save the available TV channels as presets", page 280.

### NOTE

If no reception is available on the preset buttons, it may be because the car is at a location other than where the scan of TV channels was run, for example, if the car was driven from Germany to France. A new selection of country and a new search may then need to be carried out.

## Searching TV channels/Preset list

1. Press TV mode on **OK/MENU**.
2. Turn **TUNE** to **TV menu** and press **OK/MENU**.
3. Turn **TUNE** to **Select country** and press **OK/MENU**.
  - > If one or more countries have previously been selected then they are shown in a list.
4. Turn **TUNE** to either **Other countries** or one of the previously selected countries. Press **OK/MENU**.
  - > A list of all available countries is shown.
5. Turn **TUNE** to the desired country (e.g. Sweden) and press **OK/MENU**.
  - > An automatic scan for available TV channels starts, this scan takes a little while. During this time the figure for each channel found and added as a preset is shown. When the scan is complete a message is shown and the picture is shown. A preset list (max. 30 presets) has now been created and is available. To change channel, see page 279.

The scan and preset storage can be cancelled with **EXIT**.

## Channel management

The preset list can be edited. You can change the order of the channels that are shown in the preset list. A TV channel can have more than one place in the preset list. The TV channel positions can also vary in the preset list.

To change the order in the preset list, go in TV mode to **TV menu** → **Reorganise presets**.

1. Turn **TUNE** to the channel you want to move in the list and confirm with **OK/MENU**.
  - > The selected channel is highlighted.
2. Turn **TUNE** to the new location in the list and confirm with **OK/MENU**.
  - > The channels change places with each other.

After the preset channels (max. 30) come all the other channels available in the area. It is possible to move a channel up to a place in the preset list.

## Save the available TV channels as presets

If the car has been moved within the country, for example, from one city to another, it is not certain that the presets are available at the new location as the frequency range may have changed. In which case, carry out another scan and save a new preset list.



1. Press TV mode on **OK/MENU**.
2. Turn **TUNE** to **TV menu** and press **OK/MENU**.
3. Turn **TUNE** to **Autostore** and press **OK/MENU**.
  - > An automatic scan for available TV channels starts, this scan takes a little while. During this time the figure for each channel found and added as a preset is shown. When the scan is complete a message is shown and the picture is shown. A preset list (max. 30 presets) has now been created and is available. To change channel, see page 279.


### Scanning the TV channels



This function automatically scans through the frequency range for all channels available in the area where you are. When a channel is found, it is shown for approx. 10 seconds before scanning is resumed. Scanning is stopped with **EXIT**, then the channel that you just watched continues to be shown. Scanning does not affect the preset list.


Activate scanning in TV mode under **TV menu**  
→ Scan.

### Teletext

It is possible to read Teletext. Follow these steps:

1. Press the  button on the remote control.
2. Enter the page number (3 digits) with the number keys (0-9) to select page.
  - > The page is shown automatically.

Enter new page number, or press the remote control buttons  /  to go to the next page.

Return to TV screen with **EXIT** or by pressing the  button on the remote control.

It is also possible to control the teletext with the coloured buttons on the remote control.

### Information about the current programme

Press the **INFO** button in order to display the information about the current programme, the next programme and its start time. If the **INFO** button is pressed once more then additional information on the current programme can sometimes be displayed, such as start and end times and a brief description of the current programme. For more information on the **INFO** button, see page 241.

To return to the TV picture, wait several seconds or press **EXIT**.

### Picture settings

The settings for brightness and contrast can be adjusted. For more information, see page 260.

### The reception is lost

If the reception for the TV channel that is being shown disappears then the picture will freeze. Shortly after this a message appears informing that the reception has been lost for the current TV channel, and a new search for the channel continues. When the reception returns the display of the TV channel starts immediately. It is possible to change channel at any time when the message is shown.

If the message **Reception lost, searching** is shown then this is because the system has detected that there is no reception for all TV channels. One possible reason may be that a border has been crossed and that the system is set to the wrong country. In which case, change to the right country in accordance with "Searching TV channels/Preset list", see page 280.



## Remote control\*

### General



1 Corresponds to **TUNE** in the centre console.

The remote control can be used for all functions in the infotainment system. The remote control's buttons have the same functions as the buttons in the centre console or steering wheel keypad\*.

When using the remote control, first press the remote control's button **L F R** to position **F**.

Then aim the remote control at the IR receiver, which is located to the right of the **INFO** button (see page 241) in the centre console.



### WARNING

Keep loose objects such as mobile phones, cameras, remote controls for accessories, etc. in the glove compartment or other compartments. Otherwise they may injure people in the car in the event of sudden braking or a collision.



### NOTE

Do not expose the remote control to direct sunlight (e.g. on the instrument panel) - otherwise problems may arise with the batteries.

### Functions

Key	Function
L F R	F = Front TV screen
NAV	Change to navigation*
RADIO	Change to radio source (AM, FM1 etc.)
MEDIA	Change to media source (Disc, TV* etc.)
TEL	Change to Bluetooth® hands-free*
	Scroll/fast rewind, change track/song.
	Play/pause
	Stop
	Scroll/fast forward, change track/song
DVD MENU	Menu
EXIT	To previous, cancels function, deletes input characters





## Remote control\*

Key	Function
▲ ▼	Navigate up/down
◀ ▶	Navigate right/left
OK MENU	Confirm selection or go to the menu system for the selected source
🔊	Volume, decrease
🔊	Volume, increase
0-9	Preset channels, number and letter input
FAV *	Shortcuts for favourite setting
INFO #	Information about the current programme, song, etc. Also used when there is more information available than can be shown in the TV screen
💬	Selection of language for soundtrack

Key	Function
☐	Subtitles, selection of language for text
☰	Teletext*, On/Off

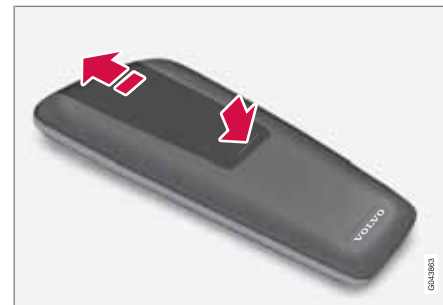
### Replacing the battery in the remote control

#### **i** NOTE

Battery life is normally 1-4 years and depends on how much the remote control is used.

The remote control is powered by four batteries of the AA/LR6 type.

Take along extra batteries for a long journey.



1. Push down the catch on the battery cover and slide the battery cover in the direction of the infrared lens.
2. Remove the used batteries, turn the new batteries in accordance with the symbols in the battery compartment and fit them.
3. Refit the cover.

#### **i** NOTE

Be sure to dispose of the exhausted batteries in an environmentally safe manner.

Recommendations during driving.....	286
Refuelling.....	289
Fuel.....	291
Loading.....	294
Cargo area.....	297
Driving with a trailer.....	299
Towing and recovery.....	305



# 07

DURING YOUR JOURNEY





## Recommendations during driving

### General

#### Economical driving

Driving economically means driving smoothly while thinking ahead and adjusting your driving style and speed to the prevailing conditions.

- Drive in the highest gear possible, adapted to the current traffic situation and road - lower engine speeds result in lower fuel consumption.
- Avoid driving with open windows.
- Avoid sudden unnecessary acceleration and heavy braking.
- Remove unnecessary items from the car - the greater the load the higher the fuel consumption.
- Use engine braking to slow down, when it can take place without risk to other road users.
- A roof load and ski box increase air resistance, leading to higher fuel consumption - remove the load carriers when not in use.
- Do not run the engine to operating temperature at idling speed, but rather drive with a light load as soon as possible - a cold engine consumes more fuel than a warm one.
- Cars with manual transmission are started in 2nd gear under normal conditions on flat ground.

For more information and further advice, see the pages 11 and 376.



#### WARNING

Never switch off the engine while moving, such as downhill, this deactivates important systems such as the power steering and brake servo.

#### Driving in water

The car can be driven through water at a maximum depth of 25 cm at a maximum speed of 10 km/h. Extra caution should be exercised when passing through flowing water.

During driving in water, maintain a low speed and do not stop the car. When the water has been passed, depress the brake pedal lightly and check that full brake function is achieved. Water and mud for example can make the brake linings wet resulting in delayed brake function.

- Clean the electric contacts of the electric engine block heater and trailer coupling after driving in water and mud.
- Do not let the car stand with water over the sills for any long period of time - this could cause electrical malfunctions.



#### IMPORTANT

Engine damage can occur if water enters the air filter.

In depths greater than 25 cm, water could enter the transmission. This reduces the lubricating ability of the oils and shortens the service life of these systems.

In the event of the engine stalling in water, do not try restart - tow the car from the water to a workshop - an authorised Volvo workshop is recommended. Risk of engine breakdown.

#### Engine, gearbox and cooling system

Under special conditions, for example hard driving in hilly terrain and hot climate, there is a risk that the engine and drive system may overheat - in particular with a heavy load.

For information about overheating when driving with a trailer, see page 300.

- Remove any auxiliary lamps from in front of the grille when driving in hot climates.
- If the temperature in the engine's cooling system is too high the instrument panel's warning symbol is illuminated and there is a text message displayed there **High engine temp Stop safely** - stop the car in a safe way and allow the engine to run at idling speed for several minutes to cool down.



## Recommendations during driving

- If the text message **High engine temp Stop engine** or **Coolant level low, Stop engine** is shown then the engine must be switched off after stopping the car.
- In the event of overheating in the gearbox a built-in protection function is activated which, amongst other things, illuminates the instrument panel's warning symbol and there is a text message displayed there **Transmission hot Reduce speed** or **Transmission hot Stop safely** - follow the recommendation given and lower the speed and stop the car in a safe way and allow the engine to run at idling speed for a few minutes to allow the gearbox to cool down.
- If the car overheats, the air conditioning may be switched off temporarily.
- Do not turn the engine off immediately you stop after a hard drive.

### NOTE

It is normal for the engine's cooling fan to operate for a time after the engine has been switched off.

### Open tailgate

#### WARNING

Do not drive with an open tailgate! Toxic exhaust fumes could be drawn into the car through the cargo area.

### Do not overload the battery

The electrical functions in the car load the battery to varying degrees. Avoid using the key position **II** when the engine is switched off. Instead use the **I** mode - which uses less power.

Also, be aware of different accessories that load the electrical system. Do not use functions which use a lot of power when the engine is switched off. Examples of such functions are:

- ventilation fan
- headlamps
- windscreen wiper
- audio system (high volume).

If the battery voltage is low the information display shows the text **Low battery Power save mode**. The energy-saving function then shuts down certain functions or reduces certain functions such as the ventilation fan and/or audio system.

- In which case, charge the battery by starting the engine and then running it for at

least 15 minutes - battery charging is more effective during driving than running the engine at idling speed while stationary.

### Before a long journey

- Check that the engine is working normally and that fuel consumption is normal.
- Make sure that there are no leaks (fuel, oil or other fluid).
- Check all bulbs and tyre tread depths.
- Carrying a warning triangle is a legal requirement in certain countries.

### Winter driving

Check the following in particular before the cold season:

- The engine coolant must contain at least 50% glycol. This mixture protects the engine against frost erosion down to approximately  $-35^{\circ}\text{C}$ . To achieve optimum antifreeze protection, different types of glycol must not be mixed.
- The fuel tank must be kept filled to prevent condensation.
- Engine oil viscosity is important. Oils with lower viscosity (thinner oils) facilitate starting in cold weather and also reduce fuel consumption while the engine is cold. For more information on suitable oils, see page 372.



### Recommendations during driving

#### **IMPORTANT**

Low viscosity oil must not be used for hard driving or in hot weather.

- The condition of the battery and charge level must be inspected. Cold weather places great demands on the battery and its capacity is reduced by the cold.
- Use washer fluid to avoid ice forming in the washer fluid reservoir.

To achieve optimum roadholding Volvo recommends using winter tyres on all wheels if there is a risk of snow or ice.

#### **NOTE**

The use of winter tyres is a legal requirement in certain countries. Studded tyres are not permitted in all countries.

#### **Slippery driving conditions**

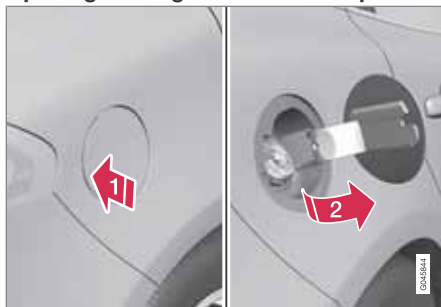
Practise driving on slippery surfaces under controlled conditions to learn how the car reacts.



## Refuelling

## Refuelling

## Opening/closing the fuel filler flap

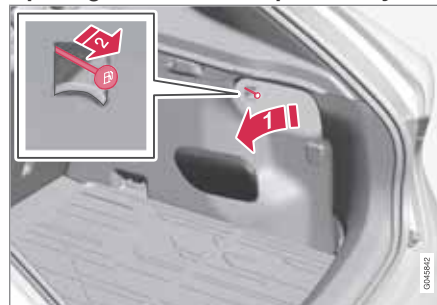


- 1 Open the fuel filler flap by slightly pressing in the rear part of the hatch.
- 2 Take out the flap.

Close the flap after fuelling.

For locking/unlocking of the fuel filler flap see page 57. The fuel filler flap locking logic also follows the locking or unlocking of the keyless-drive and the central locking system. Fuel filler flap locking always occurs after a 10-minute delay.

## Opening the fuel filler flap manually



The fuel filler flap can be opened manually when it cannot be opened from outside.

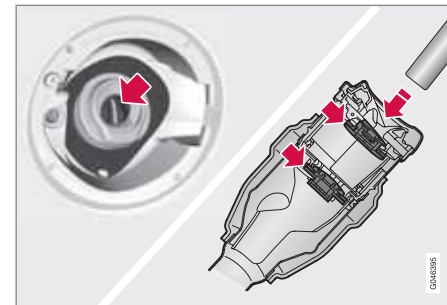
- 1 Open/remove the side hatch in the cargo area (same side as fuel filler flap).
- 2 Carefully pull the line back in a straight line. The flap can now be opened from outside.

**!** **IMPORTANT**

Pull the wire gently - minimal force is required to disengage the hatch lock.

## Filling up with fuel

The fuel tank is fitted with a coverless fuel filler system.



- Insert the pump nozzle in the fuel filler opening. Take care to insert the nozzle **properly** into the filler pipe. The filler pipe consists of two opening covers. The nozzle must be pushed past both covers before refuelling is started.
- Do not overfill the tank but fill until the pump nozzle cuts out.

**i** **NOTE**

Excess fuel in the tank can overflow in hot weather.



### Refuelling



#### NOTE

Avoid spillage by waiting approx. 5-8 seconds after refuelling before carefully removing the nozzle.

#### Filling with a fuel can

When filling with a fuel can, use the funnel located under the floor hatch in the cargo area. Take care to insert the funnel **properly** into the filler pipe. The filler pipe consists of two opening covers. The funnel must be pushed past both covers before filling is started.





### General information on fuel

Fuel of a lower quality than that recommended by Volvo must not be used as engine power and fuel consumption is negatively affected.

#### WARNING

Always avoid inhaling fuel vapour and fuel splashing in the eyes.

In the event of fuel in the eyes, remove any contact lenses and rinse the eyes in plenty of water for at least 15 minutes and seek medical attention.

Never swallow fuel. Fuels such as petrol and diesel are highly toxic and could cause permanent injury or be fatal if swallowed. Seek medical attention immediately if fuel has been swallowed.

#### WARNING

Fuel which spills onto the ground can be ignited.

Switch off the fuel-driven heater before starting to refuel.

Never carry an activated mobile phone when refuelling. The ring signal could cause spark build-up and ignite petrol fumes, leading to fire and injury.

#### IMPORTANT

Mixtures of various fuel types or use of fuels which are not recommended will invalidate Volvo's guarantees and any supplementary service agreements; this is applicable to all engines.

#### NOTE

Extreme weather conditions, driving with a trailer or driving at high altitudes in combination with fuel grade are factors that could affect the car's performance.

### Catalytic converters

The purpose of the catalytic converters is to purify exhaust gases. They are located close to the engine so that operating temperature is reached quickly.

The catalytic converters consist of a monolith (ceramic or metal) with channels. The channel walls are lined with a thin layer of platinum/rhodium/palladium. These metals act as catalysts, i.e. they participate in and accelerate a chemical reaction without being used up themselves.

### Lambda-sond™ oxygen sensor

The Lambda-sond is part of a control system intended to reduce emissions and improve fuel economy.

An oxygen sensor monitors the oxygen content of the exhaust gases leaving the engine. This value is fed into an electronic system that continuously controls the injectors. The ratio of fuel to air directed to the engine is continuously adjusted. These adjustments create optimal conditions for efficient combustion, and together with the three-way catalytic converter reduce harmful emissions (hydrocarbons, carbon monoxide and nitrous oxides).

### Petrol

Petrol must fulfil the EN 228 standard. Most engines can be run with octane ratings of 95 and 98 RON. Only in exceptional cases should 91 RON be used.

- 95 RON can be used for normal driving.
- 98 RON is recommended for optimum performance and minimum fuel consumption.

When driving in temperatures above +38 °C, fuel with the highest possible octane rating is recommended for optimum performance and fuel economy.

#### IMPORTANT

- Use only unleaded petrol to avoid damaging the catalytic converter.
- Do not use any additives which have not been recommended by Volvo.



## Fuel

### Diesel

Only use diesel fuel from well-known producers. Never use diesel of dubious quality. Diesel should fulfil the EN 590 or JIS K2204 standards. Diesel engines are sensitive to contaminants in the fuel, such as excessively high volumes of sulphur particles for example.

At low temperatures (-6 °C to -40 °C), a paraffin precipitate may form in the diesel fuel, which may lead to ignition problems. Special diesel fuel designed for low temperatures around freezing point is available from the major oil companies. This fuel is less viscous at low temperatures and reduces the risk of paraffin precipitate.

The risk of condensation in the fuel tank is reduced if the tank is kept well filled. When refuelling, check that the area around the fuel filler pipe is clean. Avoid spilling fuel onto the paintwork. Wash off any spillage with detergent and water.

### ! IMPORTANT

Only ever use fuel that fulfils the European diesel standard.

The sulphur content must be a maximum of 50 ppm.

### ! IMPORTANT

Diesel type fuels that must not be used:

- Special additives
- Marine diesel fuel
- Heating oil
- FAME<sup>1</sup> (Fatty Acid Methyl Ester) and vegetable oil.

These fuels do not fulfil the requirements in accordance with Volvo recommendations and generate increased wear and engine damage that is not covered by the Volvo warranty.

### Empty tank

The design of the fuel system in a diesel engine means that if the vehicle runs out of fuel, the tank may need to be vented in the workshop in order to restart the engine after fuelling.

Once the engine has stopped due to fuel starvation, the fuel system needs a few moments to carry out a check. Do this before starting the engine, once the fuel tank has been filled with diesel:

1. Insert the remote control key in the ignition switch and push it in to the end position (see page 79).
2. Press the **START** button **without** depressing the brake and/or clutch pedal.
3. Wait approx. 1 minute.
4. To start the engine: Depress the brake and/or clutch pedal and then press the **START** button again.

### i NOTE

Before filling with fuel in the event of fuel shortage:

- Stop the car on as flat/level ground as possible - if the car is tilting there is a risk of air pockets in the fuel supply.

### Draining condensation from the fuel filter

The fuel filter separates condensation from the fuel. Condensation can disrupt engine operation.

The fuel filter must be drained at the intervals specified in the Service and Warranty Booklet or if you suspect that the car has been filled with contaminated fuel.

<sup>1</sup> Diesel fuel may contain a certain amount of FAME, but further amounts must not be added.

**Fuel****! IMPORTANT**

Certain special additives remove the water separation in the fuel filter.

**Diesel particle filter (DPF)**

Diesel cars are equipped with a particle filter, which results in more efficient emission control. The particles in the exhaust gases are collected in the filter during normal driving. So-called "regeneration" is started in order to burn away the particles and empty the filter. This requires the engine to have reached normal operating temperature.

Filter regeneration takes place automatically and normally takes 10-20 minutes. It may take a little longer at a low average speed. Fuel consumption may increase slightly during regeneration.

**Regeneration in cold weather**

If the car is frequently driven short distances in cold weather then the engine does not reach normal operating temperature. This means that regeneration of the diesel particle filter does not take place and the filter is not emptied.

When the filter has become approximately 80% full of particles, a warning triangle on the instrument panel illuminates, and the message **Soot filter full** See manual is shown on the instrument panel display.

Start regeneration of the filter by driving the car until the engine reaches normal operating temperature, preferably on a main road or motorway. The car should then be driven for approximately 20 minutes more.

**i NOTE**

A smaller reduction of engine power may be noticed temporarily during regeneration.

When regeneration is complete the warning text is cleared automatically.

Use the parking heater\* in cold weather so that the engine reaches normal operating temperature more quickly.

**! IMPORTANT**

If the filter is completely filled with particles, it may be difficult to start the engine and the filter is non-functional. Then there is a risk that the filter will need to be replaced.

**Fuel consumption and emissions of carbon dioxide**

Fuel consumption figures may change if the car is equipped with extra equipment that affects the car's weight. See information on weights page 369 and table page 376.

The manner in which the car is driven, and other non-technical factors can also affect fuel consumption.

Consumption is higher and power output lower for fuel with an octane rating of 91 RON.

**i NOTE**

Extreme weather conditions, driving with a trailer or driving at high altitudes in combination with fuel grade are factors that could affect the car's performance.



## Loading

### General information on loading

Payload depends on the car's kerb weight. The total of the weight of the passengers and all accessories reduces the car's payload by a corresponding weight. For more detailed information on weights, see page 369.



The tailgate is opened via a button on the lighting panel or the remote control key, see page 56.

### WARNING

The car's driving properties change depending on the weight and positioning of the load.

### To bear in mind when loading

- Position the load firmly against the rear seat's backrest.

Note that objects must not prevent the function of the WHIPS system for the front seats if any of the rear seat's backrests is folded down, see page 25.

- Centre the load.
- Heavy objects should be placed as low as possible. Avoid placing heavy loads on lowered backrests.
- Cover sharp edges with something soft to avoid damaging the upholstery.

- Secure all loads to the load retaining eyelets with straps or web lashings.

### WARNING

A loose object weighing 20 kg can, in a frontal collision at a speed of 50 km/h, carry the impact of an item weighing 1000 kg.

### WARNING

The protection provided by the inflatable curtain in the headlining may be compromised or eliminated by high loads.

- Never load cargo above the backrest.

### WARNING

Always secure the load. Always secure the load. During heavy braking the load may otherwise shift, causing personal injury to the car's occupants.

Cover sharp edges and sharp corners with something soft.

Switch off the engine and apply the parking brake when loading/unloading long items. Otherwise you may accidentally knock the gear lever or gear selector with the load into a drive position - and the car could then move off.

### Front seat

The passenger seat backrest can also be folded for an extra long load, see page 81.

### Roof load

#### Using load carriers

To avoid damaging the car and for maximum possible safety while driving, the load carriers designed by Volvo are recommended.

Carefully follow the installation instructions supplied with the carriers.

- Check periodically that the load carriers and load are properly secured. Lash the load securely with retaining straps.
- Distribute the load evenly over the load carriers. Put the heaviest objects at the bottom.
- The size of the area exposed to the wind, and therefore fuel consumption, increase with the size of the load.
- Drive gently. Avoid quick acceleration, heavy braking and hard cornering.

### WARNING

The car's centre of gravity and driving characteristics are altered by roof loads. For information about the maximum allowable load on the roof, including load carriers and any space box, see page 369.

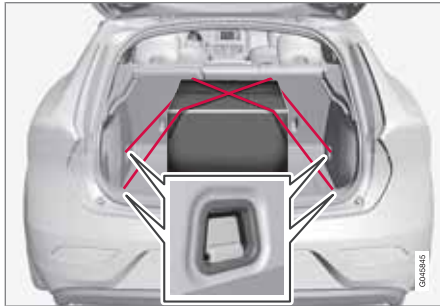


## Loading

### Lowering the rear seat backrest

To simplify loading in the cargo area, the rear seat backrest can be folded down, see page 84.

### Load retaining eyelets



The load retaining eyelets are used to fasten straps in order to anchor items in the cargo area.

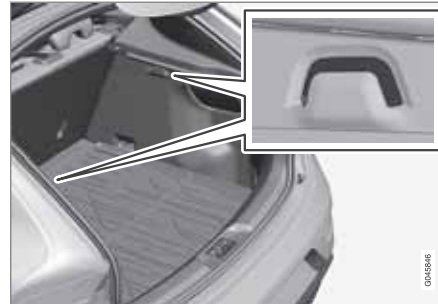
### WARNING

Hard, sharp and/or heavy objects which protrude may cause injury under violent braking.

Always secure large and heavy objects with a seatbelt or cargo retaining straps.

### Bag holder

The bag holders keep carrier bags in place and prevent them from overturning and spreading their contents around the cargo area. The holder has a capacity of max. 3 kg.



Bag holder

### Folding bag holder\*



Folding bag holder

A folding bag holder in the floor can be opened up in three positions. It can be set to two adjustment positions and one service position, as it is known, where it is fully unfolded. There are also two floor combination variants, one with adjustment positions in a tub under the floor and one with adjustment positions in plastic rails. The raising below shows the adjustment position in a tub under the floor.

The load on the central holder is max. 3 kg, and max. 10 kg on the outer holder.



## Loading



- 1 Lift the handle\* on the upper floor and fold up the floor.
- 2 Move the floor forwards to an appropriate position and place it in the adjustment groove.
3. In service position, the floor is moved all the way forwards towards the rear seat back and placed in the plastic support in the centre.

### 12 V socket\*



Lower the cover to access the electrical socket.

- The socket also provides voltage when the remote control key is not in the ignition switch.

### **!** IMPORTANT

Max. socket current is 10 A (120 W).

### **i** NOTE

Remember that using the electrical socket with the engine switched off involves the risk of discharging the car's battery.

### **i** NOTE

The compressor for temporary emergency puncture repair has been tested and approved by Volvo. For information on the use of Volvo's recommended temporary emergency puncture repair (TMK), see page 320.



## Cargo area

## Cargo net\*



The cargo net is fitted into four mounting points.

A cargo net prevents cargo from being thrown forward in the passenger compartment in the event of heavy braking. For safety reasons, the cargo net must always be correctly fastened and secured. The mesh is made of a strong nylon fabric and secured behind the front seat backrests.

**! WARNING**

Loads in the luggage compartment must be anchored well, and also have a correctly fitted safety net.

## Attaching

**i NOTE**

The easiest way to fit the safety net is via one of the rear doors.

**! WARNING**

It is necessary to ensure that the upper securing points of the safety net are fitted correctly and that the puller-straps are secured properly. Damaged nets must not be used.

1. Unfold the cargo net and make sure that the split upper rod is locked in the extended position.
2. Hook one end of the rod into the roof mounting with the anchoring strap locks turned towards you.
3. Hook the other end of the rod into the roof mounting on the opposite side - the telescopic spring-loaded retaining hooks facilitate alignment. Take care to press forward the rod's retaining hooks for each respective roof mounting's front end position.



4. Hook the cargo net's anchoring straps into the eyes on the rear of the seat slide rails - it is easier if the backrests are straightened and the seats are moved forward slightly.  
Pay attention to make sure that you do not press the seat/backrest hard against the net when the seat/backrest is moved back again - only adjust until the seat/backrest makes contact with the net.

**! IMPORTANT**

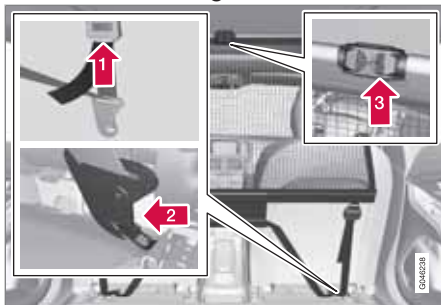
If a seat/backrest is pushed backwards hard into the safety net then the net and/or its roof mounts may be damaged.

5. Tension the cargo net with the anchoring straps.



## Cargo area

### Removal and storage



The cargo net can be easily removed and folded up.

- 1 Release the tension in the net by pressing in the button on the anchoring strap's lock and feeding out part of the strap.
- 2 Press in the catch and detach both of the anchoring strap's hooks.
- 3 Unhook the rod from its roof mounting by pulling back on the rod in the roof mountings' rear end position. Press the rod in any direction so that the hook engages in the rod, which at the same time releases the hook on the other side.

Finally, remove the remaining roof mounting hook from the roof mounting.

4. Break the rod in the centre, fold it together and roll up the net.

Insert the net in the storage bag.

The folded cargo net is stored in its bag in the luggage compartment.



### Hat shelf



The hat shelf can be removed to provide additional cargo space.

### Hat shelf removal

- 1 Undo the hat shelf lifting eyes on both sides.
- 2 Unhook the front edge of the hat shelf and remove it.





## Driving with a trailer

### General

Payload depends on the car's kerb weight. The total of the weight of the passengers and all accessories, e.g. towbar, reduces the car's payload by a corresponding weight. For more detailed information on weights, see page 369.

If the towing bracket is mounted by Volvo, then the car is delivered with the necessary equipment for driving with a trailer.

- The car's towing bracket must be of an approved type.
- If the towbar is retrofitted, check with your Volvo dealer that the car is fully equipped for driving with a trailer.
- Distribute the load on the trailer so that the weight on the towing bracket complies with the specified maximum towball load.
- Increase the tyre pressure to the recommended pressure for a full load. For tyre pressure label location, see page 318.
- The engine is loaded more heavily than usual when driving with a trailer.
- Do not tow a heavy trailer when the car is brand new. Wait until it has been driven at least 1000 km.
- The brakes are loaded much more than usual on long and steep downhill slopes. Downshift to a lower gear and adjust your speed.

- For safety reasons, the maximum permitted speed for the car when coupled with a trailer should not be exceeded. Follow the regulations in force for the permitted speeds and weights.
- Maintain a low speed when driving with a trailer up long, steep ascents.
- Avoid driving with a trailer on inclines of more than 12%.

### Trailer cable

An adapter is required if the car's towing bracket has 13 pin electrics and the trailer has 7 pin electrics. Use an adapter cable approved by Volvo. Make sure the cable does not drag on the ground.

### Direction indicators and brake lights on the trailer

If any of the trailer's lamps for direction indicators are broken, then the combined instrument panel's symbol for direction indicators flashes faster than normal and the display shows the text **Bulb fail - Ind. signal trailer**.

If any of the trailer's lamps for the brake light are broken then the **Bulb fail - Stop lamp trailer** text is shown.

### Level control\*

The rear shock absorbers maintain a constant height irrespective of the car's load (up to the maximum permissible weight). When the car is

stationary the rear of the car lowers slightly, which is normal.

### Trailer weights

For information on Volvo's permitted trailer weights, see page 370.

### NOTE

The stated maximum permitted trailer weights are those permitted by Volvo. The maximum permitted speed for a car with a trailer attached is 100 km/h. National vehicle regulations may further restrict the trailer weight and speed. Towbars can be certified for higher towing weights than the car can actually tow.

### WARNING

Follow the stated recommendations for trailer weights. Otherwise, the car and trailer may be difficult to control in the event of sudden movement and braking.



## Driving with a trailer

### Manual gearbox

#### Overheating

When driving with a trailer in hilly terrain in a hot climate there may be a risk of overheating.

- Do not run the engine at higher revolutions than 4500 rpm (diesel engines: 3500 rpm) - otherwise the oil temperature may become too high.

#### Diesel engine 5-cyl

- In the event of a risk of overheating the optimal speed for the engine is 2300-3000 rpm for optimal circulation of the coolant.

### Automatic gearbox

#### Overheating

When driving with a trailer in hilly terrain in a hot climate there may be a risk of overheating.

- An automatic gearbox selects the optimum gear related to load and engine speed.
- In the event of overheating a warning symbol illuminates on the instrument panel combined with a text message - follow the recommendation given.

#### Steep inclines

- Do not lock the automatic transmission in a higher gear than the engine "can cope with" - it is not always a good idea to drive at a high gear with low engine revolutions.

### ! IMPORTANT

See also the specific information on slow driving with trailer for cars with the Powershift automatic transmission on page 119.

#### Parking on a hill

1. Depress the foot brake.
  2. Activate the parking brake.
  3. Move the gear selector to position **P**.
  4. Release the foot brake.
- Move the gear selector to park position **P** when parking an automatic car with a hitched trailer. Always use the parking brake.
  - Block the wheels with chocks when parking a car with hitched trailer on a hill.

#### Starting on a hill

1. Depress the foot brake.
2. Move the gear selector to driving position **D**.
3. Release the parking brake.
4. Release the foot brake and start driving off.

### Towing bracket

If the car is equipped with a removable towbar, the installation instructions for the loose section must be followed carefully, see page 302.

### ! WARNING

If the car is fitted with a Volvo detachable towbar:

- Follow the installation instructions carefully.
- The detachable section must be locked with the key before setting off.
- Check that the indicator window shows green.

#### Important checks

- The towbar's towball must be cleaned and greased regularly.

### ! WARNING

The moving parts of the detachable towbar must not be lubricated/oiled. This may reduce safety.

### i NOTE

When a hitch with a vibration damper is used, the towball must not be lubricated.



## Driving with a trailer

## Storing the detachable towbar

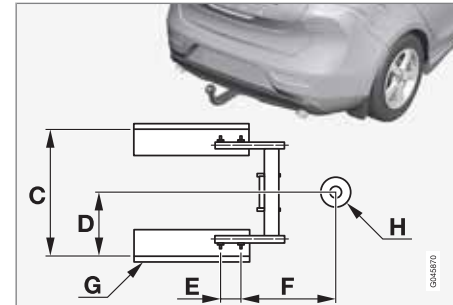
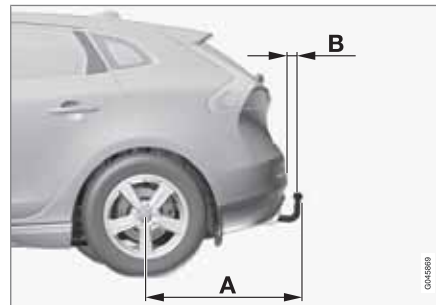


The storage location for the removable towbar.

**!** **IMPORTANT**

Always remove the detachable towbar after use and store it in the designated location in the car.

## Specifications



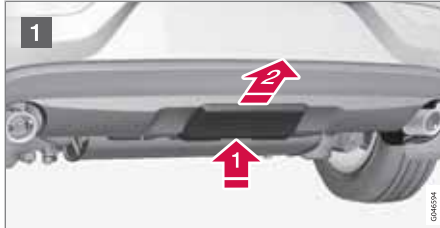
## Dimensions, mounting points (mm)

A	887
B	79
C	881
D	441
E	109
F	306
G	Side member
H	Ball centre



## Driving with a trailer

### Fitting of removable towbar



- 1 Remove the protective cover by first pressing in the catch **1** and then pulling the cover straight back **2**.



- 2 Ensure that the mechanism is in the unlocked position by turning the key clockwise.



- 3 The indicator window must show red.



- 4 Insert the towball section until you hear a click.



- 5 The indicator window must show green.



- 6 Turn the key anticlockwise to locked position. Remove the key from the lock.



## Driving with a trailer



- 7 Check that the towball section is secure by pulling it up, down and back.

**! WARNING**

If the towball is not fitted correctly then it must be detached and reattached in accordance with the previous instructions.

**! IMPORTANT**

Only grease in the ball for the towball hitch, the remainder of the towbar must be clean and dry.



- 8 Safety cable.

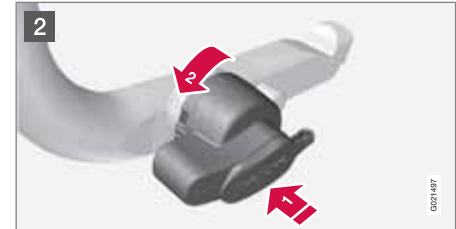
**! WARNING**



Take care to secure the trailer's safety cable in the intended bracket.

## Removal of removable towbar



- 1 Insert the key and turn it clockwise to the unlocked position.



- 2 Push in the locking wheel  and turn it anticlockwise  until you hear a click.



- 3 Turn the locking wheel down fully, until it comes to a stop. Hold it in this position while pulling the towball rearward and upward.

**! WARNING**

Secure the detachable towbar safely if it is stored in the car, see page 301.



## Driving with a trailer



4 Push the protective cover until it snaps tight.

### Trailer Stability Assist - TSA\*

The TSA system (Trailer Stability Assist) serves to stabilise the car and trailer combination if it begins to snake.

The TSA function is part of the **DSTC** system (Dynamic Stability and Traction Control), see page 138.

### Function

The snaking phenomenon can occur with any car/trailer combination. Normally, snaking occurs at extremely high speeds. But, there is a risk of it occurring at lower speeds (70-90 km/h) if the trailer is overloaded or the load is improperly distributed, e.g. too far back.

In order for snaking to occur, there must be a triggering factor, e.g.:

- Car with trailer subjected to a sudden and powerful side wind.
- Car with trailer drives on an uneven road surface or in a pothole.
- Sweeping steering wheel movements.

### Operation

If snaking has started, it could be difficult or even impossible to suppress. This makes the car/trailer combination difficult to control and there is a risk that you could, for example, end up in the wrong lane or leave the carriageway.

TSA system continually monitors car movements, particularly lateral movements. If snaking is detected, the front wheels are individually braked. This serves to stabilise the car/trailer combination. This is often enough to help the driver regain control of the car.

If snaking is not eliminated the first time the TSA system comes into action, the car/trailer combination is braked with all wheels and engine power is reduced. Once snaking has been gradually suppressed and the car/trailer combination is once again stable, the TSA system stops regulating and the driver once again has full control of the car.

### Miscellaneous

The TSA system can engage within the speed interval 65 to 160 km/h.



### NOTE

TSA function is switched off if the driver selects **Sport** mode, see page 138.

TSA may fail to engage if the driver uses severe steering wheel movements to try to rectify the snaking because in such a situation the TSA system cannot determine whether it is the trailer or the driver that is causing the snaking.



The **DSTC** symbol in the combined instrument panel flashes when the TSA is working.



## Towing and recovery

### Towing

Find out the statutory maximum speed limit for towing before towing begins.

1. Unlock the steering lock by inserting the remote control key in the ignition switch and giving a long press on the **START/STOP ENGINE** button - key position **II** is activated, see page 79 for more information on key positions.
2. The remote control key must remain in the ignition switch while the car is being towed.
3. Keep the towline taut when the towing vehicle reduces speed by holding your foot gently pressed on the brake pedal - thereby avoiding unnecessary jerking.
4. Be prepared to brake to stop.

### WARNING

- Check that the steering lock is unlocked before towing.
- The remote control key must be in key position **II** - in position **I** all airbags are deactivated.
- Never remove the remote control key from the ignition switch when the car is being towed.

### WARNING

The brake servo and power steering do not work when the engine is switched off - the brake pedal needs to be depressed about 5 times more heavily and the steering is considerably heavier than normal.

### Manual gearbox

Prior to towing:

- Move gear lever into neutral and release the parking brake.

### Automatic gearbox Geartronic

### IMPORTANT

Note that the car must always be towed with the wheels rolling forward.

- Do not tow cars with automatic transmission at speeds higher than 80 km/h or for distances in excess of 80 km. Follow the speeds that are permitted in accordance with local traffic regulations.

Prior to towing:

- Move the gear selector to position **N** and release the parking brake.

### Automatic gearbox Powershift

The model with Powershift transmission should not be towed as it is dependent on the engine running in order to receive sufficient lubrication. If towing still has to take place, the route must be as short as possible and then with very low speed.

In the event of uncertainty as to whether or not the car is equipped with Powershift transmission, this can be verified by checking the designation on the transmission's label under the bonnet - see page 366. The designation "MPS6" means that it is Powershift - transmission otherwise it is Geartronic automatic transmission.



## Towing and recovery

### ! IMPORTANT

Avoid towing.

- However, the car can be towed for a short distance at low speed to move it from a dangerous position - not further than 10 km and not faster than 10 km/h. Note that the car must always be towed with the wheels rolling forward.
- In the event of moving a longer distance than 10 km, the car must be transported with the drive wheels raised from the road - professional recovery is recommended.

Prior to towing:

- Move the gear selector to position **N** and release the parking brake.

### Jump starting

Do not tow the car to bump start the engine. Use a donor battery if the battery is discharged and the engine does not start, see page 114.

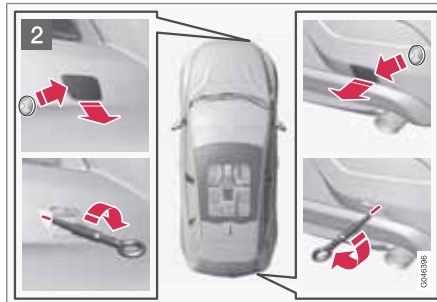
### ! IMPORTANT

The catalytic converter may be damaged during attempts to tow-start the engine.

### Towing eye

The towing eye is screwed into a threaded socket behind a cover on the right-hand side of the bumper, front or rear.

### Attaching the towing eye



- 1 Take out the towing eye that is located under the floor hatch in the cargo area.

### i NOTE

To access the towing eye/wheel wrench in the foam block:

- **Version 1:** Lift the compressor unit for the emergency puncture repair kit (point 5) to access the wheel wrench. Lift out the bottle of sealant (point 6) to access the towing eye.
- **Version 2:** Lift the compressor unit for the emergency puncture repair kit (point 5) to access the towing eye. The wheel wrench is located underneath the jack.

- 2 The cover for the towing eye's attachment point is available in two variants which must be opened in different ways:

- Open the variant with a recess using a coin or similar inserted in the recess, turning it outwards. Then turn out the cover completely and remove it.
- The second variant has a marking along one side or in a corner: Press the marking with a finger and fold out the opposite side/corner at the same time using a screwdriver - the cover turns around its axis and can then be removed.





## Towing and recovery

Screw the towing eye right in up to its flange. Turn in the towing eye firmly e.g. using the wheel wrench.

The towing eye is unscrewed after use. Place the towing eye back in its position.

Finish by refitting the cover onto the bumper.

### **IMPORTANT**

The towing eye is only designed for towing on roads - **not** for pulling the car unstuck or out of a ditch. Call a recovery service for recovery assistance.

### **NOTE**

On certain cars with towbar fitted the towing eye cannot be attached in the rear bracket. Attach the towrope in the towbar.

For this reason it is advisable to store the detachable towbar's towball in the car.

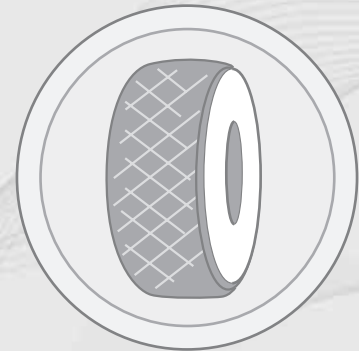
### **Recovery**

Call a recovery service for recovery assistance.

### **IMPORTANT**

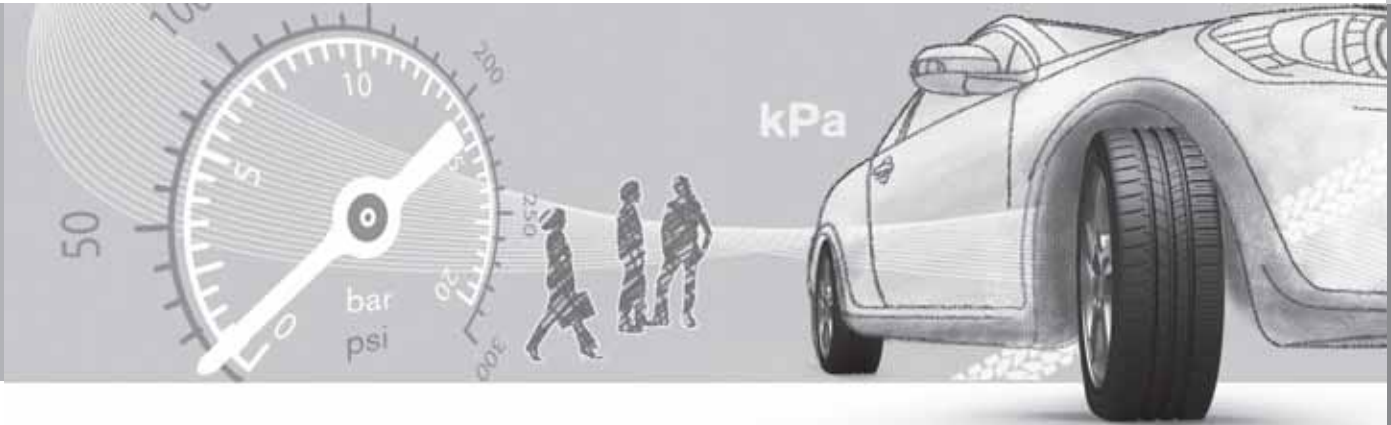
Note that the car must always be transported with the wheels rolling forward.

General .....	310
Changing wheels .....	314
Tyre pressure .....	318
Warning triangle and first-aid kit* .....	319
Emergency puncture repair (TMK)* .....	320



# 08

## WHEELS AND TYRES



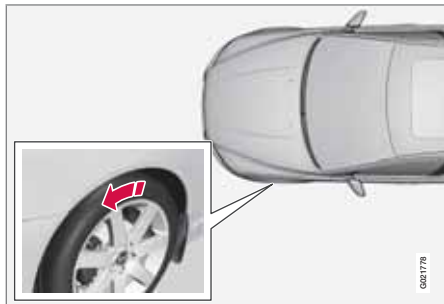


## General

### Driving characteristics

Tyres greatly affect the car's driving characteristics. The type of tyre, dimensions, tyre pressure and speed rating are important for how the car performs.

### Direction of rotation



The arrow shows the tyre's direction of rotation.

Tyres with a tread pattern which are designed to only turn in one direction have the direction of rotation marked with an arrow. The tyre must always rotate in the same direction throughout its lifespan. Tyres should only be switched between front and rear positions, never between left and right-hand sides, or vice versa. If the tyres are fitted incorrectly, the car's braking characteristics and capacity to force rain and slush out of the way are adversely affected.

Tyres with the greatest tread depth should always be fitted to the rear of the car (to decrease the risk of skidding).

### **i** NOTE

Make sure that both pairs of wheels have the same type and dimension, and also the same make.

Follow the recommended tyre pressures specified in the tyre pressure table, see page 378.

### Tyre care

#### Tyre age

All tyres older than 6 years old should be checked by an expert even if they seem undamaged. Tyres age and decompose, even if they are hardly ever or never used. The function can therefore be affected. This applies to all tyres that are stored for future use. Examples of external signs which indicate that the tyre is unsuitable for use are cracks or discoloration.

### New tyres



Tyres are perishable. After a few years they begin to harden at the same time as the friction capacity/characteristics gradually deteriorate. For this reason, aim to get as fresh tyres as possible when you replace them. This is especially important with regard to winter tyres. The last four digits in the sequence mean the week and year of manufacture. This is the tyre's DOT marking (Department of Transportation), and this is stated with four digits, for example 1510. The tyre in the illustration was manufactured in week 15 of 2010.

#### Summer and winter tyres

When summer and winter wheels are changed the wheels should be marked with which side of the car they were mounted on, for example **L** for left and **R** for right.



## General

### Wear and maintenance

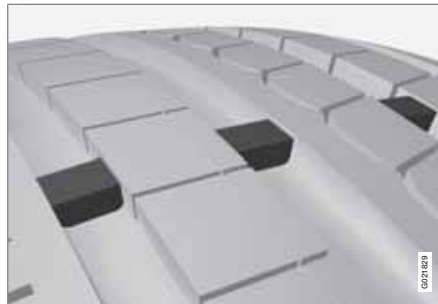
The correct tyre pressure results in more even wear, see page 318. Driving style, tyre pressure, climate and road condition affect how quickly your tyres age and wear. To avoid differences in tread depth and to prevent wear patterns arising, the front and rear wheels can be switched with each other. A suitable distance for the first change is approx. 5000 km and then at 10 000 km intervals. Volvo recommends that you contact an authorised Volvo workshop for checking if you are uncertain about tread depth. If significant differences in wear (>1 mm difference in tread depth) between tyres have already occurred, the least worn tyres must always be placed on the rear. Understeer is normally easier to correct than oversteer, and leads to the car continuing forwards in a straight line rather than having the rear end skidding to one side, resulting in possible complete loss of control over the car. This is why it is important for the rear wheels never to lose grip before the front wheels.

Wheels should be stored lying down or hanging up - and not standing up.

#### WARNING

A damaged tyre may lead to loss of control over the car.

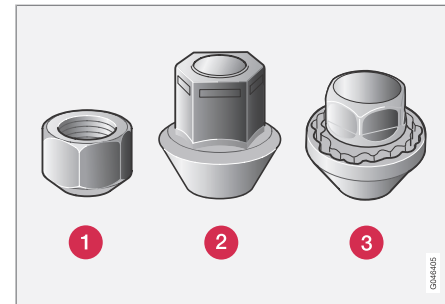
### Tyres with tread wear indicators



*Tread wear indicators.*

Tread wear indicators are narrow treadless bands across the width of the tread. On the side of the tyre are the letters **TWI** (Tread Wear Indicator). When the tyre's tread depth is down to 1.6 mm, the tread depth will be level in height with the tread wear indicators. Change to new tyres as soon as possible. Remember that tyres with little tread depth provide very poor grip in rain and snow.

### Rims and wheel bolts



- 1 Low wheel bolt
- 2 High wheel bolt
- 3 Locking wheel bolts

#### Tightening torque:

- **Type 1 wheel bolt (steel rim):** 110 Nm
- **Type 2 wheel bolt (aluminium rim):** 130 Nm
- **Type 3 Lockable wheel bolt (steel/aluminium rim):** 110 Nm

Only use rims that are tested and approved by Volvo and which are Volvo genuine accessories. Check the torque with a torque wrench.

#### Locking wheel bolts\*

Locking wheel bolts\* can be used on both aluminium and steel rims. Under the cargo area

\* Option/accessory, for more information, see Introduction.



# 08 Wheels and tyres

## General

floor there is space for the sleeve for the lockable wheel bolts.

### Winter tyres

Volvo recommends winter tyres with particular dimensions. Tyre dimensions are dependent on engine variant. When driving on winter tyres, the correct type of tyres must be fitted to all four wheels.

#### NOTE

Volvo recommends that you consult a Volvo dealer about which wheel rim and tyre types are most suitable.

### Studded tyres

Studded winter tyres should be run in gently for 500-1000 km so the studs settle properly into the tyres. This gives the tyre, and especially the studs, a longer service life.

#### NOTE

The legal provisions for the use of studded tyres vary from country to country.

### Tread depth

Road conditions with ice, slush and low temperatures place considerably higher demands on tyres than summer conditions. Volvo therefore recommends not to drive on winter tyres

that have a tread depth of less than 4 millimetres.

### Using snow chains

Snow chains may only be used on the front wheels (also applies to all-wheel drive cars).

Never drive faster than 50 km/h with snow chains. Avoid driving on bare ground as this wears out both the snow chains and tyres.

#### WARNING

Use Volvo genuine snow chains or equivalent chains designed for the car model, and tyre and rim dimensions. In the event of uncertainty Volvo recommends that you consult an authorised Volvo workshop. The wrong snow chains may cause serious damage to your car and lead to an accident.

### Specifications

The car has whole vehicle approval. This means that certain combinations of wheels and tyres are approved. For the permissible combinations, see page 378

### Wheel (rim) dimensions

Wheels (rims) have a designation of dimensions, for example: 7Jx16x50.

7	Rim width in inches
J	Rim flange profile
16	Rim diameter in inches
50	Off-set in mm (distance from wheel centre to wheel contact surface against the hub)

### Tyre dimensions

The dimensions are stated on all car tyres. Example of designation: 215/55R16 97W.

205	Tyre width (mm)
50	Ratio between tyre wall height and tyre width (%)
R	Radial ply
17	Rim diameter in inches (")
93	Codes for the maximum permitted tyre load, tyre load index (LI)
W	Speed rating for maximum permitted speed, speed rating (SS). (In this case 270 km/h).

**Load index**

Each tyre has a certain capacity to carry a load, a load index (LI). The car's weight determines the load capacity required of the tyres. Minimum permitted index is specified in the table, see page 378.

**Speed ratings**

Each tyre can withstand a certain maximum speed, a speed rating (Speed Symbol; SS).

Tyre speed class must at least correspond with the car's top speed. Minimum permitted speed rating is specified in the table, see page 378.

The only exception to these conditions is winter tyres (both those with metal studs and those without), where a lower speed rating may be used. If such a tyre is chosen, the car must not be driven faster than the speed rating of the tyre (for example, class Q can be driven at a maximum of 160 km/h).

Traffic regulations determine how fast a car can be driven, not the speed rating of the tyres.

Q	160 km/h (used only on winter tyres)
T	190 km/h
H	210 km/h
V	240 km/h
W	270 km/h
Y	300 km/h

**WARNING**

The car must be fitted with tyres which have the same or a higher load index (LI) and speed rating (SS) than specified. If a tyre with too low a load index or speed rating is used, it may overheat.

**NOTE**

The maximum permitted speed is specified in the table.



## Changing wheels

### Spare wheel\*<sup>1</sup>

The spare wheel (Temporary spare) is only intended for use temporarily and must be replaced by an ordinary wheel as soon as possible. The car's handling may be altered by the use of the spare wheel. The spare wheel is smaller than the normal wheel. The car's ground clearance is affected accordingly. Pay attention to high kerbs and do not machine wash the car. If the spare wheel is fitted on the front axle, you cannot use snow chains at the same time. On all-wheel drive cars the drive on the rear axle can be disconnected. The spare wheel must not be repaired. The correct tyre pressure for the spare wheel is stated in the tyre pressure table, see page 378.

### ! IMPORTANT

- Never drive faster than 80 km/h with a spare wheel on the car.
- The car must never be driven fitted with more than one "Temporary Spare" wheel.



### Taking out the spare wheel

The spare wheel\* plus jack\* and wheel wrench\* are stored under the floor in the luggage compartment.

1. Lift the rear edge of the luggage compartment floor (or on models with a jointed luggage compartment floor, take hold of the luggage compartment floor handle, lift and move the rear part of the floor forwards).
2. Lift out the storage compartment (optional extra) - models with a jointed luggage compartment floor only.
3. Lift out the lower floor (models with a jointed luggage compartment floor only).

4. Undo the attaching screw and lift out the foam block containing the jack and tools.
5. Take hold of the far end of the spare wheel, then lift. Push the spare wheel forwards slightly and lift it out of the storage compartment.
6. Remove the wheel wrench, the jack and the towing eye from the foam block.

### i NOTE

The jack must be lifted out in order to access the towing eye.

### Jack\*

The original jack should only be used for changing to the spare wheel. The jack's thread must always be well greased.

### Removing

Set up the warning triangle, see page 319 if a wheel must be replaced at a busy location. The car and jack\* must be on a firm horizontal surface.

<sup>1</sup> If the car is equipped with a temporary tyre repair kit, see page 320 for information.

\* Option/accessory, for more information, see Introduction.





## Changing wheels

1. Apply the parking brake and engage reverse gear, or position **P** if the car has an automatic gearbox.

### **WARNING**

Check that the jack is not damaged, that the threads are thoroughly lubricated and that it is free from dirt.

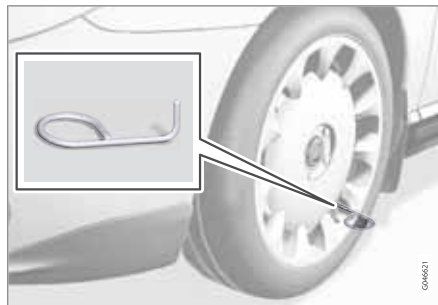
### **NOTE**

Volvo recommends only using the jack\* that belongs to the car model in question, which is indicated on the jack's label.

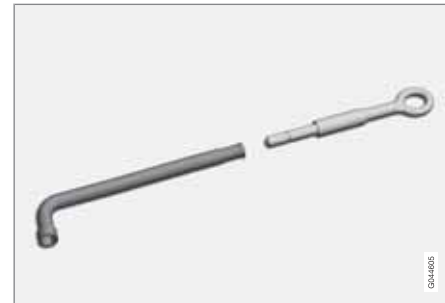
The label also indicates the jack's maximum lift capacity at a specified minimum lifting height.

2. Take out the spare wheel and tools (see the description on page 314). There is also a package containing gloves and a wheel bag for the punctured wheel.
3. Place chocks in front of and behind the wheels which will remain on the ground. Use heavy wooden blocks or large stones for example.
4. Cars with steel rims have removable wheel covers. Use the removal tool to hook in and pull off any full-wheel wheel covers. Alter-

natively, the wheel covers can be pulled away by hand.



5. Screw together the towing eye with the wheel wrench\* until the stop position as shown in the following illustration.



*The wheel wrench and towing eye*

### **IMPORTANT**

The towing eye must be screwed into all threads in the wheel bolt wrench.

6. Loosen the wheel bolts  $\frac{1}{2}$ -1 turn anticlockwise with the wheel wrench.

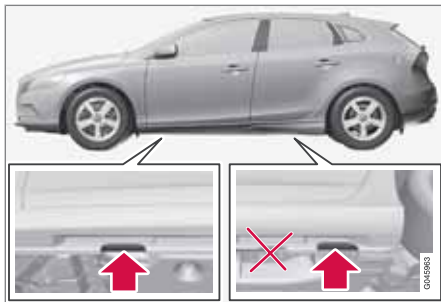
### **WARNING**

Never position anything between the ground and the jack, nor between the jack and the car's jacking point.

7. There are two jacking points on each side of the car.



## Changing wheels



### **!** IMPORTANT

The ground under the jack must be firm, smooth and level.

8. Wind up the jack so that the flange in the bodywork ends up in the notch in the head of the jack.
9. Lift the car so that the wheel is free. Remove the wheel bolts and lift off the wheel.

### **!** WARNING

Never crawl under the car when it is raised on the jack.

Passengers must leave the car when it is raised on the jack.

Park the car such that passengers have the car, or ideally a crash barrier, between themselves and the roadway.

### **i** NOTE

The car's regular jack is designed only for use occasionally and for a short time, such as when changing a wheel with a punctured tyre, switching between summer tyres and winter tyres, etc. Only the jack belonging to the specific model is to be used to jack up the car. If the car is to be jacked up more often, or for a longer time than is required just to change a wheel, use of a garage jack is recommended. In this instance, follow the instructions for use that come with the equipment.

### Installation

1. Clean the contact surfaces between wheel and hub.
2. Put on the wheel. Tighten the wheel bolts thoroughly.

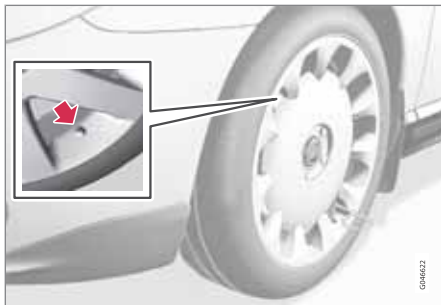
3. Lower the car so that the wheels cannot rotate.



4. Tighten the wheel bolts crosswise. It is important that the wheel bolts are tightened properly (see page 311 for tightening torques). Check the torque with a torque wrench.
- 5.



## Changing wheels



Refit any full wheel covers.

### NOTE

The wheel cover outlet for the valve must be positioned over the valve on the wheel rim during fitting.

### Replacing the spare wheel\* and jack\* in the luggage compartment

The tools and jack\* must be returned to their correct places in the foam block after use.

1. Unscrew the towing eye from the wheel wrench and place the towing eye in the compartment in the bottom of the foam block.

2. Wind together the jack to the halfway point so that it fits into the foam block. Place the end of the handle in the compartment in the foam block.
3. Put back any tools that have been used in the relevant compartments in the foam block.
4. If the spare wheel has been used, put the foam block back in the storage area and tighten the attaching screw in the floor of the storage compartment. The punctured wheel can be placed in the plastic bag contained in the package with the gloves.

If the spare wheel has **not** been used, place the foam block in the spare wheel and place the spare wheel back in the storage compartment. Tighten the attaching screw to the floor of the storage compartment.

### IMPORTANT

The tools and jack\* must be stored in the intended location in the car's cargo area when not in use.



### Tyre pressure

#### Tyre pressure



The tyre pressure decal on the driver's side door pillar (between frame and rear door) shows which pressures the tyres should have at different loads and speed conditions. This is also specified in the tyre pressure table, see page 378.

- Tyre pressure for the car's recommended tyre dimension
- ECO pressure<sup>1</sup>

#### **i** NOTE

Temperature differences change the tyre pressure.

#### Fuel economy, ECO pressure

At speeds below 160 km/h, the ECO pressure is recommended (applies for both full load and light load - see page 378) in order to obtain optimum fuel economy.

#### Checking the tyre pressure

The tyre pressures must be checked every month.

Check tyre pressures on cold tyres. "Cold tyres" means the tyres are the same temperature as the ambient temperature. After several few kilometres of driving, the tyres warm up and the pressure increases.

Inadequate tyre pressure increases fuel consumption, shortens tyre lifespan and impairs the car's roadholding. Driving on tyres with tyre pressure that is too low could result in the tyres overheating and being damaged. Tyre pressure affects travelling comfort, road noise and steering characteristics.

#### **i** NOTE

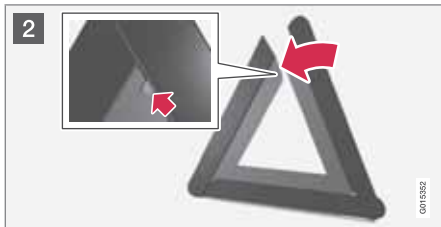
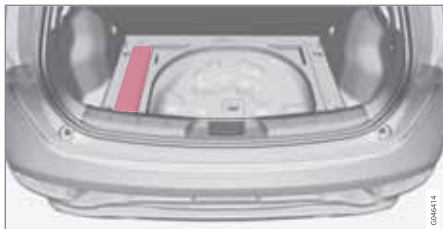
Tyre pressure decreases over time, this is a natural phenomenon. Tyre pressure also varies depending on ambient temperature.

<sup>1</sup> ECO pressure results in improved fuel economy.



## Warning triangle and first-aid kit\*

### Warning triangle



- 1 Lift the floor hatch (or push the rear part of the luggage compartment floor forwards in models with a jointed floor and then lift the lower floor) and remove the warning triangle.
- 2 Take the warning triangle from the case, fold out and assemble the two loose sides.
- 3 Fold out the warning triangle's support legs.

Follow the regulations for the use of a warning triangle. Position the warning triangle in a suitable place with regard to traffic.

Ensure the warning triangle and its case are properly secured in the cargo area after use.

### First aid kit\*

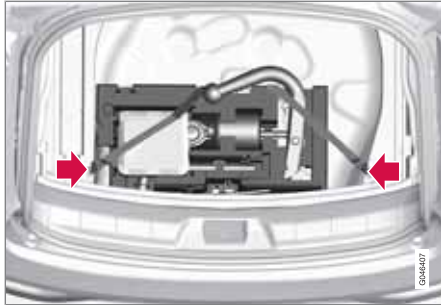
A case containing first aid equipment is located on the left side of the cargo area.



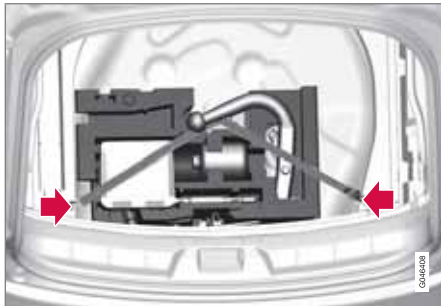
## 08 Wheels and tyres

### Emergency puncture repair (TMK)\*

#### General



Version 1.



Version 2.

Emergency puncture repair (TMK: Temporary Mobility Kit) is used to seal a puncture and check and adjust tyre pressure. It consists of a

compressor and a bottle with sealing fluid. The kit works as a temporary repair. The sealing fluid bottle must be replaced before its expiration date and after use.

The sealing fluid effectively seals tyres punctured in the tread.

#### NOTE

The emergency puncture repair kit is only intended for sealing tyres with a puncture in the tread.

The emergency puncture repair kit has limited capacity to seal tyres which have punctures in the wall. Do not seal tyres with the emergency puncture repair kit if they have larger slits, cracks or similar damage.

Connect the compressor to one of the car's 12 V sockets; see pages 236 and 296. Choose the socket that is nearest the punctured tyre.

#### NOTE

The compressor for temporary emergency puncture repair has been tested and approved by Volvo.

#### Positioning of the emergency puncture repair kit and warning triangle

Set up the warning triangle if a tyre is being sealed in a trafficked location. The warning triangle and emergency puncture repair kit are located under the floor in the luggage compartment.

1. Lift the rear edge of the luggage compartment floor (or on models with a jointed luggage compartment floor, take hold of the luggage compartment floor handle, lift and move the rear part of the floor forwards).
2. Lift out the storage compartment (optional extra) - models with a jointed luggage compartment floor only.
3. Lift out the lower floor (models with a jointed luggage compartment floor only).
4. Unhook the elastic part of the belt over the TMK compressor unit on the left side.
5. Lift the TMK compressor unit straight up.
6. To access the bottle of sealant, it must be pushed to the left until it can be lifted out of the foam block.



## Emergency puncture repair (TMK)\*

## NOTE

To access the towing eye/wheel wrench in the foam block:

- **Version 1:** Lift the compressor unit for the emergency puncture repair kit (point 5) to access the wheel wrench. Lift out the bottle of sealant (point 6) to access the towing eye.
- **Version 2:** Lift the compressor unit for the emergency puncture repair kit (point 5) to access the towing eye. The wheel wrench is located underneath the jack.

After use, hook the belt back onto the left side.

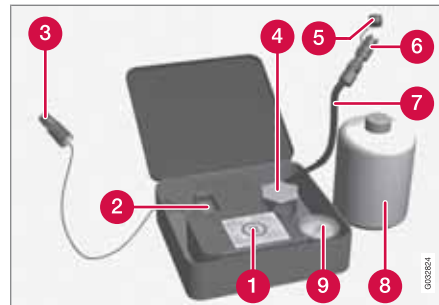
**Version 1:** The belt must be pulled behind the foam block (not above).

**Version 2:** The belt must be in the fork on the rear part of the foam block.

## WARNING

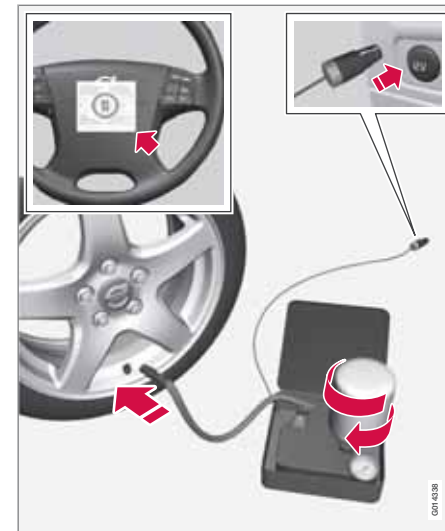
You should not drive faster than 80 km/h after the emergency tyre repair kit has been used. Volvo recommends that you visit an authorised Volvo workshop for inspection of the sealed tyre (maximum driving distance is 200 km). The staff there can determine whether or not the tyre can be repaired or if it needs to be replaced.

## Overview



- 1 Label, maximum permitted speed
- 2 Switch
- 3 Cable
- 4 Bottle holder (orange cap)
- 5 Protective cap
- 6 Pressure reducing valve
- 7 Air hose
- 8 Sealing fluid bottle
- 9 Pressure gauge

## Sealing punctured tyres



For information on the function of the parts, see preceding illustration.

1. Open the lid of the emergency puncture repair kit.
2. Detach the label for maximum permitted speed and affix it to the steering wheel.



### Emergency puncture repair (TMK)\*

#### WARNING

The sealing fluid can irritate the skin. In the case of contact with skin, wash away the fluid with soap and water.

3. Check that the switch is in position **0** and locate the cable and the air hose.

#### NOTE

Do not break the bottle's seal before use. The seal is broken automatically when the bottle is screwed in.

4. Unscrew the orange cap and unscrew the bottle's stopper.
5. Screw the bottle into its holder.

#### WARNING

Do not unscrew the bottle, it is equipped with a reverse catch to prevent leakage.

6. Unscrew the wheel's dust cap and screw in the air hose valve connection to the bottom of the thread on the tyre's air valve.
7. Plug the cable into the 12 V socket and start the car.

#### WARNING

Do not leave children in the car without supervision when the engine is running.

8. Flick the switch to position **I**.

#### WARNING

Never stand next to the tyre when the compressor is running. If cracks or unevenness arise then the compressor must be switched off immediately. The journey should not be continued. Contacting an authorised tyre centre is recommended.

#### NOTE

When the compressor starts, the pressure can increase up to 6 bar but the pressure drops after approximately 30 seconds.

9. Inflate the tyre for 7 minutes.

#### IMPORTANT

Risk of overheating. The compressor must not run for more than 10 minutes.

10. Switch off the compressor to check the pressure on the pressure gauge. Minimum pressure is 1.8 bar and maximum 3.5 bar.

(Release air with the pressure reducing valve if the tyre pressure is too high.)

#### WARNING

If the pressure is below 1.8 bar then the hole in the tyre is too big. The journey should not be continued. Contacting an authorised tyre centre is recommended.

11. Switch off the compressor and unplug the cable from the 12 V socket.
12. Detach the hose from the tyre valve and fit the valve cap.
13. As soon as possible, drive approximately 3 km at a maximum speed of 80 km/h so that the sealing fluid can seal the tyre.

#### Rechecking the repair and pressure

1. Reconnect the equipment.
2. Read the tyre pressure on the pressure gauge.
  - If it is below 1.3 bar then the tyre is insufficiently sealed. The journey should not be continued. Contact a tyre centre.
  - If the tyre pressure is higher than 1.3 bar, the tyre must be inflated to the pressure specified in accordance with the tyre pressure table, see page 378 (1)



**Emergency puncture repair (TMK)\***

bar=100 kPa). Release air using the pressure reducing valve if the tyre pressure is too high.

**WARNING**

Do not unscrew the bottle, it is equipped with a reverse catch to prevent leakage.

3. Make sure the compressor is switched off. Detach the air hose and cable. Refit the dust cap.
4. Fold the hose into the box and leave the bottle where it is. Place TMK in the luggage.

**NOTE**

The sealing fluid bottle and the hose must be replaced after use. Volvo recommends that this replacement is performed by an authorised Volvo workshop.

**WARNING**

Check the tyre pressure regularly.

Volvo recommends that you drive to the nearest authorised Volvo workshop for the replacement/repair of the damaged tyre. Advise the workshop that the tyre contains sealing fluid.

**WARNING**

You should not drive faster than 80 km/h after the emergency tyre repair kit has been used. Volvo recommends that you visit an authorised Volvo workshop for inspection of the sealed tyre (maximum driving distance is 200 km). The staff there can determine whether or not the tyre can be repaired or if it needs to be replaced.

**Inflating the tyres**

The car's original tyres can be inflated by the compressor.

1. The compressor must be switched off. Make sure that the switch is in position **0** and locate the cable and air hose.
2. Unscrew the wheel's dust cap and screw in the air hose valve connection to the bottom of the thread on the tyre's air valve.

**WARNING**

Inhaling car exhaust fumes could result in danger to life. Never leave the engine running in sealed areas or areas that lack sufficient ventilation.

**WARNING**

Do not leave children in the car without supervision when the engine is running.

3. Connect the cable to one of the car's 12 V sockets and start the car.
4. Start the compressor by flicking the switch to position **I**.

**IMPORTANT**

Risk of overheating. The compressor must not run for more than 10 minutes.

5. Inflate the tyre to the pressure specified in accordance with the tyre pressure table, see page 378. (Release air using the pressure reducing valve if the tyre pressure is too high.)
6. Switch off the compressor. Detach the air hose and cable.
7. Refit the dust cap.



### Emergency puncture repair (TMK)\*

#### Replacing the sealing fluid canister

Replace the bottle when the expiration date has passed. Treat the old bottle as environmentally hazardous waste.



#### WARNING

The bottle contains 1,2-Ethanol and natural rubber-latex.

Harmful if ingested. Could result in allergic reaction in the event of skin contact.

Avoid contact with the skin and eyes.

Store out of the reach of children.



Engine compartment.....	328
Lamps.....	335
Wiper blades and washer fluid.....	341
Battery.....	344
Fuses.....	348
Car care.....	357



# 09

## MAINTENANCE AND SERVICE





## Engine compartment

### General

#### Volvo service programme

To keep the car as safe and reliable as possible, follow the Volvo service programme as specified in the Service and Warranty Booklet. Volvo recommends engaging an authorised Volvo workshop to perform the service and maintenance work. Volvo workshops have the personnel, special tools and service literature to guarantee the highest quality of service.

#### **!** IMPORTANT

For the Volvo warranty to apply, check and follow the instructions in the Service and Warranty Booklet.

#### Check regularly

Check the following oils and fluids at regular intervals, e.g. when refuelling:

- Coolant
- Engine oil
- Washer fluid

#### **!** WARNING

Remember that the radiator fan (located at the front of the engine compartment, behind the radiator) may start automatically some after the engine has been switched off.

Always have the engine cleaned by a workshop. There is a risk of fire if the engine is hot.

#### Opening and closing the bonnet



The handle for bonnet opening is always on the left-hand side.



- 1 Turn the handle about 20-25 degrees clockwise. You will hear when the catch releases.
- 2 Move the catch to the left and open the bonnet. (The catch hook is located between the headlamp and grille, see illustration.)

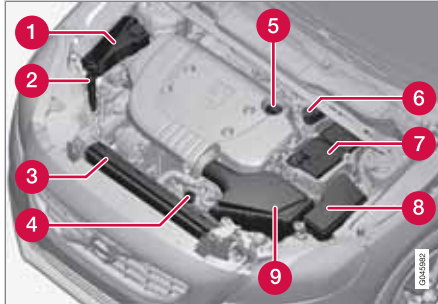
#### **!** WARNING

Check that the bonnet locks properly when closed.



## Engine compartment

## Engine compartment, overview



The appearance of the engine compartment may vary depending on engine variant.

- 1 Coolant expansion tank
- 2 Filling washer fluid
- 3 Radiator
- 4 Engine oil dipstick<sup>1</sup>
- 5 Filling engine oil
- 6 Reservoir for brake and clutch fluid (located on the driver's side)
- 7 Battery
- 8 Relay and fuse box
- 9 Air filter

**WARNING**

The ignition system has very high voltage and output. The voltage in the ignition system is highly dangerous. The remote control key must always be in **0** position when work is being done in the engine compartment, see page 79.

Do not touch the spark plugs or ignition coil when the remote control key is in **II** position or when the engine is hot.

## Checking the engine oil



Volvo recommends Castrol oil products.

When driving under adverse conditions, see page 372.

**IMPORTANT**

In order to fulfil the requirements for the engine's service intervals all engines are filled with a specially adapted synthetic engine oil at the factory. The choice of oil has been made very carefully with regard to service life, starting characteristics, fuel consumption and environmental impact.

An approved engine oil must be used in order that the recommended service intervals can be applied. Only use a prescribed grade of oil for both filling and oil change, otherwise you will risk affecting service life, starting characteristics, fuel consumption and environmental impact.

Volvo Car Corporation disclaims all warranty liability if engine oil of the prescribed grade and viscosity is not used.

Volvo recommends that oil changes are carried out at an authorised Volvo workshop.

Volvo uses different systems for warning of low/high oil level or low/high oil pressure. Certain variants have an oil pressure sensor, and then the lamp for oil pressure is used. Other variants have an oil level sensor, and then the driver is informed via the warning symbol in the centre of the instrument unit as well as by display texts. Certain models have both variants. Contact a Volvo dealer for more information.

<sup>1</sup> Engines with electronic oil level sensor have no dipstick (5-cyl. diesel).



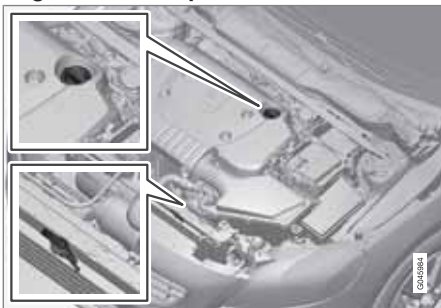
## Engine compartment

Change the engine oil and oil filter in accordance with the intervals specified in the Service and Warranty Booklet.

Using oil of a higher than specified grade is permitted. If the car is driven in adverse conditions, Volvo recommends using an oil of a higher grade, see page 372.

For capacities, see page 373 and onwards.

### Engine with oil dipstick<sup>2</sup>

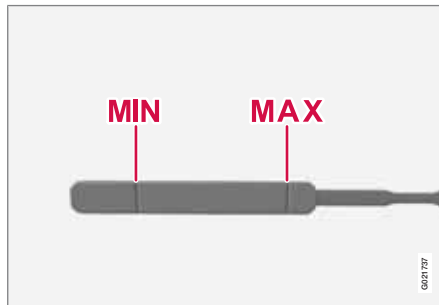


Dipstick and filler pipe.

Checking the oil level in a new car is especially important before the first scheduled oil change.

Volvo recommends checking the oil level every 2 500 km. The most accurate measurements are made on a cold engine before starting. The

measurement will be inaccurate if taken immediately after the engine is switched off. The dipstick will indicate that the level is too low because the oil has not had time to flow down into the oil sump.



The oil level must be between the **MIN** and **MAX** marks.

### Measurement and filling if required

1. Ensure that the car is level. After switching off the engine it is important to wait 5 minutes to allow the oil time to run back to the sump.
2. Pull up and wipe the dipstick.
3. Re-insert the dipstick.

4. Pull it out and check the level.
5. If the level is close to **MIN** then 0.5 litres should be added. If the level is significantly below, then an additional amount is required.
6. If required, check the level again, do it after driving a short distance. Then repeat steps 1 - 4.

### **WARNING**

Never fill above the **MAX** mark. The level should never be above **MAX** or below **MIN** as this could lead to engine damage.

### **WARNING**

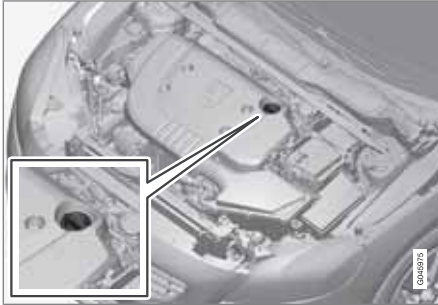
Do not spill oil onto the hot exhaust manifold due to the risk of fire.

<sup>2</sup> Only applies to petrol and 4-cyl. diesel.



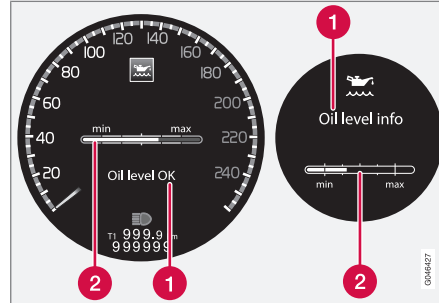


## Engine compartment

Engine with electronic oil level sensor<sup>3</sup>

Filler pipe

You do not need to take action with respect to the engine oil level before a message is shown in the display, see the illustration below.



Message and graph in the display. The left display shows the Digital combined instrument panel while the right displays shows the Analog combined instrument panel.

- 1 Message
- 2 Engine oil level

On certain cars, the oil level can be checked using the electronic oil level gauge with the thumbwheel when the engine is switched off, see page 332. **Oil level low Refill 0.5 litre**

**WARNING**

If the message **Oil service required** is shown, visit a workshop. The oil level may be too high.

**IMPORTANT**

In the event of the message **Oil level low Refill 0.5 litre**, only fill with 0.5 litres.

**NOTE**

The oil level is only detected by the system during driving. The system cannot directly detect changes when the oil is filled or drained. The car must be driven about 30 km before the oil level display is correct.

**WARNING**

Do not fill more oil if filling level (3) or (4) appears as shown in the illustration below. The level must never be above **MAX** or below **MIN**, as this could lead to engine damage.

**WARNING**

Do not spill oil onto the hot exhaust manifold due to the risk of fire.

<sup>3</sup> Only applies to 5-cyl. diesel.

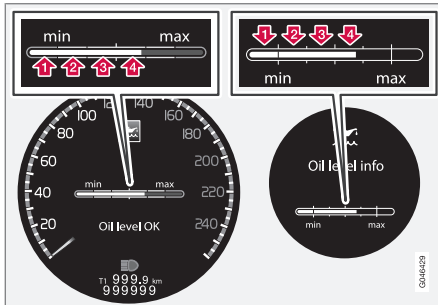


## Engine compartment

### Measuring the oil level\*

If the oil level needs to be checked then it should be carried out in accordance with the sequence below.

1. Activate key position II, see page 79.
2. Rotate the thumbwheel on the left-hand stalk switch to position **Engine oil level**  
**Wait....**
  - > You will then see information displayed about the engine oil level.



The figures 1-4 represent filling level. Do not fill more oil if filling level (3) or (4) is shown. The recommended filling level is 4. Message and graph in the display. The left display shows the Digital combined instrument panel while the right displays shows the Analog combined instrument panel.

### Coolant

#### Checking the level and topping up



When topping up the coolant, follow the instructions on the packaging. It is important that the mixture of coolant concentrate and water is correct for the prevailing weather conditions. Never top up with water only. The risk of freezing increases with both too little and too much coolant concentrate.

#### **WARNING**

Coolant can be very hot. If the coolant requires topping up when the engine is at operating temperature, unscrew the expansion tank cap slowly to gently release the overpressure.

For capacities and for standards regarding water quality, see page 374.

#### Check the coolant regularly

The level must lie between the **MIN** and **MAX** marks on the expansion tank. If the system is not filled sufficiently, high temperatures could occur, causing a risk of damage to the engine.



## Engine compartment

**! IMPORTANT**

- A high content of chlorine, chlorides and other salts may cause corrosion in the cooling system.
- Always use coolant with anti-corrosion agent as recommended by Volvo.
- Ensure that the coolant mixture is 50% water and 50% coolant.
- Mix the coolant with approved quality tap water. In the event of any doubt about water quality, used ready-mixed coolant in accordance with Volvo recommendations.
- When changing coolant/replacing cooling system components, flush the cooling system clean with approved quality tap water or flush with ready-mixed coolant.
- The engine must only be run with a well-filled cooling system. Otherwise, temperatures that are too high may occur resulting in the risk of damage (cracks) in the cylinder head.

**Brake and clutch fluid****Checking the level**

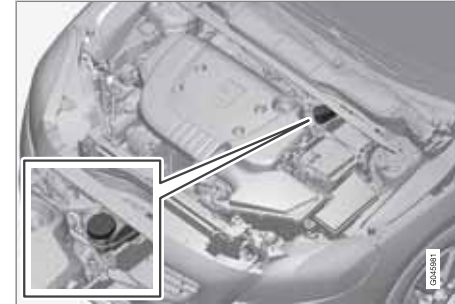
Brake and clutch fluid have a common reservoir. The level must be between the **MIN** and **MAX** marks that are visible inside the reservoir. Check the level regularly.

Change the brake fluid every other year or at every other regular service.

For capacities and recommended fluid grade, see page 374. The fluid should be changed annually on cars driven in conditions requiring hard, frequent braking, such as driving in mountains or tropical climates with high humidity.

**! WARNING**

If the brake fluid is below the **MIN** level in the brake fluid reservoir, do not drive further before topping up the brake fluid. Volvo recommends that the reason for the loss of brake fluid is investigated by an authorised Volvo workshop.

**Filling**

*Brake fluid reservoir location.*

The fluid reservoir is protected under the cover over the cold zone in the engine compartment. The round cover must be removed first before the reservoir cap can be reached.

1. Turn and open the cover located on the covering.
2. Unscrew the reservoir cap and fill the fluid. The level must be between the **MIN** and **MAX** marks, which are located on the inside of the reservoir.

**! IMPORTANT**

Do not forget to refit the cap.



### Engine compartment

#### Air conditioning system

##### Troubleshooting and repair

The air conditioning system contains fluorescent tracing agents. Use ultraviolet light when looking for leaks.

Volvo recommends that you contact an authorised Volvo workshop.



#### WARNING

The air conditioning system contains pressurised refrigerant R134a. This system must only be serviced and repaired by an authorised workshop.



## Lamps

**General**

All bulbs are specified, see page 340. The following list contains locations of bulbs and other light sources that are specialised or unsuitable for changing except at a workshop:

- Active Xenon headlamps - ABL (Xenon lamps)
- Side direction indicators, door mirrors<sup>1</sup>
- Approach lighting, door mirrors
- Side position, position lamps rear
- Brake light above the rear windscreen
- Interior and luggage compartment lighting
- Glovebox lighting
- LED lights, general

**WARNING**

On cars with Xenon headlamps, the replacement of Xenon lamps must be carried out at a workshop - an authorised Volvo workshop is recommended. Working with Xenon lamps demands extreme caution because the headlamp is equipped with a high voltage unit.

**WARNING**

The car's electrical system must be in key position **0** when replacing bulbs, see page 79.

**IMPORTANT**

Never touch the glass part of the bulbs with your fingers. Grease from your fingers is vaporised by the heat, coating the reflector and then causing damage.

**NOTE**

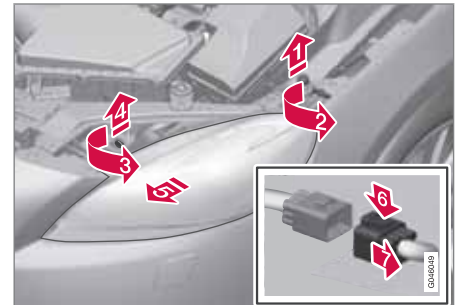
If an error message remains after the broken bulb has been replaced then we recommend that you visit an authorised Volvo workshop.

**Headlamps front**

All of the headlamp bulbs are replaced via the engine compartment. Loosen and remove the whole headlamp.



Take out the tool (Torx 30) found under the floor hatch in the cargo area.



1. Lift out the bonnet stop.

<sup>1</sup> Certain models



## Lamps

2. Undo the screw using the tool (Torx 30).
3. Turn the locking pin anticlockwise.  
 Pull out the locking pin.
4. Release the headlamp by alternately tilting and pulling it out.

### IMPORTANT

Take care when lifting out the headlamp so as not to damage any parts.

5. Press down the catch.  
 Unplug the connector.

Place the headlight on a soft surface so as not to scratch the lens.

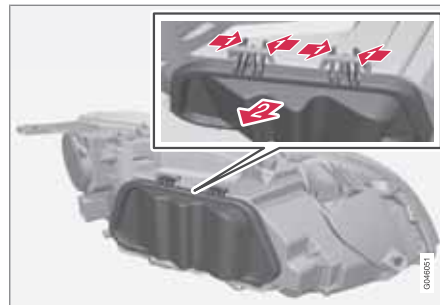
### IMPORTANT

Do not pull the electrical cable, only the connector.

6. Replace the relevant bulb as instructed.

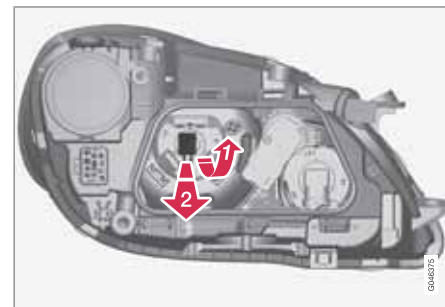
The headlight must be fitted and the contact fitted correctly before switching on the lights or switching key position.

### Cover for main/dipped beam lamps



1. Press the hooks together.  
 Angle out the cover.
2. Replace the relevant bulb as instructed.

### Dipped beam<sup>2</sup>

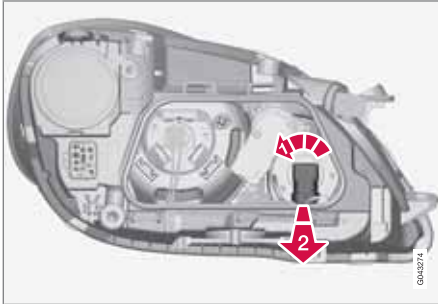


1. Detach the headlamp, see page 335.
2. Undo the cover, see page 336.
3. Press the bulb holder upwards until it releases.  
 Pull out the bulb holder.
4. Replace the bulb and put back the parts in reverse order.

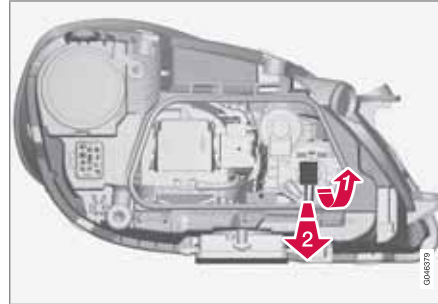
<sup>2</sup> Cars with halogen headlights



## Lamps

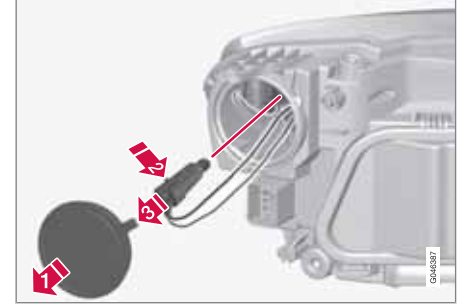
Main beam<sup>2</sup>

1. Detach the headlamp, see page 335.
2. Undo the cover, see page 336.
3. **1** Turn the bulb holder anticlockwise.  
**2** Pull out the bulb holder.
4. Replace the bulb and put back the parts in reverse order.

Additional main beam<sup>\*3</sup>

1. Detach the headlamp, see page 335.
2. Undo the cover, see page 336.
3. **1** Press the bulb holder upwards until it releases.  
**2** Pull out the bulb holder.
4. Replace the bulb and put back the parts in reverse order.

## Direction indicators/flashers, front



1. Detach the headlamp, see page 335.
2. **1** Undo the cover.
3. **2** Push in the catch.  
**3** Pull out the bulb holder.
4. Replace the bulb and put back the parts in reverse order.

<sup>2</sup> Cars with halogen headlights

<sup>3</sup> Cars with xenon headlights



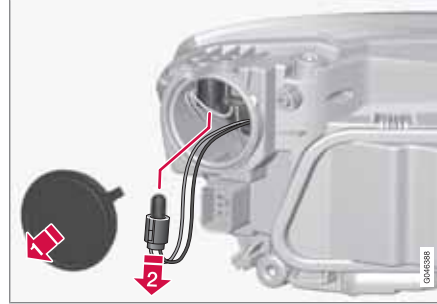
## Lamps

### Position/parking lamps<sup>4</sup>



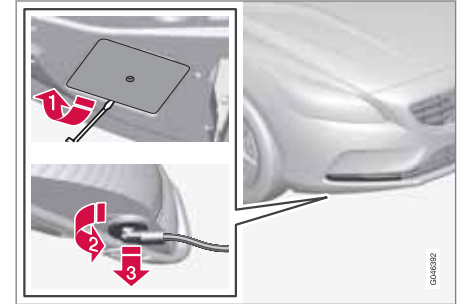
1. Detach the headlamp, see page 335.
2. **1** Turn the bulb holder anticlockwise.  
**2** Pull out the bulb holder.
3. Replace the bulb and put back the parts in reverse order.

### Side marker lamps



1. Detach the headlamp, see page 335.
2. **1** Undo the cover.
3. **2** Pull down the bulb holder.
4. Replace the bulb and put back the parts in reverse order.

### Daytime running lights<sup>5</sup>



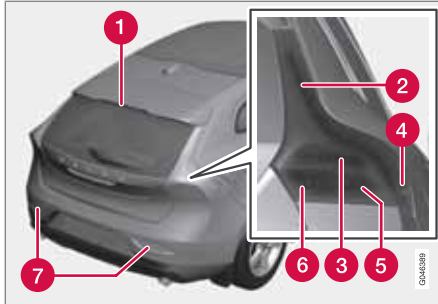
1. **1** Undo the cover.
2. **2** Turn the bulb holder anticlockwise.  
**3** Pull out the bulb holder.
3. Replace the bulb and put back the parts in reverse order.

<sup>4</sup> Not applicable to cars with xenon headlights as these are equipped with LED lamps.

<sup>5</sup> Applicable only to daytime running lights with halogen lamps.

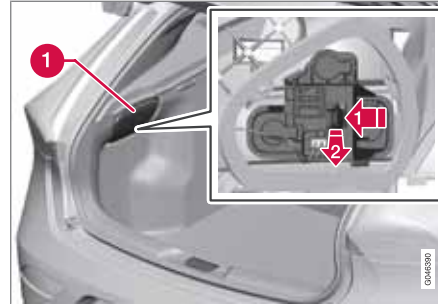


## Location of rear bulbs



- 1 Brake light (LED)
- 2 Position lamp
- 3 Brake light
- 4 Side marker lamps
- 5 Direction indicators
- 6 Reversing lamp
- 7 Rear fog lamp

## Lamp housing, rear



Direction indicators, brake lights and rear lights are replaced from inside the cargo area.

1. Remove the hatch in the upholstery (1) on the same side as the defective bulb.
2. Press the catch sideways.
- 2 Pull out the bulb holder.
3. Remove the blown bulb by pressing it in and turning anticlockwise.
4. Replace the bulb and put back the parts in reverse order.

## Rear fog lamp



- 1 Insert (approx. 20 mm) a blunt, knife-like object, such as a table knife, at the triangle. Carefully prise until the lug releases.

**IMPORTANT**

Take care not to damage any parts.

- 2 Turn the bulb holder anticlockwise.
- Pull out the bulb holder.



## Lamps

3. Replace the bulb and put back the parts in reverse order.

### Vanity mirror lighting



1. Insert a screwdriver under the lamp lens and gently prize up the lug on the edge.
2. Carefully detach and lift aside the lamp lens.
3. Using needle-nose pliers, pull the bulb straight out to the side. Do not squeeze too hard with the pliers. Otherwise, the bulb glass could break.
4. Replace the bulb and put back the parts in reverse order.

### Specification, bulbs

Lighting	[W] <sup>A</sup>	Type
Dipped beam <sup>B</sup>	55	H7 LL
Main beam <sup>B</sup>	65	H9
Additional main beam <sup>C</sup>	55	H7 LL
Front direction indicators	21	HY21W
Position lamp <sup>B</sup>	5	W5W LL
Side marker lamps	5	WY5W LL
Daytime running lights <sup>B</sup>	19	PW19W
Side direction indicators, door mirrors <sup>D</sup>	5	WY5W LL
Direction indicators, rear	21	PY21W LL
Brake light	21	P21W LL
Reversing lamp	21	P21W LL

Lighting	[W] <sup>A</sup>	Type
Rear fog lamp	21	H21W LL
Vanity mirror lighting	1.2	T5 Socket W2x4.6d

- A Watt
- B Cars with halogen headlights
- C Cars with xenon headlights
- D Certain models



## Wiper blades and washer fluid

## Wiper blades

## Service position



Wiper blades in service position.

In order to change, clean or lift the wiper blades (for scraping off ice from the windshield, for example) they must be in service position.

**! IMPORTANT**

Before placing the wiper blades in the service position, make sure that they are not frozen down.

1. Place the remote control key in the ignition lock<sup>1</sup> and briefly press the **START/STOP ENGINE** button to set the car's electrical

system to key position **I**. (For detailed information on key positions, see page 79.)

2. Briefly press the **START/STOP ENGINE** button again to set the car's electrical system in key position **0**.
3. Within 3 seconds, move the right stalk switch up and hold it in position for approx. 1 second.
  - > The wipers then move to standing straight up.

The wipers return to their starting position when you briefly press the **START/STOP ENGINE** button to set the car's electrical system to key position **I** (or when the car is started).

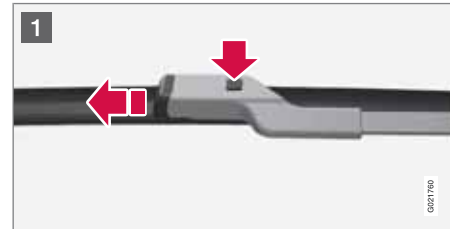
**! IMPORTANT**

If the wiper arms in the service position have been folded up from the windshield, they must be folded back down onto the windshield before the wipers are allowed to return to their starting position. This is to avoid scraping the paint on the bonnet.

**i NOTE**

Once the wiper arms have been in service position, the wipers must be activated and deactivated before the service position can be used again.

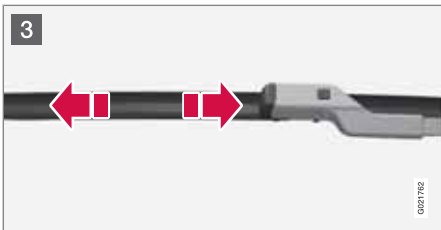
## Replacing the wiper blades



<sup>1</sup> Not necessary in cars with Keyless function.

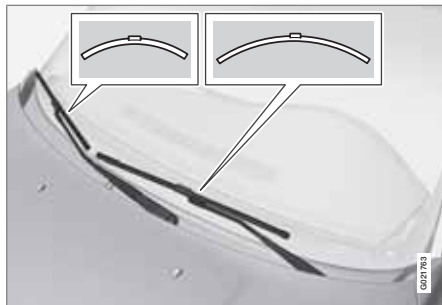


## Wiper blades and washer fluid



- 1 Fold up the wiper arm when it is in service position. Press the button located on the wiper blade mounting and pull straight out parallel with the wiper arm.
- 2 Slide in the new wiper blade until a "click" is heard.
- 3 Check that the blade is firmly installed.
4. Fold the wiper arm back towards the windscreen.

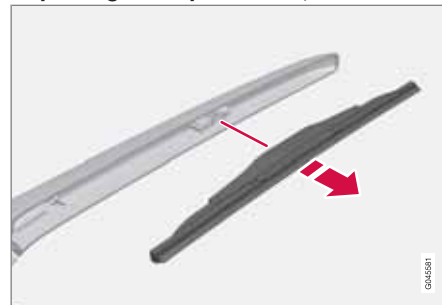
The wipers return from service position to their starting position when you briefly press the **START/STOP ENGINE** button to set the car's electrical system to key position I (or when the car is started).



**NOTE**  
The wiper blades are different lengths. The blade on the driver's side is longer than on the passenger side.

**WARNING**  
Since the car is equipped with airbag Pedestrian Airbag, Volvo recommends that genuine wiper arms are used and that you only use genuine parts for them.

## Replacing the wiper blades, rear window



1. Fold out the wiper arm.
2. Grip the inner section of the blade (by the arrow).
3. Turn anticlockwise to use the blade's end position against the wiper arm as a lever to detach the blade more easily.
4. Press the new wiper blade into position. Check that it is firmly installed.
5. Lower the wiper arm.

### Cleaning

For cleaning wiper blades and windscreen, see page 357 and onwards.

**Wiper blades and washer fluid****! IMPORTANT**

Check the blades regularly. Neglected maintenance shortens the service life of the wiper blades.

**Filling washer fluid**

The windscreen and headlamp washers share a common reservoir.

**! IMPORTANT**

Use washer fluid with antifreeze during the winter to avoid freezing in the pump, reservoir and hoses.

For capacities, see page 374.



## Battery

### Operation

The service life and function of the battery is influenced by factors such as the number of starts, discharging, driving style, driving conditions, climatic conditions etc.

- Never disconnect the battery when the engine is running.
- Check that the cables to the battery are correctly connected and properly tightened.

### WARNING

- The battery can generate oxyhydrogen gas, which is highly explosive. A spark can be formed if a jump lead is connected incorrectly, and this can be enough for the battery to explode.
- The battery contains sulphuric acid, which can cause serious burns.
- If sulphuric acid comes into contact with eyes, skin or clothing, flush with large quantities of water. If acid splashes into the eyes - seek medical attention immediately.

### NOTE

The life of the battery is shortened if it becomes discharged repeatedly.

The life of the battery is affected by several factors, including driving conditions and climate. Battery starting capacity decreases gradually with time and therefore needs to be recharged if the car is not used for a longer time or when it is only driven short distances. Extreme cold further limits starting capacity.

To maintain the battery in good condition, at least 15 minutes of driving/week is recommended or that the battery is connected to a battery charger with automatic trickle charging.

A battery that is kept fully charged has a maximum service life.

### IMPORTANT

A quick charger must never be used when charging the battery.





### IMPORTANT

If the following instruction is not observed then the energy saving function for infotainment may be temporarily disengaged, and/or the message in the information display about the main battery's state of charge may be temporarily inapplicable, following the connection of an external battery or battery charger:


- The negative battery terminal on the car's main battery must **never** be used for connecting an external battery or battery charger - only the **car chassis** may be used as the grounding point.

See the section "Start assistance" - for a description of how the cable clamps must be attached.

**Battery****Symbols on the battery**

	Use protective goggles.
	Further information in the owner's manual.
	Store the battery out of the reach of children.
	The battery contains corrosive acid.

	Avoid sparks and naked flames.
	Risk of explosion.
	Must be taken for recycling.

	<b>NOTE</b> An expended battery must be recycled in an environmentally safe manner as it contains lead.
---	--

**Replacing the main battery**

Volvo recommends that you allow an authorised workshop to replace the batteries - an authorised Volvo workshop is recommended. For more information on the car's main battery - see page 114

**Eco Start/Stop DRIVE\***

Cars with the Start/Stop function are equipped with two 12 V batteries - one extra powerful battery for starting and one standby battery that helps during the Eco Start/Stop DRIVE function's starting sequence.

For more information on Start/Stop - see page 123.

For more information on the car's main battery - see page 114 and 379.



## Battery

Battery	Start	Support
Cold start capacity <sup>A</sup> , CCA (A)	760 <sup>B</sup> 800 <sup>C</sup>	120 <sup>B</sup> 180 <sup>C</sup>
Size <sup>D</sup> , L×W×H (mm)	278×175×190 <sup>B</sup> 315×175×190 <sup>C</sup>	150×90×106 <sup>B</sup> 150×90×130 <sup>C</sup>
Capacity (Ah)	70 <sup>B</sup> 80 <sup>C</sup>	8 <sup>B</sup> 10 <sup>C</sup>

A According to EN standard.

B Manual gearbox.

C Automatic gearbox.

D Largest possible size.

### ! IMPORTANT

When replacing batteries in cars with the Start/Stop function, the AGM<sup>1</sup> type batteries must be fitted.

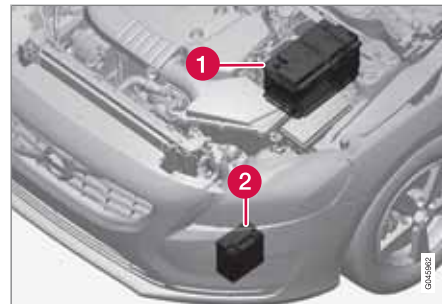
### i NOTE

- The higher the current take-off in the car (extra cooling/heating, etc.) the more the batteries must be charged = increased fuel consumption.
- When the capacity of the battery has fallen below the lowest permissible level then the Start/Stop function is disengaged.

Temporarily reduced Start/Stop function due to high current take-off means:

- The engine starts automatically<sup>2</sup> without the driver depressing the clutch pedal (manual gearbox).
- The engine starts automatically without the driver lifting his/her foot off the foot brake pedal (automatic gearbox).

### Location of the batteries



A: Left-hand drive car. B: Right-hand drive car. 1. Battery for starting<sup>3</sup> 2. Support battery.

The support battery normally requires no more service than the normal battery that is used for starting. A workshop should be contacted in the event of questions or problems - an authorised Volvo workshop is recommended.

<sup>1</sup> Absorbed Glass Mat

<sup>2</sup> Automatic starting can only take place if the gear lever is in neutral position.

<sup>3</sup> The battery for starting is described in detail on page 345.



**!** **IMPORTANT**

If the following instruction is not observed then the Start/Stop function may temporarily cease to work after the connection of an external battery or battery charger:

- The negative battery terminal on the car's main battery must **never** be used for connecting an external battery or battery charger - only the **car chassis** may be used as the grounding point.

See the section "Start assistance" - for a description of how the cable clamps must be attached.

**i** **NOTE**

If the battery has become so discharged that everything is "black" and in principle the car does not have all the normal electrical functions and the engine is subsequently started using an external battery or battery charger, then the Start/Stop function will be activated. It will then be possible for the engine to be auto-stopped but in the event of an auto-stop the Start/Stop function may fail to auto-start the engine due to inadequate capacity in the battery.

The battery must first be charged in order to ensure a successful auto-start after an auto-stop. At an outside temperature of +15 °C the battery needs to be charged for at least 1 hour. At a lower outside temperature a charging time of 3-4 hours is recommended. The recommendation is that the battery is charged using an external battery charger.

If this is not possible then the recommendation is to temporarily deactivate the Start/Stop function until the battery has been adequately recharged.

For more information about recharging the battery, see the section "Battery" in the chapter "Maintenance and service".



## Fuses

### General

All electrical functions and components are protected by a number of fuses in order to protect the car's electrical system from damage by short circuiting or overloading.

If an electrical component or function does not work, it may be because the component's fuse was temporarily overloaded and failed. If the same fuse fails repeatedly then there is a fault in the circuit. Volvo recommends that you visit an authorised Volvo workshop for checking.

### Changing

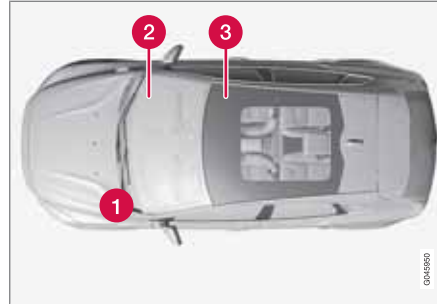
1. Look in the fuse diagram to locate the fuse.
2. Pull out the fuse and check from the side to see whether the curved wire has blown.
3. If this is the case, replace it with a new fuse of the same colour and amperage.



### WARNING

Never use a foreign object or a fuse with an amperage higher than that specified when replacing a fuse. This could cause significant damage to the electrical system and possibly lead to fire.

### Location, fuse boxes



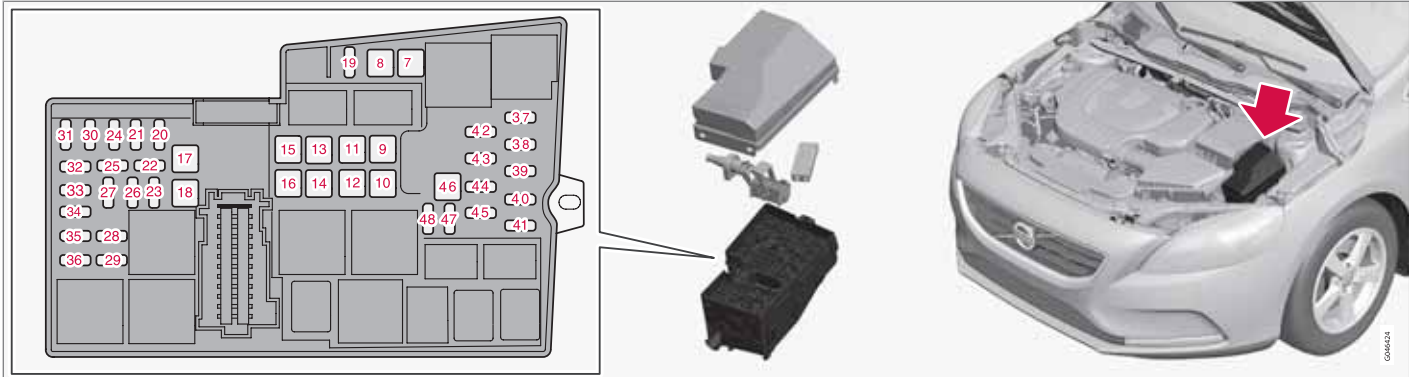
Fuse box locations in a left-hand drive car. In a right-hand drive car the fuse box under the glovebox changes sides.

- 1 Engine compartment
- 2 Under the glovebox
- 3 Below right front seat



## Fuses

## Engine compartment



On the inside of the cover there are tweezers that facilitate the procedure for the removal and fitting of fuses.

The fusebox also provides space for several spare fuses.

**Positions**

The label on the inside of the cover shows the positions of the fuses.

- Fuses 7-18 are of "JCASE" type and should be replaced by a workshop<sup>1</sup>.
- Fuses 19-45 and 47-48 are of "Mini Fuse" type.

	Function	A
7	ABS pump	40
8	ABS valves	30
9	Headlamp washers*	20
10	Ventilation fan	40
11	-	-
12	Primary fuse for fuses 32-36	30

	Function	A
13	Starter motor actuator solenoid (not Start/Stop)	30
14	Electric windscreen, right side*	40
15	-	-
16	Electric windscreen, left side*	40
17	Parking heater*	20
18	Windscreen wipers	20

<sup>1</sup> An authorised Volvo workshop is recommended.



# 09 Maintenance and service

09

## Fuses

	Function	A
19	Central electronic module, reference voltage, standby battery (Start/Stop)	5
20	Horn	15
21	Brake light	5
22	-	-
23	Headlamp control	5
24	Internal relay coils	5
25	12 V socket, tunnel console front	15
26	Transmission control module	15
27	Solenoid clutch A/C	15
28	12 V socket, tunnel console rear	15
29	Climate sensor*; air intake throttle motors	10
30	Engine control module (5-cyl.)	5
31	Power seat, right*	20

	Function	A
32	Relay coil in cooling fan relay (4-cyl., 5-cyl. diesel); Lambda-sensors (4-cyl. petrol); Mass air flow meter (diesel), Bypass valve, EGR cooling (diesel); Regulator valve, fuel flow (5-cyl. diesel); Regulator valve, fuel pressure (5-cyl. diesel)	10
	Relay coil in cooling fan relay (5-cyl. petrol); Lambda-sensors (5-cyl. petrol)	20
33	Mass air flow meter (4-cyl. petrol); EVAP valve (4-cyl. petrol); Injection valves (5-cyl. petrol); Control motor, turbo (4-cyl. diesel); Regulator valve, fuel flow (4-cyl. diesel); Solenoid, piston cooling (5-cyl. diesel); Turbo regulator valve (5-cyl. diesel); Oil level sensor (5-cyl. diesel)	10
34	Valves (petrol); Solenoids (petrol); Lambda probe (diesel); Crankcase ventilation heater (5-cyl.); Mass air flow meter (5-cyl. petrol)	10

	Function	A
35	Ignition coils (petrol)	10
	Diesel filter heater; Glow plug control unit (5-cyl. diesel); Oil pump, automatic gearbox (5-cyl. diesel Start/Stop)	15
36	Engine control module (4-cyl.)	10
	Engine control module (5-cyl.); Throttle unit (5-cyl. petrol)	15
37	ABS	5
38	Engine control module; Transmission control module; Airbags	10
39	Light height control*	10
40	Electric control servo	5
41	Central electronic module	15
42	-	-
43	Coolant pump (Start/Stop)	10
44	Collision warning system	5
45	Accelerator pedal sensor	5
46	Charging point, standby battery	-



## Fuses

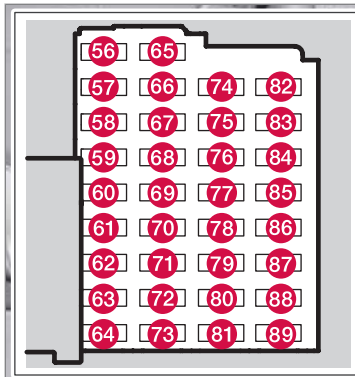
09

	Function	A
47	-	-
48	-	-



## Fuses

### Under the glovebox



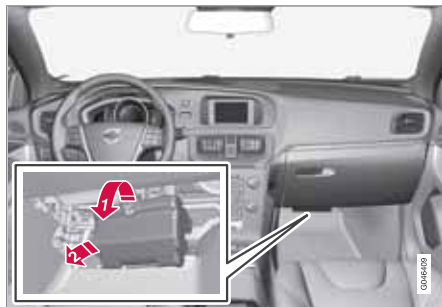
On the inside of the cover for the **fusebox in the engine compartment** there are tweezers that facilitate the procedure for the removal and fitting of fuses.

The **fusebox in the engine compartment** also provides space for several spare fuses.

### Replacing fuses

The fuses can be accessed when a protective cover has been removed from the fusebox.

### Cover removal



1. Take hold of the recess and pull until the locking lugs in the lower edge of the cover are released from the fusebox.
2. Remove the cover.

### **i** NOTE

A relatively large amount of tensile force is required to release the locking lugs at the top edge of the cover from the electrical distribution unit.



## Fuses

## Cover refitting



1. Guide in the lower lugs.
2. Turn the cover upwards until the upper lugs engage.

**NOTE**

Make sure that the upper locking lugs are seated properly in the grooves of the electrical distribution unit.

**Positions**

The label on the inside of the cover shows the positions of the fuses.

The fuses are of "Mini Fuse" type.

	Function	A
56	Fuel pump	20
57	-	-
58	Rear window wiper	15
59	Reserve position, interior lighting	5
60	Interior lighting; Power seats	10
61	Blind, glass roof*	10
62	Rain sensor*; Dimming, interior rearview mirror*; Moisture sensor*	5
63	Collision warning system*	5
64	-	-
65	Unlocking, tailgate <sup>A</sup>	10
66	-	-
67	Reserve position 3, constant voltage	5
68	Steering lock	15
69	Combined instrument panel	5

	Function	A
70	Central locking system, fuel filler flap <sup>B</sup>	10
71	Climate panel	10
72	Steering wheel module	7.5
73	Siren alarm*; Data link connector OBDII	5
74	Main beam	15
75	-	-
76	Reversing lamp	10
77	Windscreen wipers <sup>C</sup> ; Rear windscreen wiper <sup>C</sup>	20
78	Immobiliser	5
79	Reserve position 1, constant voltage	15
80	Reserve position 2, constant voltage	20
81	Movement sensor alarm*; Remote receiver	5

\* Option/accessory, for more information, see Introduction.



## Fuses

	Function	A
82	Windscreen wipers <sup>D</sup> ; Rear wind-screen wiper <sup>D</sup>	20
83	Central locking system, fuel filler flap <sup>E</sup>	10
84	Unlocking, tailgate <sup>F</sup>	10
85	PTC element, air preheater*; Button, rear seat heating*	7.5
86	Airbags; Pedestrian airbag	10
87	Reserve position 4, constant voltage	7.5
88	-	-
89	-	-

A See also fuse 84.

B See also fuse 83.

C See also fuse 82.

D See also fuse 77.

E See also fuse 70.

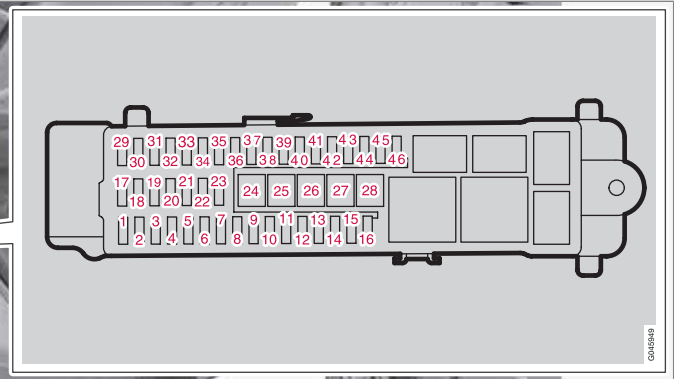
F See also fuse 65.





## Fuses

## Below right front seat



On the inside of the cover for the **fusebox in the engine compartment** there are tweezers that facilitate the procedure for the removal and fitting of fuses.

The **fusebox in the engine compartment** also provides space for several spare fuses.

**Positions**

The label on the inside of the cover shows the positions of the fuses.

- Fuses 24-28 are of "JCASE" type and should be replaced by a workshop<sup>2</sup>.
- Fuses 1-23 and 29-46 are of "Mini Fuse" type.

	Function	A
1	-	-
2	Keyless*	10
3	Door handle (Keyless*)	5
4	Control panel, left front door	25

	Function	A
5	Control panel, right front door	25
6	Control panel, left rear door	25
7	Control panel, right rear door	25
8	-	-
9	Power seat left*	20
10	-	-

<sup>2</sup> An authorised Volvo workshop is recommended.



# 09 Maintenance and service

09

## Fuses

	Function	A
11	-	-
12	Audio control unit (amplifier)*	5
13	-	-
14	Telematics*; Bluetooth*	5
15	Audio; Infotainment control unit	15
16	Digital radio*; TV*	10
17	12 V socket, cargo area	15
18	-	-
19	-	-
20	-	-
21	-	-
22	-	-
23	Trailer socket 2*	20
24	Primary fuse for fuses 12-16: Infotainment	40
25	-	-

	Function	A
26	Trailer socket 1*	40
27	Rear window defroster	30
28	-	-
29	BLIS*	5
30	Parking assistance*	5
31	Parking camera*	5
32	-	-
33	-	-
34	Seat heating (driver's side)	15
35	Seat heating (passenger side)	15
36	-	-
37	-	-
38	-	-
39	Seat heating, rear right*	15
40	Seat heating, rear left*	15
41	AWD control module*	15

	Function	A
42	-	-
43	-	-
44	-	-
45	-	-
46	-	-



## Washing the car

Wash the car as soon as it becomes dirty. Wash the car in a car wash with oil separator. Use car shampoo.

- Remove bird droppings from the paintwork as soon as possible. Bird droppings contain chemicals that affect and discolour paintwork very quickly. An authorised Volvo workshop is recommended for the removal of any discoloration.
- Hose down the underbody.
- Rinse the entire car until the dissolved dirt has been removed so as to reduce the risk of scratches from washing. Do not spray directly onto the locks.
- If necessary, use cold degreasing agent on very dirty surfaces. Note that in this case, the surfaces must not be hot from the sun!
- Wash using a sponge, car shampoo and plenty of lukewarm water.
- Clean the wiper blades with a lukewarm soap solution or car shampoo.
- Dry the car using a clean, soft chamois or a water scraper. If you avoid allowing drops of water to dry in strong sunlight, you reduce the risk of water drying stains which may need to be polished out.

### WARNING

Always have the engine cleaned by a workshop. There is a risk of fire if the engine is hot.

### IMPORTANT

Dirty headlamps have impaired functionality. Clean them regularly, when refuelling for example.

Do not use any corrosive cleaning agents but use water and a non-scratching sponge instead.

### NOTE

Outside lighting such as headlamps, fog lamps and rear lamps may temporarily have condensation on the inside of the lens. This is normal, all exterior lighting is designed to withstand this. Condensation is normally vented out of the lamp housing when the lamp has been switched on for a time.

## Cleaning the wiper blades

Asphalt, dust and salt residue on wiper blades, as well as insects, ice etc. on the windscreen, impair the service life of wiper blades.

For cleaning:

- Set the wiper blades in service position, see page 341.

### NOTE

Wash the wiper blades and windscreen regularly with lukewarm soap solution or car shampoo.

Do not use any strong solvents.

## Automatic car washes

An automatic car wash is a simple and quick way of washing the car, but it cannot reach everywhere. Handwashing the car is recommended for achieving optimum results.

### NOTE

The car must only be washed by hand over the first few months. This is because the paint is more delicate when it is new.

## High-pressure washing

When using high-pressure washing, use sweeping movements and make sure that the nozzle does not come closer than 30 cm to the surface of the car (the distance applies to all exterior parts). Do not spray directly onto the locks.



## Car care

### Testing the brakes

#### **WARNING**

Always test the brakes after washing the car, including the parking brake, to ensure that moisture and corrosion do not attack the brake linings and reduce braking performance.

Lightly depress the brake pedal now and then when driving long distances in rain or slush. The heat from the friction causes the brake linings to warm up and dry. Do the same thing after starting in very damp or cold weather.

### Exterior plastic, rubber and trim components

A special cleaning agent available from Volvo dealers is recommended for the cleaning and care of coloured plastic parts, rubber and trim components, such as glossy trim mouldings. When using such a cleaning agent the instructions must be followed carefully.

#### **IMPORTANT**

Avoid waxing and polishing on plastic and rubber.

When using degreasant on plastic and rubber, only rub with light pressure if it is necessary. Use a soft washing sponge.

Polishing glossy trim mouldings could wear away or damage the glossy surface layer.

Polishing agent that contains abrasive must not be used.

### Rims

Only use rim cleaning agent recommended by Volvo.

Strong rim cleaning agents can damage the surface and cause stains on chrome-plated aluminium rims.

### Polishing and waxing

Polish and wax the car if the paintwork is dull or to give the paintwork extra protection.

The car does not need to be polished until it is at least one year old. However, the car can be waxed during this time. Do not polish or wax the car in direct sunlight.

Wash and dry the car thoroughly before you begin polishing or waxing. Clean off asphalt and tar stains using tar remover or white spirit.

More stubborn stains can be removed using fine rubbing paste designed for car paintwork.

Polish first with a polish and then wax with liquid or solid wax. Follow the instructions on the packaging carefully. Many preparations contain both polish and wax.

#### **IMPORTANT**

Only paint treatment recommended by Volvo should be used. Other treatment such as preserving, sealing, protection, lustre sealing or similar could damage the paintwork. Paintwork damage caused by such treatments is not covered by Volvo warranty.

### Water-repellent coating\*



Never use products such as car wax, degreaser or similar on glass surfaces as this could ruin their water-repellent properties.

Take care when cleaning so as not to damage the glass surface.

To avoid damaging glass surfaces when removing ice – only use plastic ice scrapers.

There is natural wear of the water-repellent coating.

Treatment with a special finishing agent available from Volvo dealers is recommended in



order to maintain the water-repellent properties. This should be used first after three years and then each year.

### Rustproofing – inspection and maintenance

The car received a thorough and complete rustproofing at the factory. Parts of the body are made of galvanised sheet metal. The underbody is protected by a wear-resistant anti-corrosion compound. A thin, penetrating rustproofing fluid was sprayed into the exposed members, cavities, closed sections and side doors.

Under normal conditions the rustproofing does not require treatment for approximately 12 years. After this period, it should be treated at three-year intervals. Volvo recommends that you engage an authorised Volvo workshop for assistance if the car needs further treatment.

Dirt and road salt can lead to corrosion so it is important to keep the car clean. The car's rustproofing needs to be checked regularly and touched-up if necessary in order for it to be maintained.

### Cleaning the interior

Only use cleaning agents and car care products recommended by Volvo. Clean regularly and follow the instructions included with the car care product.

Vacuuming is important prior to using cleaning agents.

### Carpets and cargo area

Remove inlaid carpets for separate cleaning of the floor carpet and the inlaid carpets. Use a vacuum cleaner to remove dust and dirt.

Each inlay mat is secured with pins.

- Take hold of the inlay mat at each pin and lift the mat straight up.

Fit the inlay mat in place by pressing it in at each pin.



### WARNING

Before setting off check that the inlaid mat in the driver area is firmly affixed and secured in the pins in order to avoid getting caught adjacent to and under the pedals.

A special textile cleaner is recommended for stains on the floor mat after vacuuming. Floor mats should be cleaned with agents recommended by your Volvo dealer!

### Stains on fabric upholstery and roof upholstery

A special fabric cleaning agent, available from authorised Volvo dealers, is recommended to avoid impairing the fire retardant qualities of the upholstery.



### IMPORTANT

Sharp objects and Velcro may damage the fabric upholstery.

### Treating stains on leather upholstery

Volvo's leather upholstery is chromium-free and is treated to preserve its original appearance.

Leather upholstery ages and acquires a beautiful patina over time. The leather is refined and processed so that it retains its natural characteristics. It is given a protective coating, but regular cleaning is required in order to maintain both characteristics and appearance. Volvo offers a comprehensive product for the cleaning and treatment of leather upholstery which, when used in accordance with the instructions, preserves the leather's protective coating. After a period of use the natural appearance of the leather will nevertheless emerge, depending more or less on the surface texture of the leather. This is a natural maturing of the leather and shows that it is a natural product.



## Car care

To achieve best results Volvo recommends cleaning and the application of protective cream once to four times per year (or more if necessary). The Volvo Leather Care kit is available from your Volvo dealer.

### **IMPORTANT**

- Certain items of coloured clothing (for example, jeans and suede garments) may stain the upholstery.
- Never use strong solvents. Such products may damage fabric, vinyl and leather upholstery.

### **Washing instructions for leather upholstery**

1. Pour the leather cleaner on the dampened sponge and squeeze out a strong foam.
2. Work the dirt away with gentle circular movements.
3. Dab accurately with the sponge on the stains. Allow the sponge to absorb the stain. Do not rub.
4. Wipe off with soft paper or a cloth and allow the leather to dry completely.

### **Protective treatment of leather upholstery**

1. Pour a small amount of the protective cream on the felted cloth and massage in a thin layer of cream with gentle circular movements on the leather.
2. Allow the leather to dry for 20 minutes before use.

The leather has now been given improved protection against stains and improved UV protection.

### **Washing instructions for the leather steering wheel**

- Remove dirt and dust with a soft pre-moistened sponge and neutral soap.
- Leather needs to breathe. Never cover the leather steering wheel with protective plastic.
- Use natural oils. Volvo's leather care agents are recommended for best results.

### **If the steering wheel has stains:**

**Group 1** (ink, wine, coffee, milk, sweat and blood)

- Use a soft cloth or sponge. Mix a 5% ammonia solution. (For blood stains, use a solution of 2 dl water and 25g salt.)

**Group 2** (fats, oils, sauces and chocolate)

1. Same procedure as for group 1.
2. Polish with an absorbent paper or cloth.

**Group 3** (dry dirt, dust)

1. Use a soft brush to remove the dirt.
2. Same procedure as for group 1.

### **Treating stains on interior plastic, metal and wood parts**

A fibrillated fibre or microfibre cloth, lightly moistened with water, available from Volvo dealers, is recommended for cleaning interior parts and surfaces.

Do not scrape or rub stains. Never use strong stain removers. A special cleaning agent available from Volvo dealers can be used for more difficult cleaning.

### **Cleaning seatbelts**

Use water and a synthetic detergent. A special textile cleaning agent is available from your Volvo dealer. Make sure the seatbelt is dry before allowing it to retract.



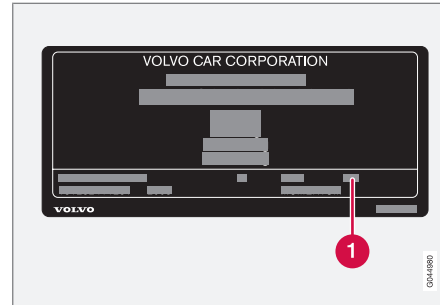
## Touching up minor paintwork damage

Paint is an important part of the car's rust-proofing and should therefore be checked regularly. To avoid the onset of rust, damaged paintwork should be rectified immediately. The most common types of paintwork damage are stone chips, scratches and marks on the edges of wings, doors and bumpers.

### Materials

- primer<sup>1</sup> - a special adhesive primer in a spray can is available for e.g. plastic-coated bumpers
- basecoat and clearcoat - available in spray cans or as touch-up pens/sticks<sup>2</sup>
- masking tape
- fine sand paper<sup>1</sup>.

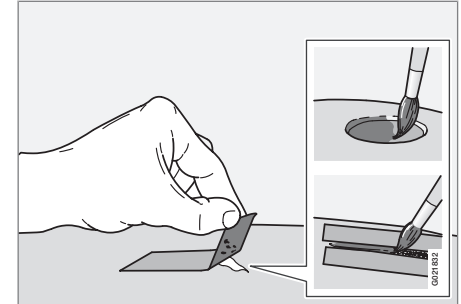
### Colour code



#### 1 Car colour code

It is important that the correct colour is used. For product decal location, see page 366.

## Repair minor paintwork damage such as stone chips and scratches



Before work is begun, the car must be clean and dry and at a temperature above 15 °C.

1. Apply a piece of masking tape over the damaged surface. Then remove the tape to remove any loose paint.

If the damage is down to the metal, use of a primer is appropriate. In the event of damage to a plastic surface, an adhesive primer should be used to give better results - spray into the lid of the spray can and brush on thinly.

<sup>1</sup> If required.

<sup>2</sup> Follow the instructions that are included with the package for the touch-up pen/stick.



### Car care

2. Before painting, gentle polishing using a very fine polishing agent may be carried out locally if required (e.g. if there are any uneven edges). The surface is cleaned thoroughly and left to dry.
3. Stir the primer well and apply using a fine brush, a matchstick or similar. Finish off with a basecoat and clearcoat once the primer has dried.
4. For scratches, proceed as above, but mask around the damaged area to protect the undamaged paintwork.



#### NOTE

If the stone chip has not penetrated down to the metal and an undamaged layer of paint remains in place, fill in with basecoat and clearcoat as soon as the surface has been cleaned.



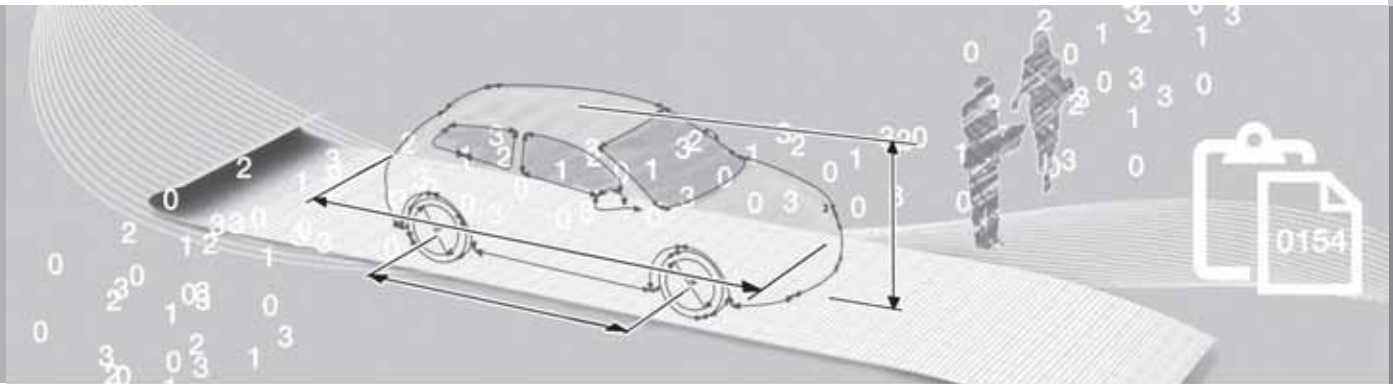


Type designations.....	366
Dimensions and weights.....	368
Engine specifications.....	371
Engine oil.....	372
Fluids and lubricants.....	374
Fuel.....	376
Wheel and tyres, dimensions and pressure .....	378
Electrical system.....	379
Type approval.....	380
Symbols in the display.....	392



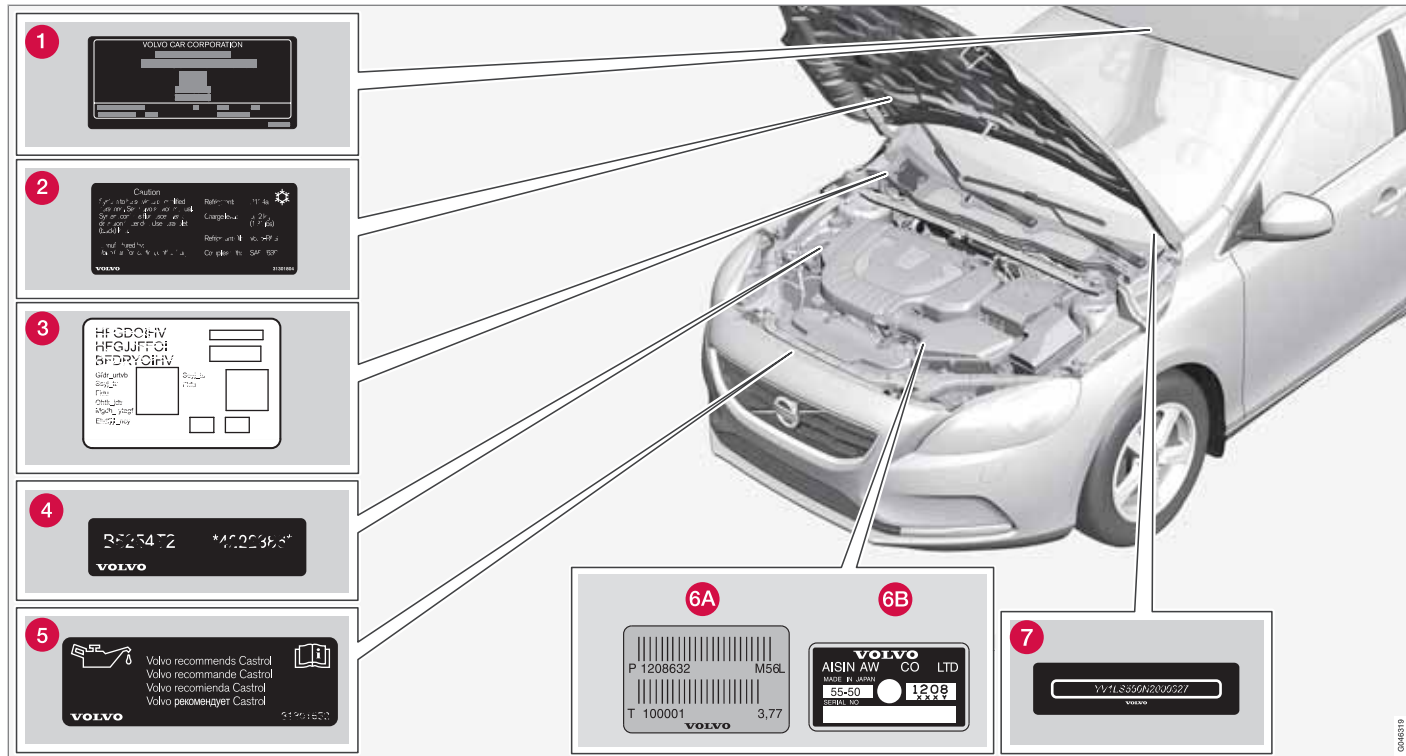
# 10

## SPECIFICATIONS



## Type designations

### Label location



GM48319

## Type designations

Knowing the car's type designation, vehicle identification and engine numbers can facilitate all contact with an authorised Volvo dealer regarding the car and when ordering spare parts and accessories.

- 1 Type designation, vehicle identification number, maximum permissible weights, codes for colour and upholstery and type approval number. The label is visible when the right rear door is opened.
- 2 Label for A/C system.
- 3 Label for parking heater.
- 4 Engine code and engine serial number.
- 5 Label for engine oil.
  - A Manual gearbox
  - B Automatic gearbox
- 7 Car's identification number. (VIN Vehicle Identification Number)

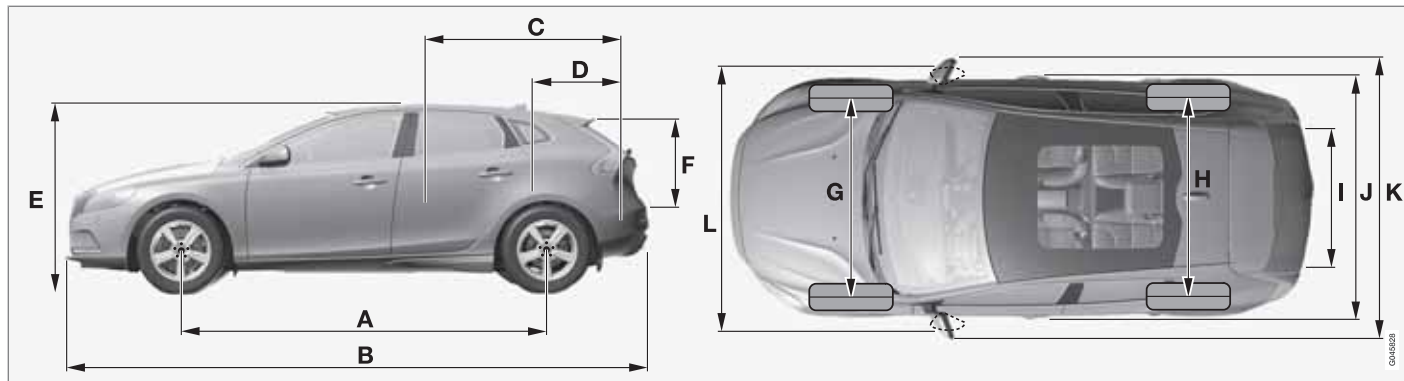
Further information on the car is presented in the registration document.

**i** NOTE

It is not intended that the decals illustrated in the owner's manual should be exact replicas of those in the car. They are included to show their approximate appearance and location in the car. The information that applies to your particular car is available on the respective decals for your car.

## Dimensions and weights

### Dimensions



	Dimensions	mm
A	Wheelbase	2647
B	Length	4369
C	Load length, floor, folded rear seat	1508
D	Load length, floor	684
E	Height	1445
F	Load height	532

	Dimensions	mm
G	Front track	1546 <sup>A</sup> 1551 <sup>B</sup> 1559 <sup>C</sup>
H	Rear track	1536 <sup>A</sup> 1541 <sup>B</sup> 1549 <sup>C</sup>
I	Load width, floor	960
J	Width	1802

	Dimensions	mm
K	Width including door mirrors	2041
L	Width including folded-in door mirrors	1857

A Offset 46 mm.  
B Offset 50 mm.  
C Offset 52.5 mm.

## Dimensions and weights

**Weights**

Kerb weight includes the driver, the fuel tank 90% full and all fluids.

The weight of passengers and accessories, and towball load (when a trailer is hitched, see table page 370) influences the payload and is not included in the kerb weight.

Permitted max. load = Gross vehicle weight - Kerb weight.

**NOTE**

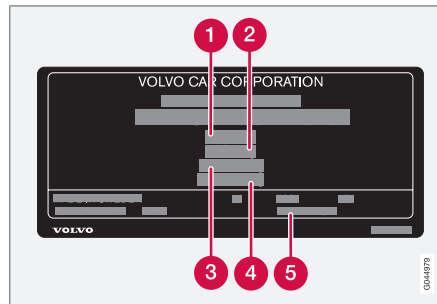
The documented kerb weight applies to cars in the standard version - i.e. a car without extra equipment or accessories. This means that for every accessory added the loading capacity of the car is reduced correspondingly by the weight of the accessory.

Examples of accessories that reduce loading capacity are the Kinetic/Momentum/Summum equipment levels, as well as other accessories such as Towbar, Load carrier, Space box, Audio system, Auxiliary lamps, GPS, Fuel-driven heater, Safety grille, Carpets, Luggage cover, Power seats, etc.

Weighing the car is a certain way of ascertaining the kerb weight of your own particular car.

**WARNING**

The car's driving characteristics change depending on how heavily it is loaded and how the load is distributed.



For information on decal location, see page 366.

- 1 Max. gross vehicle weight
- 2 Max. train weight (car+trailer)
- 3 Max. front axle load
- 4 Max. rear axle load
- 5 Equipment level

Max. load: See registration document.

Max. roof load: 75 kg.

# 10 Specifications

## Dimensions and weights

### Towing capacity and towball load

Engine	Gearbox	Max. weight braked trailer (kg)	Max. towball load (kg)
T3	Manual, B6	1300	75
T4	Manual, B6	1300	75
D2	Manual, B6	1300	75
D3	Manual, M66	1500	75
D3	Automatic, TF-80SD	1500	75
D4	Manual, M66	1500	75
D4	Automatic, TF-80SD	1500	75

### Max. weight unbraked trailer (kg)

Engine	Gearbox	Max. weight unbraked trailer (kg)	Max. towball load (kg)
T3	Manual, B6	650	50
T4	Manual, B6	650	50
D2	Manual, B6	650	50
D3	Manual, M66	700	50
D3	Automatic, TF-80SD	750	50
D4	Manual, M66	700	50
D4	Automatic, TF-80SD	750	50



## Engine specifications

## Engine specifications



## NOTE

Not all engines are available in all markets.

Engine	Engine code <sup>A</sup>	Output (kW/rpm)	Output (hp/rpm)	Torque (Nm/rpm)	No. of cylinders	Bore (mm)	Stroke (mm)	Swept volume (litres)	Compression ratio
T3	B4164T3	110/5700	150/5700	240/1600–4000	4	79	81.4	1.596	10.0:1
T4	B4164T	132/5700	180/5700	240/1600–5000	4	79	81.4	1.596	10.0:1
D2	D4162T	84/3600	115/3600	270/1750-2500	4	75	88.3	1.560	16.0:1
D3	D5204T6	110/3500	150/3500	350/1500-2750	5	81.0	77.0	1.984	16.5:1
D4	D5204T4	130/3500	177/3500	400/1750-2750	5	81.0	77.0	1.984	16.5:1

<sup>A</sup> Engine code, component and serial number can be read on the engine, see page 366.

## Engine oil

### Adverse driving conditions

Adverse driving conditions can lead to abnormally high oil temperature or oil consumption. Below are some examples of adverse driving conditions.

Check the oil level more frequently for long journeys:

- towing a caravan or trailer
- in mountainous regions
- at high speeds
- in temperatures colder than  $-30\text{ }^{\circ}\text{C}$  or hotter than  $+40\text{ }^{\circ}\text{C}$

The above also apply to shorter driving distances at low temperatures.

Choose a fully synthetic engine oil for adverse driving conditions. It provides extra protection for the engine.

Volvo recommends Castrol oil products.



### IMPORTANT

In order to fulfil the requirements for the engine's service intervals all engines are filled with a specially adapted synthetic engine oil at the factory. The choice of oil has been made very carefully with regard to service life, starting characteristics, fuel consumption and environmental impact.

An approved engine oil must be used in order that the recommended service intervals can be applied. Only use a prescribed grade of oil for both filling and oil change, otherwise you will risk affecting service life, starting characteristics, fuel consumption and environmental impact.

Volvo Car Corporation disclaims all warranty liability if engine oil of the prescribed grade and viscosity is not used.

Volvo recommends that oil changes are carried out at an authorised Volvo workshop.

## Engine oil

## Engine oil grade

Engine	Engine code <sup>A</sup>	Recommended oil grade	Volume, incl. oil filter (litres)
T3	B4164T3	Certified and factory-filled oil: <b>Oil grade WSS-M2C925-A</b> options for service: <b>Oil grade: ACEA A5/B5</b> <b>Viscosity: SAE 5W-30</b>	approx. 4.1
T4	B4164T		approx. 4.1
D2	D4162T	<b>Oil grade: ACEA A5/B5</b> <b>Viscosity: SAE 5W-30</b> When driving under adverse conditions, use ACEA A5/B5 SAE 0W-30.	approx. 3.8
D3	D5204T6	<b>Oil grade: ACEA A5/B5</b> <b>Viscosity: SAE 0W-30</b>	approx. 5.9
D4	D5204T4		approx. 5.9

<sup>A</sup> Engine code, component and serial number can be read on the engine, see page 366.

For filling engine oil, see page 329.

## Fluids and lubricants

### Coolant

**Prescribed grade:** Coolant recommended by Volvo mixed with 50% water<sup>1</sup>, see the packaging.

Engine <sup>A</sup>		Volume (litres)
T3	B4164T3	7.0
T4	B4164T	

Engine <sup>A</sup>		Volume (litres)
D2	D4162T	10.0
D3	D5204T6	8.0
D4	D5204T4	

<sup>A</sup> Engine code, component and serial number can be read on the engine, see page 366.

### Other fluids and lubricants

Manual gearbox	Volume (litres)	Prescribed transmission fluid
B6	1.6	BOT 350M3
M66	1.9	

Automatic gearbox	Volume (litres)	Prescribed transmission fluid
TF-80SD	7.0	AW1

<sup>1</sup> Water quality must fulfil the standard STD 1285.1.

## Fluids and lubricants

 NOTE

Under normal driving conditions, the gear-box oil does not need to be changed during its service life. However, it may be necessary under adverse driving conditions, see page 372.








Fluid	System	Volume (litres)	Prescribed grade
Brake fluid	Brake system	0.6	DOT 4+
Washer fluid	Cars with headlamp washing	5.5	Washer fluid recommended by Volvo - with frost protection during cold weather and below freezing point.
	Cars without headlamp washing	3,2	
Fuel	T3, T4	approx. 62	Petrol: see page 291
	D2	approx. 52	Diesel: see page 292
	D3, D4	approx. 60	
Compressor oil	Air conditioning	0,11	PAG oil
Coolant	Air conditioning	0,65 kg	R134a

 WARNING

The air conditioning system contains pressurised refrigerant R134a. This system must only be serviced and repaired by an authorised workshop.

## Fuel

CO<sub>2</sub> emissions and fuel consumption






							
		CO <sub>2</sub>		CO <sub>2</sub>		CO <sub>2</sub>	
T3	man	158	6.8	106	4.6	125	5.4
T4	man	164	7.0	109	4.7	129	5.5
D2 <sup>A</sup>	man	105	4.0	88	3.4	94	3.6
D2 <sup>B</sup>	man	110	4.2	93	3.6	99	3.8
D3	man	139	5.3	100	3.8	114	4.3
D3	aut	179	6.9	112	4.3	136	5.2
D4	man	139	5.3	100	3.8	114	4.3
D4	aut	179	6.9	112	4.3	136	5.2

A 94 g/km CO<sub>2</sub> version, max tyre width 205.

B 99 g/km CO<sub>2</sub> version.

## Fuel

## Explanation

 CO <sub>2</sub>	gram/km
	litre/100 km
	Urban driving
	Extra-urban driving
	Combined driving

 NOTE

If the consumption and emission data is missing then it is included in the enclosed supplement.

**Fuel consumption and emissions of carbon dioxide**

Fuel consumption and emission values in the table above are based on specific EU cycles<sup>1</sup>, that apply to cars with kerb weight in the basic version and without extra equipment. The car's weight may increase depending on equipment.

This, as well as how heavily the car is loaded, increases fuel consumption and carbon dioxide emissions.

There are several reasons for increased fuel consumption compared with the table's values. Examples of this are:

- The driver's driving style.
- If the customer has specified wheels larger than those fitted as standard on the model's basic version, then resistance increases.
- High speed results in increased wind resistance.
- Fuel quality, road and traffic conditions, weather and the condition of the car.

Even a combination of the above-mentioned examples can result in significantly improved consumption. For further information, please refer to the regulations referred to<sup>1</sup>.

Large deviations in fuel consumption may arise in a comparison with the EU driving cycles<sup>1</sup> which are used in the certification of the car and on which the consumption figures in the table are based.

**To bear in mind**

Tips that the driver can use in order to reduce consumption:

- Drive gently and avoid unnecessary acceleration as well as braking too hard.
- Drive with the correct air pressure in the tyres and check this regularly - select ECO tyre pressure for best results, see the tyre pressure table on page 378.
- Choice of tyres can affect fuel consumption - seek advice on suitable tyres from a dealer.

See further information and more advice on pages 11 and 286.

See page 291 for general information on fuel.

<sup>1</sup> Official fuel consumption figures are based on two standardised driving cycles in a laboratory environment ("EU driving cycles") all in accordance with EU Directive 80/1268/EEC (Euro 4), EU Regulation no 692/2008, 715/2007 (Euro 5) and UN ECE Regulation no 101. The regulations cover the driving cycles for city driving and driving on main roads. - City driving - the measurement starts with cold starting the engine. The driving is simulated. - Driving on main roads - the car is accelerated and braked at speeds between 0-120 km/h. The driving is simulated. - Cars with manual transmission are started in 2nd gear. The value for combined driving, which is reported in the table, is a combination of city driving and driving on main roads, in accordance with legal requirements. CO<sub>2</sub> emissions - the exhaust gases are collected in order to calculate the carbon dioxide emissions during the two driving cycles. These are then analysed and give the value for CO<sub>2</sub> emissions.

## Wheel and tyres, dimensions and pressure

### Approved tyre pressures

Engine	Tyre size	Speed (km/h)	Load, 1 - 3 persons		Max. load		ECO pressure <sup>A</sup>
			Front (kPa) <sup>B</sup>	Rear (kPa)	Front (kPa)	Rear (kPa)	Front/rear (kPa)
T3 T4 D2	195/65 R15	0 - 160	230	230	260	260	260
	205/55 R16	160 +	230	230	260	260	-
	205/50 R17						
	225/45 R17						
225/40 R18							
D3 D4	205/55 R16	0 - 160	230	230	260	260	260
	205/50 R17	160 +	290	240	310	270	-
	225/45 R17						
	225/40 R18	0 - 160	240	240	260	260	260
		160 +	290	240	310	270	-
Temporary Spare Tyre		max. 80	420	420	420	420	-

<sup>A</sup> Economical driving.

<sup>B</sup> In certain countries there is the "bar" unit beside the SI unit "Pascal": 1 bar = 100 kPa.

#### NOTE

All engines, tyres or combinations of these are not always available in all markets.



## Electrical system

**Electrical system**

The car has a voltage-regulated AC alternator. The electrical system is single-pole and uses the chassis and engine casing as a conductor.

The battery capacity is dependent upon the equipment level in the vehicle.

**! IMPORTANT**

If the battery is replaced, take care to replace it with a battery with the same cold starting capacity and reserve capacity as the original battery (see the label on the battery).

10

**Battery**

Engine	Voltage (V)	Cold start capacity, CCA - Cold Cranking Amperes (A)	Reserve capacity (minutes)
Petrol	12	520–800	100–160
Diesel	12	700–800	135–160
Petrol/Diesel with Start/Stop function	12	760 <sup>A</sup>	135

<sup>A</sup> Battery type AGM (Absorbed Glass Mat) must be used in cars with the Start/Stop function.

**i NOTE**

- The battery's container size should be consistent with the original battery's dimensions.
- The battery's height is different depending on size.

**Eco Start/Stop DRIVE\***

For information on batteries in cars with Eco Start/Stop DRIVE, see page 345.

## Type approval

## Remote control key system

## Lock system, standard

Country	
EU, China	<p>Continental            FCC ID: K32577C0306R            IC: 2577-09646264            CCA: 2016.194074            CET3777C0306R            TRC: LP068200608            CNMI ID: 20062.1124            Complies with EEA            Standards D801782            TA-2006/490            ELV: 2016-348            Made in Cz</p> <p>CE            CE            G046197</p>

## Keyless lock system (Keyless drive)

Country	
EU	<p>Continental            SWEK4 9265</p> <p>CE            G046198</p>
Korea	<p>Continental            S1E-SWK 49268            Made in Cz</p> <p>K            G046200</p>

Country	
China	<p>Continental            DWK4 8099            CET3631D0808R            TRC: LP068200608            CNMI ID: 20062.1124            Complies with IDA            Standards D801782            TA-2006/490            Made in Cz</p> <p>CE            CE            G046201</p>
Hong Kong	<p>Continental            SWEK4 9209</p> <p>G046202</p>

## Radar system

Country	
Singapore	<p>Complies with            IDA standards            DA105753</p> <p>IDA: Infocomm Development            Authority of Singapore.</p>
Brazil	<p>ANATEL            INSTITUTO NACIONAL DE METROLOGIA,            QUALIDADE E TECNOLOGIA</p> <p>001.177.0001.0188            001.177.0001.0188</p> <p>Modelo: PRC 2012-00000188            Número: PRC 2012-00000188            Data de emissão: 03/12/2012            Autorização: PRC 2012-00000188            Categoria: Produto</p>

## Type approval




## Bluetooth®

## Declaration of Conformity (Declaration of Conformity)

Country	
Countries in the EU:	 <p>Exporting country: Japan            Manufacturer: Alpine Electronics Inc.            Type of equipment: <b>Bluetooth®</b> device            For further information visit <a href="http://ec.europa.eu/enterprise/rte/faq.htm">http://ec.europa.eu/enterprise/rte/faq.htm</a> #informing</p>

## Type approval

## Country

		ALPINE ELECTRONICS, INC. 20-1 Yamanashi-cho, Himeji City, Hyogo 671-2202, Japan Phone: (81)243-364111 Fax: (81)243-364000	
<b>DECLARATION of CONFORMITY</b>			
We, <b>Alpine Electronics, Inc.</b> of the above address, hereby declare, at our sole responsibility, that the following product conforms to the Essential Requirements of the Radio and Telecommunications Terminal Equipment Directive 1999/5/EC in accordance with the tests conducted to the appropriate requirements of the relevant standards, as listed herewith.			
Product	:	Bluetooth Module	
Model/ Type Number	:	IAM 2.1 BT PWB EU	
Directive and Standards used	:	<b>Radio</b> : EN 300 328 V1.7.1: 2006-01 <b>EMC</b> : EN 301 489-1 V1.3.2: 2006-04 EN 301 489-1 V1.8.1: 2008-04 ISO7637-2: 2004 <b>Safety</b> : IEC 60065 Ed.7: 2001 + Amd.1: 2005 EN 60065: 2002 + Amd.1: 2006	
Year of affixing CE marking	:	2009	
Signature	:		
Name	:	Shinichi Asuke	
Date	:	November 12, 2009	
		0043092	

Czech Republic: Alpine Electronics, Inc. tímto prohlašuje, že tento **Bluetooth**® Module je ve shodě se základními požadavky a dalšími příslušnými ustanoveními směrnice 1999/5/ES.

Denmark: Undertegnede Alpine Electronics, Inc. erklærer herved, at følgende udstyr **Bluetooth**® Module overholder de væsentlige krav og øvrige relevante krav i direktiv 1999/5/EF.

Germany: Hiermit erklärt Alpine Electronics, Inc., dass sich das Gerät **Bluetooth**® Module in Übereinstimmung mit den grundlegenden Anforderungen und den übrigen einschlägigen Bestimmungen der Richtlinie 1999/5/EG befindet.

## Type approval

Country	
Estonia:	Käesolevaga kinnitab Alpine Electronics, Inc. seadme <b>Bluetooth</b> ® Module vastavust direktiivi 1999/5/EÜ põhinõuetele ja nimetatud direktiivist tulenevatele teistele asjakohastele sätetele.
UK	Hereby, Alpine Electronics, Inc., declares that this <b>Bluetooth</b> ® Module is in compliance with the essential requirements and other relevant provisions of Directive 1999/5/EC.
Spain:	Por medio de la presente Alpine Electronics, Inc. declara que el <b>Bluetooth</b> ® Module cumple con los requisitos esenciales y cualesquiera otras disposiciones aplicables o exigibles de la Directiva 1999/5/CE.
Greece:	ΜΕ ΤΗΝ ΠΑΡΟΥΣΑ Alpine Electronics, Inc. ΔΗΛΩΝΕΙ ΟΤΙ <b>Bluetooth</b> ® Module ΣΥΜΜΟΡΦΩΝΕΤΑΙ ΠΡΟΣ ΤΙΣ ΟΥΣΙΩΔΕΙΣ ΑΠΑΙΤΗΣΕΙΣ ΚΑΙ ΤΙΣ ΛΟΙΠΕΣ ΣΧΕΤΙΚΕΣ ΔΙΑΤΑΞΕΙΣ ΤΗΣ ΟΔΗΓΙΑΣ 1999/5/EK.
France:	Par la présente Alpine Electronics, Inc. déclare que l'appareil <b>Bluetooth</b> ® Module est conforme aux exigences essentielles et aux autres dispositions pertinentes de la directive 1999/5/CE.
Italy:	Con la presente Alpine Electronics, Inc. dichiara che questo <b>Bluetooth</b> ® Module è conforme ai requisiti essenziali ed alle altre disposizioni pertinenti stabilite dalla direttiva 1999/5/CE.
Latvia:	Ar šo Alpine Electronics, Inc. deklarē, ka <b>Bluetooth</b> ® Module atbilst Direktīvas 1999/5/EK būtiskajām prasībām un citiem ar to saistītajiem noteikumiem.
Lithuania:	Šiuo Alpine Electronics, Inc. deklaruoja, kad šis <b>Bluetooth</b> ® Module atitinka esminius reikalavimus ir kitas 1999/5/EB Direktyvos nuostatas.
Netherlands:	Hierbij verklaart Alpine Electronics, Inc. dat het toestel <b>Bluetooth</b> ® Module in overeenstemming is met de essentiële eisen en de andere relevante bepalingen van richtlijn 1999/5/EG.
Malta:	Hawnhekk, Alpine Electronics, Inc., jiddikjara li dan <b>Bluetooth</b> ® Module jikkonforma mal-htigijiet essenzjali u ma provvedimenti oħrajn relevanti li hemm fid-Dirrettiva 1999/5/EC.
Hungary:	Alulírott, Alpine Electronics, Inc. nyilatkozom, hogy a <b>Bluetooth</b> ® Module megfelel a vonatkozó alapvető követelményeknek és az 1999/5/EC irányelv egyéb előírásainak.


## Type approval

Country	
Poland:	Niniejszym Alpine Electronics, Inc. oświadcza, że <b>Bluetooth</b> ® Module jest zgodny z zasadniczymi wymogami oraz pozostałymi stosownymi postanowieniami Dyrektywy 1999/5/EC.
Portugal:	Alpine Electronics, Inc. declara que este <b>Bluetooth</b> ® Module está conforme com os requisitos essenciais e outras disposições da Directiva 1999/5/CE.
Slovenia:	Alpine Electronics, Inc. izjavlja, da je ta <b>Bluetooth</b> ® Module v skladu z bistvenimi zahtevami in ostalimi relevantnimi določili direktive 1999/5/ES.
Slovakia:	Alpine Electronics, Inc. týmto vyhlasuje, že <b>Bluetooth</b> ® Module spĺňa základné požiadavky a všetky príslušné ustanovenia Smernice 1999/5/ES.
Finland:	Alpine Electronics, Inc. vakuuttaa täten että <b>Bluetooth</b> ® Module tyyppinen laite on direktiivin 1999/5/EY oleellisten vaatimusten ja sitä koskevien direktiivin muiden ehtojen mukainen.
Sweden:	Härmed intygar Alpine Electronics, Inc. att denna <b>Bluetooth</b> ® Module står i överensstämmelse med de väsentliga egenskapskrav och övriga relevanta bestämmelser som framgår av direktiv 1999/5/EG.
Iceland:	Alpine Electronics, Inc. hereby certifies that this <b>Bluetooth</b> ® Module conforms to the essential characteristic requirements and other relevant regulations of directive 1999/5/EC.
Norway:	Alpine Electronics, Inc. erklærer herved at utstyret <b>Bluetooth</b> ® Module er i samsvar med de grunnleggende krav og øvrige relevante krav i direktiv 1999/5/EF.

## Type approval

Country	
China:	<p>第十三条 进口和生产厂商在其产品的说明书或使用手册中，应刊印下述有关内容：</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. 标明附件中所规定的技术指标和使用范围，说明所有控制、调整及开关等使用方法； <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ 使用频率：2.4 - 2.4835 GHz</li> <li>■ 等效全向辐射功率(EIRP)：天线增益 &lt; 10dBi 时：≤100 mW 或 ≤20 dBm ①</li> <li>■ 最大功率谱密度：天线增益 &lt; 10dBi 时：≤20 dBm / MHz (EIRP) ①</li> <li>■ 载频容限：20 ppm</li> <li>■ 杂散发射(辐射)功率(对应载波±2.5 倍信道带宽以外)： <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• ≤-36 dBm / 100 kHz (30 - 1000 MHz)</li> <li>• ≤-33 dBm / 100 kHz (2.4 - 2.4835 GHz)</li> <li>• ≤-40 dBm / 1 MHz (3.4 - 3.53 GHz)</li> <li>• ≤-40 dBm / 1 MHz (5.725 - 5.85 GHz)</li> <li>• ≤-30 dBm / 1 MHz (其它 1 - 12.75 GHz)</li> </ul> </li> </ul> </li> <li>2. 不得擅自更改发射频率、加大发射功率(包括额外加装射频功率放大器)，不得擅自外接天线或改用其它发射天线；</li> <li>3. 使用时不得对各种合法的无线电通信业务产生有害干扰；一旦发现有害干扰现象时，应立即停止使用，并采取措施消除干扰后方可继续使用；</li> <li>4. 使用微功率无线电设备，必须忍受各种无线电业务的干扰或工业、科学及医疗应用设备的辐射干扰；</li> <li>5. 不得在飞机和机场附近使用。</li> </ol>

## Type approval

Country	
Taiwan:	<p>低效率電波輻射性電機管理辦法第十條</p> <p>第十二條</p> <p>經型式認證合格之低功率射頻電機，非經許可，公司、商號或使用者均不得擅自 變更頻率、加大功率或變更原設計之特性及功能。</p> <p>第十四條</p> <p>低功率射頻電機之使用不得影響飛航安全及干擾合法通信；經發現有干擾現象時，應立即停用，並改善至無干擾時方得繼續使用。前項合法通信，指依電信法規定 作業之無線電通信。低功率射頻電機須忍受合法通信或工業、科學及醫療用電波 輻射性電機設備之干擾。</p> <div></div> <p>CCAB10LP0230T7</p>





## Type approval

Country	
South Korea:	<p><b>제품 정보</b></p> <p>Volvo Car Korea  신청자 코드: N25-IAM2101V  제품 명: Bluetooth Audio Navigation Radio  모델 명: IAM2.1  산 날짜: March/2010  Alpine Electronics, Inc  Made in Japan</p> <p><b>고객 정보</b></p> <p>Volvo Car Korea  볼보자동차코리아  서울시 용산구 한남 2 동 726-173 볼보빌딩 4 층  볼보자동차 고객센터 1588-1777  <a href="http://www.volvocars.com/kr">http://www.volvocars.com/kr</a></p> <p><b>사용자 주의사항</b></p> <p>※당해 무선설비는 전파혼신 가능성이 있으므로 인명안전과 관련된 서비스는 할 수 없습니다</p>

## Type approval

Country	
Singapore:	<div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px; width: fit-content;"><p>Complies with IDA Standards DA100925X</p></div>
The United Arab Emirates:	<div style="border: 3px double black; padding: 10px; width: fit-content;"><p><b>TRA</b></p><p><b>REGISTERED      No:</b></p><p>0020557/09</p><p><b>DEALER              No:</b></p><p>0014517/08</p></div>
Jordan:	<p>The product that contains the Bluetooth module is approved with the following certification number.</p> <p>BT module certification number: TRC/LPD/2010/4.</p> <p>BT module name: IAM2.1BT PWB EU</p>

## Type approval

Country	
South Africa:	
Uruguay:	<p>This product contains URSEC approved transmitter [module name and model name (IAM2.1 BT PWB EU + BVJG905A, BVVE905A, BVLV905A)]</p>  <p style="writing-mode: vertical-rl; transform: rotate(180deg);">0044570</p>

## Type approval

Country	
Jamaica:	Approved for use in Jamaica SMA EI: IAM2.1
Thailand:	This telecommunication equipment conforms to NTC technical requirement.
Nigeria:	<div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px; text-align: center;"> <p><u>Connection and use of this communications</u></p> <p><u>equipment is permitted by the Nigerian</u></p> <p><u>Communications Commission</u></p> </div>
Mexico:	<p><b>Warning</b></p> <p>"Este equipo opera a título secundario, consecuentemente, debe aceptar interferencias perjudiciales incluyendo equipos de la misma clase y puede no causar interferencias a sistemas operando a título primario."</p> <p><b>Bluetooth®</b> module installation information</p> <p>This module board is to be installed only by the professional line operator and used only for car audio produced by ALPINE ELECTRONICS, INC. When this Bluetooth® Module Board is installed in the Car Audio, we shall consider the following points: 1. Since "IAM2.1 BT PWB US" owns its FCC ID/IC Number, we shall affix an exterior label on the outside of the product if the FCC ID is not visible. The exterior label shall use wording such as either "Contains Transmitter Module Board FCC ID: A269ZUA130 / IC: 700B-IAM2101" or "Contains FCC ID: A269ZUA130 / IC: 700B-IAM2101". 2. "IAM2.1 BT PWB US" complies with requirements of subsections 15.19(a)(3) in FCC Rules Part 15 Subpart C. The manual statement 15.19 (a)(3) is included in User Guide of the product.</p> <p><b>COFETEL No. RCPALIA10-0353</b></p>

Type approval

Country

Botswana:

BTA  
REGISTERED No:  
BTA/TA/2010/220  
GM44549

10

Croatia:

**HAKOM**

**POTVRDA O SUKLADNOSTI**  
CERTIFICATE OF CONFORMITY

Broj: 08710

Proizvođač (Manufacturer):	Siemens AG, Siemens AG, Siemens AG, Siemens AG
Model (Model):	6ES7 311-1CG03-0AB0
Proizvođač (Manufacturer):	Siemens AG, Siemens AG, Siemens AG, Siemens AG
Model (Model):	6ES7 311-1CG03-0AB0
Proizvođač (Manufacturer):	Siemens AG, Siemens AG, Siemens AG, Siemens AG
Model (Model):	6ES7 311-1CG03-0AB0


Official Seal: Hrvatski Akademijski Komitet


GM44600

## Symbols in the display

### General









There are a variety of different symbols in the display in the car. The symbols are divided into warning, indicator and information symbols. Shown below are the most common symbols with their meanings and a reference to where in the manual further information can be found. For more information on symbols and text messages, see pages 71 and 200.

 - Red warning symbol, illuminates when a fault has been indicated which could affect the safety and/or driveability of the car. At the same time an explanatory text is displayed in the information display.











 - Information symbol, illuminates in combination with text in the information display, when a deviation in any of the car's systems has occurred. The yellow symbol information can also illuminate in combination with other symbols.

### Symbols in the display




#### Warning symbols in the combined instrument panel

Symbol	Meaning	Page
	Low oil pressure	73
	Parking brake applied	73, 131
	Parking brake applied, alternative symbol	73
	Airbags - SRS	17, 73
	Seatbelt reminder	14, 73
	Alternator not charging	73
	Fault in the brake system	73, 130
	Warning, safety mode	17, 28, 73, 119





#### Indicator symbols in the combined instrument panel









Symbol	Meaning	Page
	Fault in the ABL system*	72, 91
	Emissions system	72
	Fault in the ABS system	72, 130
	Rear fog lamp on	72, 92
	Stability system, DSTC, Trailer stability assist*	72, 139, 304
	Stability system, sport mode	72, 139
	Engine pre-heater (diesel)	72
	Low level in fuel tank	72, 224
	Information, read display text	72
	Main beam on	72, 89








## Symbols in the display

Symbol	Meaning	Page
	Left-hand direction indicators	72
	Right-hand direction indicators	72
	DRIVE - Start/Stop*, engine auto-stopped	72, 123








## Information symbols in the combined instrument panel



Symbol	Meaning	Page
	Main beam with auto dimming - AHB*	89
	Camera sensor*	89
	Adaptive cruise control*	156
	Adaptive cruise control*	149, 150, 156

Symbol	Meaning	Page
	Adaptive cruise control*, Distance Warning* (Distance Alert)	150, 158
	Adaptive cruise control*	156
	Adaptive cruise control*	149
	Adaptive cruise control*	149
	Cruise control*	145
	Radar sensor*	156, 160, 173
	Start/Stop*, Adaptive cruise control*	127, 156
	Speed limiter	143




Symbol	Meaning	Page
	Camera sensor*, Laser sensor*	165, 173, 178, 183
	Auto Brake*, Distance Warning* (Distance Alert), City Safety™, Collision warning system*	160, 165, 173
	Fuel-driven engine block heater and passenger compartment heater*	224
	ABL system*	91
	Fuel filler flap, right-hand side	289
	Low battery	224
	Park Assist Pilot - PAP*	190

## Symbols in the display

Symbol	Meaning	Page
	Rain sensor*	99
	Lane Keeping Aid*	182
	Driver Alert System*	178
	Driver Alert System*, Lane Keeping Aid*	183
	Driver Alert System*, Time for a break	176, 178, 183
	Gear indicator, manual gearbox	115
	Automatic gear positions	116

Symbol	Meaning	Page
	Registered speed information*	141
	Oil level measurement	331

## Information symbols in the roof console display

Symbol	Meaning	Page
	Seatbelt reminder	16
	Airbag, passenger seat, activated	21
	Airbag, passenger seat, deactivated	21





**A**

ACC – Adaptive cruise control.....	147
Active Bending Lights (ABL).....	91
Active Park Assist.....	190
Active Xenon headlamps.....	91
Adaptive cruise control.....	147
fault tracing.....	155
radar sensor.....	154
Additional heater (Diesel).....	227
Adjusting headlamp pattern.....	95
halogen headlamp.....	96
Adjusting the steering wheel.....	86
Airbag	
activating/deactivating, PACOS.....	20
driver's and front passenger side.....	18
key switch off.....	20
AIRBAG .....	18
Airbag system .....	17
Air conditioning.....	219
general.....	212
Air conditioning, AC.....	219
Air conditioning system	
repair.....	334
Air distribution.....	213, 221

Air quality system IAQS .....	220
Air vents.....	214
Alarm.....	61
alarm indicator.....	61
alarm signals.....	62
arming.....	61
checking the alarm.....	45
deactivate.....	61
deactivating a triggered alarm.....	61
reduced alarm level.....	62
Alcolock.....	108
Allergy and asthma inducing substances.	213
Approach light, duration.....	44, 95
Audio	
settings.....	245
surround.....	240, 245
Audio system.....	240
functions.....	245
overview.....	241
Audio volume .....	241
phone.....	270
phone/media player.....	270
ring signal, phone.....	270
speed/noise compensation.....	245
Auto	
climate control settings.....	218

Automatic car washes.....	357
Automatic gearbox.....	116
manual gear positions (Geartronic)....	117
towing and recovery.....	305
trailer.....	300
Automatic locking.....	55
Automatic relocking.....	54
Auxiliary heater.....	227
AUX input.....	241, 261

**B**

Backrest.....	81
front seat, lowering.....	81
Backrest rear seat, lowering.....	84
Bag holder .....	295
Battery.....	344, 379
maintenance.....	344
remote control .....	283
remote control key/PCC.....	48
start assistance.....	114
symbols on the battery.....	345
warning symbols.....	345
Blind spot (BLIS).....	195
BLIS.....	194

- Bluetooth®
- handsfree ..... 267
  - media ..... 264
  - microphone off ..... 270
  - streaming audio ..... 264
  - transfer call to mobile ..... 270
- Bonnet, opening..... 328
- Brake and clutch fluid..... 333
- Brake light..... 92
- Brakes..... 129
- anti-lock braking system, ABS..... 129
  - brake light..... 92
  - brake system..... 129
  - Emergency Brake Assistance, EBA ... 129
  - emergency brake lights..... 92
  - filling brake fluid..... 333
  - handbrake..... 131
  - symbols in the combined instrument panel..... 130
- Bulbs, see Lighting..... 335
- [**
- 
- Calls
- incoming..... 269
  - operation..... 269
- Camera sensor..... 162, 171
- Car care..... 357
- Car care, leather upholstery..... 359
- Cargo area
- Cargo net..... 297
  - lighting..... 94
  - loading..... 294
  - mounting points..... 295
  - Parcel shelf..... 298
- Car upholstery..... 359
- Car wash..... 357
- Catalytic converter..... 291
- recovery..... 306
- CD ..... 257
- Centre console..... 203
- Checking and topping up the coolant..... 332
- Checking the engine oil level..... 329
- Children..... 31
- child safety locks..... 35
  - child seats and side airbags..... 22
  - location in the car..... 31
  - safety..... 31
- Child safety locks..... 60
- Child seat..... 31
- Child seats..... 31
- ISOFIX fixture system for child seats... 35
  - recommended..... 32
  - size classes for child seats with the ISO-FIX fixture system..... 35
  - upper mounting points for child seats.. 38
- Cigarette lighter socket..... 235
- City Safety™..... 161
- Cleaning
- automatic car washes..... 357
  - car wash..... 357
  - rims..... 358
  - seatbelts..... 360
  - upholstery..... 359
- Clean Zone Interior Package (CZIP)..... 213
- Climate control..... 212
- general..... 212
  - sensors..... 212
- Clock, setting..... 75
- CO<sub>2</sub> emissions ..... 376
- Collision..... 28

Collision warning.....	167, 168
Collision warning system	
radar sensor.....	154, 161, 167
Collision Warning with Auto Brake*.....	167
Colour code, paint.....	361
Combined instrument panel.....	69, 200
Comfort inside the passenger compartment.....	234
Compass.....	107
calibration.....	107
Condensation in headlamps.....	357
controls	
centre console .....	241
Controls	
centre console.....	203
Controls, lights.....	87
Control symbols.....	71
Cooling system.....	286
Corner Traction Control .....	138
Crash, see Collision.....	28
Cruise control.....	145
CZIP (Clear Zone Interior Package).....	213

**D**

DAB Radio.....	254
Daytime running lights.....	88
Deadlock	
deactivation.....	58
temporary deactivation.....	58
Deadlocks.....	58
Defroster.....	219
Diesel.....	292
Diesel particle filter.....	293
Dipstick, electronic.....	331
Direction indicators.....	93
Disengaging the gear selector inhibitor... ..	118
Display lighting.....	87
Distance Warning.....	158
Dolby Surround Pro Logic II.....	240
Door mirrors.....	104
Driver Alert Control.....	176
Driver Alert System.....	175
Driving.....	286
cooling system.....	286
with the tailgate open.....	287
with trailer.....	299

Driving in water.....	286
Driving with a trailer	
towball load.....	369
towing capacity.....	369
DSTC, see also Stability control system..	139
DVD .....	257

**E**

ECC, electronic climate control.....	215
EcoGuide.....	121
Economical driving.....	286
ECO pressure.....	318
Eco Start/Stop DRIVE.....	123
Electrical socket.....	236
cargo area.....	296
front seat.....	236
Emergency equipment	
warning triangle.....	319
Emergency puncture repair.....	320
Emissions of carbon dioxide.....	293
Engine	
overheating.....	299
starting.....	112

Engine block heater	
fuel-driven.....	223
Engine compartment	
coolant.....	332
oil.....	329
overview.....	329
Engine drag control .....	138
Engine oil.....	329, 372
adverse driving conditions.....	372
capacities.....	372
filter.....	329
oil grade.....	372
Engine specifications.....	371
Environmental labelling, FSC, owner's manual.....	11
Error messages	
Adaptive Cruise Control.....	156
Driver Alert Control.....	178
LKA.....	183
see Messages and symbols.....	156
Error messages in BLIS.....	197
Error messages in Distance Alert.....	160
ETC, electronic temperature control .....	216
Expectant mothers, seatbelt.....	15
External dimensions.....	368

**F**

Fan.....	217
Fault tracing for the camera sensor. 163, 172	
First aid equipment.....	319
First aid kit .....	319
Fluids, capacities.....	374
Fluids and oils.....	374
Fog lamps	
rear.....	92
Foot brake.....	129
Front seat	
head restraint.....	81
FSC, environmental labelling.....	11
Fuel.....	291
fuel consumption.....	376
fuel economy.....	318
fuel filter.....	292
Fuelling	
fuel filler flap.....	289
fuel filler flap, locking.....	57
Fuse box.....	348
Fuses.....	348
changing.....	348
engine compartment.....	349

general.....	348
under front right seat.....	355
under glovebox.....	352

**G**

Gearbox.....	115
automatic.....	116
manual.....	115
Gear selector inhibitor.....	118
Gear selector inhibitor, mechanical disengagement.....	118
Geartronic.....	117
Glass	
laminated/reinforced.....	102
Glass roof, roller blind.....	106
Global opening.....	212
Glovebox.....	236
locking.....	56
Gross vehicle weight.....	369
GSI - Gear selector assistance.....	115

**H**

Handbrake.....	131
Hazard warning flashers.....	92
Headlamp levelling.....	87
Headlamp pattern, adjusting.....	95
Headlamp pattern adjustment	
Active Bending Lights .....	96
Headlamps.....	335
head restraint	
front seat.....	81
Head restraint	
centre seat, rear.....	83
lowering.....	84
Heating.....	218
rearview and door mirrors.....	105
rear window.....	105
seats.....	217
Heat-reflecting windscreen.....	102
High engine temperature.....	299
High-pressure headlamp washing.....	100
HomeLink® .....	132
Home safe lighting.....	95
Hoot.....	86

Horn.....	86
-----------	----

**I**

IAQS – Interior Air Quality System.....	213
IC – Inflatable Curtain.....	24
Ignition keys.....	79
Immobiliser.....	43
Indicator lamps, PCC.....	45
Inflatable curtain.....	24
Information button, PCC.....	45
Information displays.....	69
Infotainment system .....	240
menu .....	243
overview .....	241
source buttons .....	241
voice control.....	275
Inlaid mats.....	236
Instrument lighting, see Lighting.....	87
Instrument overview	
left-hand drive.....	66
right-hand drive.....	68
Instruments and controls.....	66
Interior lighting, see Lighting.....	93

Interior rearview mirror.....	106
automatic dimming.....	106
Intermittent wiping.....	99
iPod®, connection.....	261

**J**

Journey statistics.....	232
-------------------------	-----

**K**

Kerb weight.....	369
Key.....	42
Key blade.....	46
Keyless drive.....	50, 112
Keyless start (keyless drive).....	50, 112
Keypad in the steering	
wheel.....	86, 145, 204, 241
Key positions.....	79

## L

Labels.....	366
Laminated glass.....	102
Lamps, see Lighting.....	335
Lane keeping assistant - LKA.....	180
Laser sensor.....	164
Leather upholstery, washing instructions	359
Lighting.....	335
Active Xenon headlamps.....	91
approach light, duration.....	44, 95
automatic lighting, passenger compart- ment.....	94
bulbs, specifications.....	340
controls.....	93
daytime running lights.....	88
display lighting.....	87
headlamp levelling.....	87
home safe lighting.....	95
in passenger compartment.....	93
instrument lighting.....	87
main/dipped beam.....	87
position/parking lamps.....	92
rear fog lamp.....	92
tunnel detection.....	90
Lighting, bulb replacement.....	335
daytime running lights.....	338
dipped beam (cars with halogen head- lamps).....	336
direction indicators, front.....	337
main beam (cars with active xenon headlamps).....	337
main beam (cars with halogen head- lamps).....	337
position/parking lamps.....	338
rear bulb holder: direction indicators, brake lamps and reversing lamps.....	339
rear fog lamps.....	339
side marker lamps, front.....	338
vanity mirror.....	340
Light switches.....	87
LKA - Lane keeping assistant.....	180
Loading	
cargo area.....	294
general.....	294
mounting points.....	295
roof load.....	294
Lock confirmation .....	42
Locking/unlocking	
inside.....	54
tailgate.....	56
Locks	
automatic locking.....	54
locking.....	54
unlocking.....	54
Lubricants.....	374
Lubricants, capacities.....	374

## M

Main/dipped beam, see Lightning.....	87
Main beam, automatic activation.....	89
Maintenance	
rustproofing.....	359
Making calls.....	269
Manual gearbox.....	115
GSI - Gear selector assistance.....	115
towing and recovery.....	305
Manual gear positions (Geartronic).....	117
Max. roof load .....	369
Media, Bluetooth® .....	264
media player .....	257
Memory function in seats.....	82
Menu navigation, Infotainment .....	243
Menus/functions.....	205

Menus and messages.....	200	register phone.....	268	Park assist camera.....	187
Menu system MY CAR.....	203	voice control.....	275	Parking assistance.....	184
Messages and symbols		Mood lighting.....	94	parking assistance sensors.....	186
Adaptive Cruise Control.....	156	MY CAR.....	203	Parking brake.....	131
Collision Warning with Auto		<b>O</b>		Parking heater.....	223
Brake.....	165, 173	Oil, see also Engine oil.....	372	battery and fuel.....	223
Distance Alert.....	160	Oil level low.....	329	parking on a hill.....	223
Driver Alert Control.....	178	Overheating.....	299	time setting.....	225
LKA.....	183	Owner's manual, environmental labelling..	11	Passenger compartment.....	234
Messages in BLIS.....	197	<b>P</b>		Passenger compartment filter.....	212
Messages in the combined instrument		PACOS.....	20	Passenger compartment heater	
panel.....	200	PACOS, switch.....	20	fuel-driven.....	223
Messages in the information display.....	139	Paintwork		Passenger compartment lighting	
Meters		colour code.....	361	automatic.....	94
fuel gauge.....	70	damage and touch-up.....	361	PCC – Personal Car Communicator	
speedometer.....	70	Panel lighting.....	87	functions.....	44
tachometer.....	70	Panic function.....	44	range.....	45, 46
Microphone.....	267	PAP - Active Park Assist.....	190	Pedestrian protection.....	167
Misting.....	219	Parcel shelf.....	298	Petrol grade.....	291
attending to the windows.....	212			Phone	
condensation in headlamps.....	357			connect.....	268
remove with the air vents.....	221			handsfree.....	267
timer function.....	220			incoming calls.....	269
Mobile phone				making calls.....	269
connect.....	268			phone book.....	271
handsfree.....	267				



- phone book, shortcut..... 271  
 receiving a call..... 270  
 register phone..... 268  
 voice control..... 275
- Pocket park assist - PAP..... 190
- Polishing..... 358
- Position/parking lamps..... 92
- Power..... 121
- Power seat..... 82
- Powershift gearbox..... 119, 305
- Power windows..... 102
- Q**
- 
- Queue Assist..... 152
- Queue Assistant..... 152
- R**
- 
- Radar sensor..... 147  
 limitations..... 154
- Radio ..... 250  
 AM/FM ..... 250  
 DAB ..... 254
- Rain sensor..... 99
- Rear bulbs  
 location..... 339
- Rearview and door mirrors  
 compass..... 107  
 door..... 104  
 electrically retractable..... 105  
 heating..... 105  
 interior..... 106
- Rear window, defrosting..... 105
- Recirculation..... 220
- Recommendations during driving..... 286
- Recommended child seats, table..... 32
- Recovery..... 307
- Refrigerant..... 334
- Refuelling..... 57, 289  
 fuel filler flap, manual opening..... 289  
 refuelling..... 289
- Relay/fuse box: see Fuses..... 348
- Remote control ..... 282  
 battery replacement ..... 283
- Remote control, HomeLink®  
 programmable ..... 132
- Remote control key..... 42  
 battery replacement..... 48
- detachable key blade..... 46  
 functions..... 44  
 range..... 45
- Remote control key system, type approval..... 380
- Resetting the door mirrors..... 105
- Resetting the power windows..... 104
- Retractable power door mirrors..... 105
- Reverse gear inhibitor..... 115
- Rims  
 cleaning..... 358
- Road sign information..... 141
- Roller blind for glass roof..... 106
- Roof load, max. weight ..... 369
- Rustproofing..... 359
- S**
- 
- Safety mode..... 28
- Seat, see Seats..... 81
- Seatbelt  
 rear seat..... 16  
 seatbelt tensioner..... 16
- Seatbelt reminder..... 16

- Seatbelts..... 14
- Seats..... 81
- head restraints, rear..... 83
  - heating..... 217
  - lowering the front backrest..... 81
  - lowering the rear backrest..... 84
  - power seats..... 82
- Securing loads (Loading)..... 295
- Sensus..... 77
- Service position..... 341
- Service programme..... 328
- Set time interval..... 158
- Side airbags..... 22
- Signal input, external..... 241, 261
- SIPS bags..... 22
- Soot filter..... 293
- Soot filter full..... 293
- Spare wheel..... 314
- Speed limiter..... 143
- Spin control..... 138
- Spin control function..... 138
- Stability and traction control system..... 138
- Stability system..... 138
- Stains..... 359
- Start assistance..... 114
- Steering force, speed related..... 233
- Steering force level, see Steering force... 233
- Steering lock..... 113
- Steering wheel..... 86
- keypad..... 86, 145, 204, 241
  - keypad, adaptive cruise control..... 149
  - steering wheel adjustment..... 86
- Stone chips and scratches..... 361
- Storage spaces in the passenger compartment..... 234
- Surround..... 240, 245
- Symbols..... 139
- indicator symbols..... 71
  - warning symbols..... 71
- Symbols and messages
- Adaptive Cruise Control..... 156
  - Collision Warning with Auto Brake..... 165, 173
  - Distance Alert..... 160
  - Driver Alert Control..... 178
  - LKA..... 183
- T**
- 
- Tailgate
- locking/unlocking..... 56
- Temperature
- actual temperature..... 212
- Temperature control..... 218
- Timer..... 220
- Total airing function..... 55, 212
- Towbar
- detachable, attachment ..... 302
  - detachable, removal ..... 303
- Towbar, see Towing equipment..... 300
- Towing..... 305
- towing eye..... 306
- Towing capacity..... 369
- Towing equipment..... 300
- specifications..... 301
- Towing eye..... 306
- Trailer..... 299
- cable..... 299
  - driving with a trailer..... 299
  - snaking..... 304
- Trailer stability assist ..... 138
- Trailer Stability Assist..... 304

- Transmission..... 115
- Transponder..... 102
- Trip computer..... 229
- Trip meter..... 75
- Troubleshooting  
Adaptive Cruise Control..... 155
- TSA - trailer stability assist ..... 138, 304
- Tunnel detection..... 90
- TV..... 279
- Type approval, remote control key system..... 380
- Type designation..... 366
- Tyres  
direction of rotation..... 310  
driving characteristics..... 310  
maintenance..... 310  
pressure..... 318  
puncture repair..... 320  
specifications..... 312  
speed ratings..... 313  
tread wear indicators..... 311  
winter tyres..... 312
- U**
- 
- Unlocking  
from the inside..... 55  
from the outside..... 54
- USB, connection..... 261
- V**
- 
- Vanity mirror..... 94, 236
- Ventilation..... 213
- Vibration damper..... 300
- Voice control, mobile phone..... 275
- Volvo Sensus..... 77
- W**
- 
- Warning lamp  
adaptive cruise control..... 147  
collision warning system..... 169  
stability and traction control system. . 138
- Warning lamps  
airbags SRS..... 73  
alternator not charging..... 73  
fault in brake system..... 73
- low oil pressure..... 73
- parking brake applied..... 73
- seatbelt reminder..... 73
- warning..... 73
- Warning sound  
collision warning system..... 169
- Warning symbol, airbag system..... 17
- Warning symbols..... 71
- Warning triangle..... 319
- Washer fluid, filling..... 343
- Washers  
rear window..... 100  
washer fluid, filling..... 343  
windscreen..... 100
- Water and dirt-repellent coating..... 102
- Water-repellent surface, cleaning..... 358
- Waxing..... 358
- Weights  
kerb weight..... 369
- Wheels  
changing..... 314  
installation..... 316  
rims..... 311  
snow chains..... 312  
spare wheel..... 314

Wheels and tyres.....	310
Whiplash injury, WHIPS.....	25
WHIPS	
child seat/booster cushion.....	25
whiplash injury.....	25
Windows, rearview and door mirrors.....	102
Windscreen	
Heating.....	105, 219
Windscreen washing.....	100
Windscreen wipers.....	99
rain sensor.....	99
Winter driving.....	287
Winter tyres.....	312
Wiper blades.....	341
changing.....	341
cleaning.....	342
replacing, rear window.....	342
service position.....	341
Wipers and washing.....	99



